LATIN COMPOSITION

BASED ON CÆSAR AND CICERO

D'OOGE

1.89
104

Frederick V. Smith
10 A Grade
1919

LATIN COMPOSITION

FOR

SECONDARY SCHOOLS

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO

Copyright, 1904, 1905
By BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

618.3

The Athenæum Press
GINN & COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

The purpose of the study of Latin Composition is generally conceded to be, not to teach the art of writing Latin as an end in itself, but rather to increase the student's familiarity with the style, idioms, and vocabulary of the authors he is reading, and at the same time to afford effective instruction in syntax. It is for the accomplishment of this twofold purpose that the following three years' course has been prepared. The course is divided into three parts, designed respectively for the second, third, and fourth years of the secondary school, and is of the following character: —

Part I is based on Cæsar's Gallic War for vocabulary, idioms, and general content; but in syntax the exercises are made to conform to the systematic presentation of the subject which characterizes the lessons throughout. To take up constructions in Latin composition in the capricious order in which they happen to occur in the accompanying text has been shown to be pedagogically unsound and fatally weak in that the subjects are not presented in their proper order or logical course of development, and the student is unable to bring the disorganized bits of knowledge thus acquired into a strong and well-organized synthetic whole. The constructions have, therefore, been taken up in their grammatical sequence, and the exercises are preceded by appropriate grammar-lessons; next follow selected idioms to be memorized, and finally the sentences aim to give practical and illuminating expression to the syntax and idioms that precede.

It is the general experience of teachers that young pupils fail to understand much that the grammar contains, and that they also fail to discriminate between the important and unimportant. Considerable matter of an explanatory character has therefore been added to the grammatical references. This acts as a medium between the student and the grammar: interprets what is obscure or technical in statement, throws into strong relief what is essential and of vital importance, and presents in brief summaries, practical and convenient for memorizing, the most important constructions.

The exercises for oral translation are very simple and have been made so easy as not to demand a large amount of time in preparation. They can be used most easily and profitably in connection with each day's review lesson. Each fourth exercise is in connected narrative prose and designed for written translation. The written exercises are without new grammar work, and aim to review especially the syntactical principles treated in the three preceding oral exercises and to give practice in writing connected Latin. In both oral and written exercises the most space has been given to the constructions that are the most important. A few lessons involving some of the more difficult or more unusual constructions have been marked with an asterisk and may be omitted at the discretion of the teacher. Reviews of both idioms and grammar are provided for at convenient intervals.

Schools differ so greatly in the amount of time given to Latin composition that it is impossible to make a manual of a size that will suit all conditions. Many schools will find it possible to finish all of Part I. For such as do not take it all, it would be well to go at least as far as "The Syntax of Nouns," Lesson LXXXVII. This subject is taken up more fully in Part II and may be deferred until that time.

Part II is based on Cicero's Orations and follows in general the plan of Part I; systematic work in grammar being carried on with illustrative exercises throughout the year. The orations used for a basis are the Manilian Law, the Catilinarian Orations, and the Archias. The ground covered is in some respects the same as that gone over in Part I, except that the treatment is more detailed and the accompanying exercises are somewhat harder. Among the new subjects discussed in Part II are the translation in Latin of the English auxiliary verbs and the use and meaning of the Latin prepositions. Both of these classes of words are of constant occurrence, and thus far have lacked adequate treatment in books for secondary schools. To give greater definiteness to the work it seemed wise to discuss particular subjects with special orations, as follows: with the Manilian Law, syntax of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns; with the Catilinarian Orations, syntax of the subjunctive; with the Archias, the English auxiliary verbs and the Latin prepositions. There has been provided, further, a vocabulary of synonyms, without which a study of Cicero's prose would be quite incomplete.

Part III consists of thirty-four exercises to be used as a prose review in the fourth year. If systematic study of grammar has been steadily pursued for two years, such knowledge can be best tested and made effective by miscellaneous exercises independent of an accompanying text. These exercises are of this character, and consist each of two parts, A and B. The sentences in A are short and disconnected, while B consists of a paragraph of connected narrative. Teachers will use either or both parts at their discretion. One of these exercises per week throughout the senior year would not seem an excessive requirement. In order that the exercises might be well within the powers of students, they were based on Cicero's Orations and Letters,

such portions being chosen as are not usually read in secondary schools. The vocabulary, therefore, and many of the idioms and phrases, will not be unfamiliar; and students should be encouraged to write these exercises as far as possible without consulting the special English-Latin vocabulary with which this part has been provided.

In the preparation of this book I have had the criticism and advice of many prominent teachers of secondary Latin, and I take pleasure in acknowledging their valuable services. Especial mention is due to Miss Bessie J. Snyder, of the High School of Omaha, Neb., and to Miss Clara Allison, of the High School of Hastings, Mich.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE.

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE,
November 1, 1904.

PART I

BASED ON CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR BOOKS I–IV

CONTENTS

I. RULES FOR WORD-ORDER AND SENTENCE-STRUCTURE

Lesson		Page
1.	Word-Order: General Principles	1
2.	Word-Order: Special Rules	2
3.	Arrangement of Clauses	4
4.	Written Translation	6

II. RULES FOR AGREEMENT

5.	The General Forms of Agreement	7
	Noun in Apposition or as Predicate	7
6.	Adjective with its Noun	8
7.	Adjective Agreement (*continued*)	9
8.	Written Translation	10
9.	Relative with its Antecedent	11
10.	Verb with its Subject	12
11.	Verb with Two or More Subjects	13
12.	Review and Written Translation	13

III. THE INDICATIVE MOOD

13.	Tenses of the Indicative: General Rules	14
	The Present Indicative	14
14.	The Imperfect Indicative	15
15.	The Perfect Indicative	17
16.	Written Translation	18
17.	The Future, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative	18

IV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

18.	The Subjunctive in General	19
	The Hortatory or Volitive Subjunctive	19
19.	The Optative Subjunctive	21
20.	Written Translation	22
21.	The Subjunctive in Rhetorical or Deliberative Questions	23
22.	The Potential Subjunctive	24

Lesson	V. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD	Page
23.	The Imperative Mood — Prohibitions	25
24.	Review and Written Translation	26

VI. MOODS AND TENSES IN DEPENDENT AND SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

25.	Sequence of Tenses	27
26.	Peculiarities in Tense-Sequence	29
27.	Pure and Relative Clauses of Purpose	30
28.	Written Translation	32
29.	Substantive Clauses	32
	Substantive Clauses of Purpose	32
30.	Clauses of Purpose (*continued*)	34
31.	The Various Ways of Expressing Purpose	34
32.	Review and Written Translation	36
33.	Clauses of Characteristic	37
34.	Relative Clauses after **dīgnus, indīgnus**, etc.	38
35.	Pure and Relative Clauses of Result	39
36.	Written Translation	41
37.	Substantive Clauses of Result	41
38.	Clauses introduced by **quīn** and **quōminus**	43
39.	General Review of Purpose and Result	44
40.	Review of Idioms and Written Translation	45
41.	Causal Clauses introduced by **quod, quia, quoniam**, and **quandō**	46
42.	Causal Clauses introduced by **cum** and **quī**	47
43.	Temporal Clauses introduced by **postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, ut prīmum**, etc.	48
44.	Written Translation	49
45.	Temporal Clauses introduced by **cum**	50
46.	Temporal Clauses introduced by **antequam** and **priusquam**	51
47.	Temporal Clauses introduced by **dum, dōnec**, and **quoad**	52
48.	Written Translation	53
49.	Substantive Clauses introduced by **quod**	54
50.	Direct Questions	55
51.	Indirect Questions	56
52.	Review and Written Translation	57
53.	Conditional Sentences, General Statements	58
	Conditional Sentences with the Indicative	58
54.	Conditional Sentences with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive	61
55.	Conditional Sentences with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive	61
56.	Written Translation	62
57.	Conditions in which the Protasis denotes Repeated Action	63
	Conditions Contrary to Fact with the Indicative in the Apodosis	63
58.	Conditional Clauses of Comparison with **ac sī, ut sī, quasi**, etc.	64
59.	Concessive Clauses	66

LESSON PAGE

60. Review and Written Translation 67
61. Clauses with dum, modo, dum modo, denoting a Wish or a Proviso 68

VII. MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

62. Declaratory Sentences in Indirect Discourse 69
63. Interrogative Sentences in Indirect Discourse 71
Commands in Indirect Discourse 71
64. Written Translation 73
65. Conditional Sentences with the Indicative, or of the First Class, in Indirect Discourse 74
66. Conditional Sentences with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or of the Second Class, in Indirect Discourse 75
67. Conditional Sentences with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or of the Third Class, in Indirect Discourse . . 76
68. Written Translation 77
69. Passive Apodoses in Indirect Discourse 78
70. Implied or Informal Indirect Discourse 79
71. Subjunctive of Integral Part or Attraction 81
72. Review and Written Translation 82

VIII. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS OF THE VERB

73. Tenses of the Infinitive 83
The Infinitive as Subject or Predicate 83
74. The Infinitive as Object 85
75. The Complementary Infinitive 86
The Historical Infinitive 86
76. Written Translation 87
77. The Participle: Tenses; Adjective and Predicate Uses; the Ablative Absolute 88
78. The Future Passive Participle: denoting Purpose; the Second Periphrastic Conjugation; the Dative of Agent 90
79. The Gerund and Gerundive: General Rules; the Genitive, the Dative 91
80. Written Translation 93
81. The Gerund and Gerundive: the Accusative, the Ablative . . 93
82. The Supine in -um and -ū 94

IX. SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS

83. Personal, Possessive, and Reflexive Pronouns 95
84. Written Translation 96
85. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns 97
86. Demonstrative Pronouns 98
alius and alter 98

X. SYNTAX OF NOUNS

Lesson		Page
87.	Expressions of Time	100
88.	Review and Written Translation	101
89.	Expressions of Place	102
90.	**The Genitive with Nouns**	104
91.	The Genitive in Apposition with a Possessive Pronoun; the Predicate Genitive; the Genitive with Adjectives	105
92.	Written Translation	106
93.	**The Genitive with Verbs**	107
94.	**The Dative**: General Rule; Indirect Object	108
95.	The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs, and with Passive Intransitives	110
96.	Written Translation	111
97.	The Dative with Compounds; the Dative of Separation	112
98.	The Dative of Possession; the Dative of Purpose or End	113
99.	The Dative of Reference; the Dative with Adjectives	114
100.	Review and Written Translation	115
101.	**The Accusative Case**: Direct Object; Cognate Accusative; Accusative of Extent	116
102.	Two Accusatives: Direct Object and Predicate, Person and Thing	117
103.	The Adverbial Accusative; Subject of an Infinitive	118
104.	Written Translation	120
105.	**The Ablative Case**: General Consideration; the Ablative of Separation, of Source, Origin, and Material; of Cause	121
106.	The Ablative of Agent, of Comparison, of Manner	122
107.	The Ablative of Means; the Ablative with ūtor, fruor, etc.; the Ablative with **opus** and **ūsus**	123
108.	Written Translation	124
109.	The Ablative of Accompaniment, of Degree of Difference, of Quality or Characteristic	125
110.	The Ablative of Price, of Specification, with **dīgnus** and **indīgnus**	126

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL NOTES 129

LATIN COMPOSITION

PART I

I. RULES FOR WORD-ORDER AND SENTENCE-STRUCTURE

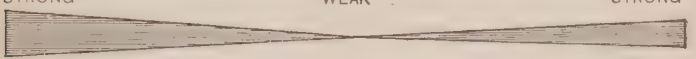
LESSON I

1. [1] **Word-Order, General Principles.** — § 595–597. *a* (343, 344. R. *a*); B. 348, 349; G. 671–674; H. 663–670 (559–564); H-B. 621–623.

2. The words of an English sentence stand in a fixed order which shows their grammatical relation to each other. In Latin this relation is shown by *inflection*, and the *order* of the words represents their relative emphasis and importance in the writer's or speaker's mind.

3. The most emphatic place is the *first;* next in importance is the *last;* the weakest point is the *middle.*

4. As the most important word in the sentence is the *subject*, and the second in importance is the *verb*, these normally stand first and last respectively. Their respective modifiers stand next these according to their relative emphasis. This may be represented as follows: —



[1] The Grammars are referred to as follows: § (Allen and Greenough), B. (Bennett), G. (Gildersleeve-Lodge), H. (Harkness), H-B. (Hale and Buck). The references in parenthesis are to the old editions.

5. The **normal order** of a simple sentence is—

Subject	its Modifiers	Expressions of Time / Place / Cause / Means / etc.	Indirect Object	Direct Object	Adverb	Verb.

But this order is constantly varied, especially by the desire for emphasis on some word or phrase.

6. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

inter sē differunt.	*they differ from each other.*
minimē saepe.	*very seldom (least often).*
ad effēminandōs animōs.	*to weaken courage.*
quā dē causā.	*for this reason.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 1

7. 1. Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts. 2. The Belgæ, Aquitani, and Celts inhabit Gaul. 3. The Romans call the Celts Gauls. 4. These all differ from each other. 5. The Marne and the Seine are rivers. 6. The Belgæ are the farthest away from the province. 7. The Belgæ and the Germans wage war continually. 8. Merchants very seldom visit the Germans. 9. Merchants import articles (*ea*) which tend to weaken courage.

LESSON II

8. Word-Order, Special Rules. — § 598 (344). *a.* 1, 2; *b*, *c*, *g*, *j*, *k*; 599. *a–f* (345. *a–e*); B. 350. 1–10; G. 675–681; H. 671–680 (565–569); H–B. 624, 625. I–III.

9. Rhetorical order: deviations from the normal order described in sec. 5 result in the rhetorical order. These deviations arise—

a. From a desire to emphasize some word or phrase.

b. From a desire to make clear the connection with a preceding sentence.

c. From a desire for rhythm and euphony.

10. Emphasis is secured —

a. By placing words to be emphasized *first*, more rarely *last* (cf. sec. 3).

Gallōs ab **Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit.**
[1] *The* GAULS *are separated from the* AQUITANIANS *by the Garonne river.*

Māgna **dīs immortālibus habenda est *grātia*.**
GREAT GRATITUDE *is due the immortal gods.*

b. By separating words that naturally belong together.

Note the separation of **māgna** and **grātia** in the preceding example.

c. By reversing the normal order (cf. sec. 5).

This applies especially to qualifying adjectives and to genitives. Modifiers that usually follow their nouns are made emphatic by being placed before them, and vice versa: —

Ille imperātor, *that general* (normal order).

Imperātor ille, THAT FAMOUS *general* (normal order reversed).

Mors frātris tuī, *the death of your brother*, but **Tuī frātris mors**, YOUR BROTHER'S *death.*

11. Demonstrative pronouns, cardinal numerals, adjectives of quantity and place (e.g. **ulterior**, **citerior**, **īnferior**, etc.), normally precede their nouns; other adjectives, ordinal numerals, possessives, indefinites, and genitives, normally follow their nouns. (Cf. grammars.)

12. Words referring back to a previous sentence (cf. sec. 9. *b*) are usually placed first.

Compare the English *Ariovistus was king of the Germans. Cæsar sent ambassadors to him* with the Latin **Ariovistus erat Germānōrum rēx. Ad eum Caesar lēgātōs mīsit.** Note that in the

[1] The voice is changed in translation to approximate the emphasis of the Latin order.

second sentence **Ad eum** is placed first because referring to the preceding subject. Compare also the order of *The bravest of all these are the Belgians* and the Latin **Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.** This principle explains the use and position of such connecting words and phrases as **quam ob rem, quā dē causā, quibus rēbus cōgnitīs,** etc.

13. **enim, autem, vērō, quidem, quoque, igitur,** never stand first (postpositive). The vocative case rarely stands first.

14. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

initium capit ā.	*begins at.*
spectant in septentriōnem.	*they face the north.*
spectant in orientem sōlem.	*they face the east.*
spectant in occāsum sōlis.	*they face the west.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 1

15. 1. The Belgians are the bravest of the Gauls. 2. But the Helvetians are brave too. 3. For this reason they carry on war with the Germans. 4. They keep them off from their territory by almost daily battles. 5. One part of Gaul begins at the river Rhone. 6. The Garonne is another river of Gaul. 7. The territory of the Belgæ faces northeast. 8. The lower part of Aquitania stretches to the Pyrenees mountains. 9. Aquitania faces northwest.

LESSON III

16. **Arrangement of Clauses.** — § 600, 601 (346); B. 351; G. 684 ff.; H. 681 ff. (570 ff.); H-B. 626, 629.

17. Clauses usually precede that which they modify; but the principal verb generally precedes clauses of purpose or result, substantive clauses in indirect discourse, and indirect questions.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, *when Cæsar was in hither Gaul, frequent reports were brought to him.*

Verēbantur nē ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur, *they feared that our army would be led against them.* (Purpose clause.)

Certior fīēbat omnīs Belgās obsidēs inter sē dare, *he was informed that all the Belgæ were giving hostages to each other.* (Indir. disc.)

Quaesīvit quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent, *he asked what states were in arms.* (Indir. question.)

18. When the *subject* is the same in both the principal and the subordinate clause it normally stands first.

Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, statuit exspectandam classem, *when Cæsar perceived that such great labor was undertaken in vain, he determined that his fleet must be waited for.* (Common subject is *Cæsar*.)

19. When the *object* is the same in both the principal and the subordinate clause it normally stands first.

Oppidum, cum cīvēs fortissimē dēfenderent, Caesar expūgnāvit, *Cæsar took the town, though the citizens defended it very bravely.* (Common object is *town*.)

20. A succession of monosyllabic or of polysyllabic words should be avoided, as also the heaping up of a number of verbs at the end of a sentence. These are sins against euphony and rhythm to which writers of good Latin are always very attentive (cf. sec. **9**. *c*).

21. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

Messālā cōnsule.	*in the consulship of Messala.*
māgnō dolōre adficī.	*to be greatly grieved.*
imperiō potīrī.	*to secure the sovereignty.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 2

22. 1. Orgetorix, who was the richest of the Helvetians, made a conspiracy. 2. He made the conspiracy in the consulship of Messala and Piso. 3. He persuaded the Helvetii

[1] that they excelled all in valor. 4. It was not very easy to make war upon the neighbors. 5. For this reason it came about that they were greatly grieved. 6. The Helvetians were fond of fighting. 7. Orgetorix will persuade them to go forth from their boundaries. 8. The Helvetians were hemmed in on all sides by rivers, lakes,[2] and mountains. 9. Since the Helvetians [3] had narrow boundaries, they could wander less widely. 10. The Helvetians did not secure the sovereignty of entire Gaul.

1. Infin. with subject accusative. 2. **lacubus**, not **lacibus**, cf. Grammar. 3. See sec. **18.**

LESSON IV

23. In narrative prose, clauses follow each other in the order of time in which the events occurred. English is less exact in this respect, and we sometimes have to rearrange a passage, in order to bring events into their proper logical sequence, before translating it into Latin.

24. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

plūrimum posse or **valēre.**	*to be most powerful* or *influential.*
perfacile factū.	*very easy to do.*
in mātrimōnium dare.	*to give in marriage.*

For Written Translation — Book I. 3

25. The Helvetii, who were the most powerful people of entire Gaul, were so[1]* moved by these considerations[2] that they determined [3]to do what was necessary for their departure, and chose Orgetorix to carry out these measures.[2] He made a journey to the nearest states and persuaded Casticus,

* A superior figure *after* a word (e.g. so[1]) refers to that word alone; when placed *before* a word (e.g. [1]so), it refers to two or more following words.

the Sequanian, to seize the sovereignty in his own state; and he also persuaded Dumnorix, the Hæduan, to make the same attempt. This was very easy to do because he had given him his daughter in marriage. There was no doubt that he hoped [4]to gain possession of entire Gaul.

1. **ita.** 2. **rēs.** 3. Latin, "to prepare the things which pertained to." 4. Use the future infin. with subject acc.

II. RULES FOR AGREEMENT

LESSON V

26. I. **The General Forms of Agreement.** — § 280 (181, 182); G. 210, 211. R. 1; H-B. 316–318.

II. **Noun in Apposition or as Predicate.** — § 281–284 (183–185); B. 167–169; G. 320–325, 386. R. 1; 411. R. 3; H. 393 (362–364); H-B. 319. I, II.

27. The appositive normally follows its noun. When emphatic it precedes.

Caesar imperātor, *Cæsar, the general* (normal order).
Imperātor Caesar, *the general, Cæsar* (emphatic order).

28. The copula **sum** stands last or between the subject and predicate: **Caesar imperātor erat** or **Caesar erat imperātor**, *Cæsar was general.*

N.B. However, when **sum** expresses *existence* (there *is*, there *was*, etc.), it stands first or at any rate before the subject: **erat nūllum aliud iter**, *there was no other way.*

29. A noun in apposition with a locative is put in the ablative, either with or without a preposition: **Rōmae** (**in**) **urbe māgnā**, *at Rome, a great city.*

30. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

causam dīcere.	*to plead a cause.*
sibi mortem cōnscīscere.	*to commit suicide.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 4

31. 1. The Helvetii, [1] a Gallic tribe, made a conspiracy. 2. The river Rhone divides our province from the Helvetii. 3. At that time Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, held the leadership. 4. The father of Casticus had been called a friend of the Roman people. 5. Orgetorix pleaded his cause at Geneva,[2] the largest city[3] of the Helvetians. 6. The penalty was [4] that he be burned with fire. 7. Orgetorix gathered all his clansmen, about ten thousand men. 8. The Helvetii think [5] that he committed suicide.

1. **Gallica gēns.** 2. Locative case. 3. How is apposition with a locative expressed? 4. A substantive clause used as predicate noun. 5. Not a subjunctive clause.

LESSON VI

32. Adjective with its Noun. — § 285–287 (186, 187); B. 234, 235; G. 211, 285, 286; H. 394, 395 (438, 439); H-B. 320–321, 323.

33. When a noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive the normal order is *adjective — genitive — noun:* **omnēs Helvētiōrum cōpiae.**

34. Agreement with two or more nouns of different genders:

a. The attributive adjective regularly agrees with its nearest noun.

Multī puerī et puellae or **puerī et puellae multae**, *many boys and girls.*

b. The predicate adjective is regularly *masculine plural* when it modifies two or more nouns representing living beings of different genders.

Puerī et puellae erant bonī, *the boys and girls were good.*

Rēx et rēgīna captī sunt, *the king and queen were captured.*

c. The predicate adjective is prevailingly *neuter plural* when it modifies two or more nouns of different genders representing things or both persons and things.

Virtūs et studium mīlitum erant māgna, *the valor and zeal of the soldiers were great.*

Nāvēs captīvīque restitūta sunt, *the ships and the captives were restored.*

35. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

parātus ad omnia perīcula subeunda.	*ready to endure all perils.*
eōdem cōnsiliō ūtī.	*to adopt the same plan.*
fīnitimīs persuādēre.	*to persuade the neighbors.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 5

36. 1. Among the Helvetii Orgetorix was by far the richest. 2. His authority and [1]ambition for power were very great. 3. The Helvetii were prepared for departure. 4. All the towns, villages, and [2]the rest of the private buildings were burned. 5. They intend to carry with them ground corn for three months. 6. Both men and women were ready to endure all perils. 7. They had many towns and villages. 8. They persuade the Rauraci, their neighbors, to adopt the same plan.

1. **cupiditās rēgnī.** 2 Latin, "the remaining."

LESSON VII

Agreement of Adjectives — *Continued*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 6

37. 1. One road was narrow and difficult. 2. Mount Jura is very high. 3. Not all mountains and rivers are difficult. 4. The other route was much easier. 5. The Helvetians were hemmed in by great rivers, lakes, and[1] mountains. 6. The town Geneva is very near to the province. 7. The Allobroges do not seem well disposed towards the Roman

people. 8. We shall assemble on the banks of the river Rhone on the twenty-eighth of March. 9. All the men and women were ready for departure.

1. Words in a series usually follow one another in Latin without connectives. However, the different words may be severally connected by **et**, or **-que** may connect the last two of the series.

LESSON VIII

38. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

iter facere.	*to make a march.*
maximīs itineribus contendere.	*to hasten by forced marches.*
certior fierī.	*to be informed* (lit. *to be made more certain*).
aliquem certiōrem facere.	*to inform some one* (lit. *to make some one more certain*).

For Written Translation — Book I. 7

39. When, in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius, the Helvetians[1] were attempting to make a march through our province, they sent to Cæsar ambassadors, the noblest of the state, to say[2] that they had no other way; and to ask[2] that it be permitted them to do this with his consent. Cæsar, who was at Geneva, a frontier[3] city of the Allobroges, whither[4] he had hastened by forced marches [5]when he had been informed of the approach of the Helvetii, did not think that the request should be granted.

1. Stands first as the subject of both the principal and the subordinate clause, cf. sec. **18**. 2. Not infinitive. 3. **extrēmus, -a, -um.** 4. **quō.** 5. **cum** with pluperf. subjv.

LESSON IX

40. Relative with its Antecedent. — § 305–306 (198, 199); B. 250; G. 614; H. 396–399 (445); H-B. 281. *a*; 322, 284. 2, 3, 4.

41. In the agreement of the relative pronoun it is important to observe that, while the pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and in *number*, its *case* is determined by its function in the relative clause which it serves to introduce. Note the following examples: —

Caesar mīlitēs quī timidī erant nōn laudābat.

Cæsar did not praise the soldiers who were afraid.

Here **quī** agrees with **mīlitēs** in gender and in number, but while **mīlitēs** is *accusative* **quī** is *nominative* as subject of **erant**.

Mīlitēs quōs vidēmus sunt timidī.

The soldiers whom we see are afraid.

Here **mīlitēs** is nominative and **quōs** is accusative.

Prīnceps cūius fīlius est captus pācem petēbat.

The chief whose son was captured was suing for peace.

Here **prīnceps** is nominative and **cūius** is genitive. Therefore, whenever the relative and its antecedent are in the same case, it is a mere coincidence and not at all due to grammatical agreement.

42. A relative agrees with a predicate noun in its own clause rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number.

Rhēnus quod est flūmen Gallicum, *the Rhine, which is a Gallic stream.*

43. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

fossam perdūcere.	*to dig a ditch* (lit. *to lead along a ditch*).
quō facilius.	*that the more easily.*
iter dare.	*to give the right of way.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 8

44. 1. The legion which he had with him dug a ditch. 2. The Helvetii, who are a Gallic tribe,[1] sent ambassadors to Cæsar. 3. The Jura is a mountain which divides the

territory of the Sequani from the Helvetians. 4. I see the great wall and ditch which Cæsar made. 5. The custom and precedent which the Roman people have established prevent him from giving[2] a right of way. 6. They attempted to cross by boats and rafts which they had made. 7. At night they attempted to break through by the fords where the depth of water was the least. 8. I will fortify the redoubts that I may the more easily restrain you. 9. The Rhone, which is a river of Gaul, has many fords.

1. gēns. 2. Infinitive.

LESSON X

45. Verb with its Subject. — § 316 (204); B. 254; G. 211; H. 388, 390, 391 (460, 462); H-B. 328, 329, 331. 1; 332.

46. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

propter angustiās.	*on account of the narrow pass.*
quam plūrimae cīvitātēs.	*as many states as possible.*
novīs rēbus studēre.	*to be eager for a revolution.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 9

47. 1. The Helvetii could not persuade the Sequani. 2. On account of the narrow pass, they sent ambassadors to Dumnorix. 3. He was very influential among the Helvetii. 4. Orgetorix had given him his daughter in marriage. 5. Dumnorix bound as many states as possible by his personal influence and lavish gifts. 6. He undertook the matter because he was eager for a revolution. 7. [1]With him as advocate they [2]obtained their request from the Sequani. 8. The Sequani are[3] a Gallic state. 9. Mischief and wrong [4]must be prevented.

1. Abl. abs. 2. "obtained their request," translate by one word. 3. est, or sunt, or either? 4. Second periphrastic.

LESSON XI

48. Verb with Two or More Subjects. — § 317 (205); B. 255; G. 285-287; H. 392 (463); H-B. 329, 331. 3.

49. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Helvētiīs est in animō.	*the Helvetians are planning.*
ob eās causās.	*for these reasons.*
māgnō cum perīculō esse.	*to be very dangerous.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 10

50. 1. [1]You and I will announce to Cæsar that the Helvetians are planning to make a march into the territory of the Santones. 2. The Sequani and Hædui are not far from our province. 3. It will be very dangerous to the province to have enemies[2] of the Roman people as neighbors. 4. For these reasons, you and Cæsar will hasten into Farther Gaul by forced marches. 5. Two legions he had enrolled in Italy. 6. The enemy seize the higher places. 7. But on the seventh day Cæsar led his five legions among the Segusiavi. 8. These five legions are[3] Cæsar's army. 9. Cæsar and his legions are ill disposed towards the Gauls.

1. Latin, "I and you." 2. **inimīcī**, *personal enemies;* **hostēs**, *enemies in war.* 3. **est** or **sunt** or either?

LESSON XII

51. Review the rules for agreement, Lessons V–XI.

52. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

ad effēminandōs animōs.	**fīnitimīs persuādēre.**
aliquem certiōrem facere.	**fossam perdūcere.**
causam dīcere.	**Helvētiīs est in animō.**
certior fierī.	**imperiō potīrī.**
eōdem cōnsiliō ūtī.	**in mātrimōnium dare.**

initium capit ā.
inter sē differunt.
iter dare.
iter facere.
māgnō cum perīculō esse.
māgnō dolōre adficī.
maximīs itineribus contendere.
Messālā cōnsule.
minimē saepe.
novīs rēbus studēre.
ob eās causās.
parātus ad omnia perīcula subeunda.
perfacile factū.
plūrimum posse or **valēre.**
propter angustiās.
quā dē causā.
quam plūrimae cīvitātēs.
quō facilius.
sibi mortem cōnscīscere.
spectant in occāsum sōlis.
spectant in orientem sōlem.
spectant in septentriōnem.

For Written Translation — Book I. 11

53. Almost[1] at the same time the Hædui and Allobroges, — allies of Cæsar who had at all times deserved well[2] of the Roman people, — [3]since all their fortunes were being consumed by the Helvetians, sent ambassadors to him to ask for aid. They informed him that their fields, villages, and possessions had been laid waste by the enemy, and that nothing was left but [4]the bare ground; and that for this reason they had fled[5] to him. [6]On hearing this Cæsar made up his mind that he ought not to wait.

1. **ferē.** 2. **bene.** 3. Subjv. with **cum.** 4. Latin, "the soil of the field." 5. Latin, "betaken themselves by flight." 6. Abl. abs., "these things having been heard."

III. THE INDICATIVE MOOD

LESSON XIII

54. I. **Tenses of the Indicative, General Rules.** — § 437 (264); B. 257, 258; G. 222–226; H. 523, 524 (474, 475); H-B. 468.

II. **The Present Indicative.** — § 465, 466, 469 (276); B. 259; G. 227–230; H. 532, 533 (466, 467); H-B. 468. 1; 491. 1; 485.

55. Present Indefinite, *I make*,
Present Progressive, *I am making*,
Present Emphatic, *I do make*,
} are all translated by the one form **faciō**.

56. Do not be misled by such English expressions as *I am going soon*, *I sail next week*, *I play to-morrow*. These are not really *presents* but *futures*, and are rendered in Latin by the future tense.

57. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

dē tertiā vigiliā.	*about the third watch.*
sub iugum mittere.	*to send under the yoke.*
calamitātem alicui īnferre.	*to bring calamity upon some one.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 12

58. 1. The river Saone is of incredible slowness. 2. The Helvetii [1]are attempting to cross this with their rafts. 3. Scouts inform Cæsar that three parts of the Helvetii have already been led across. 4. Cæsar attacks the Tigurini, who have not yet crossed the river. 5. This canton, in the memory of our fathers, brought great calamity upon the Roman people. 6. Cæsar has [2]for some time wished to avenge this injury. 7. He sets out from the camp about the third watch. 8. The army of Cassius, the consul, has long since been sent under the yoke. 9. The immortal gods do avenge wrongs.

1. Express with **cōnor**. 2. **iam diū**.

LESSON XIV

59. **The Imperfect Indicative.** — § 470, 471. *a*, *b*, *c* (277. N. *a*, *b*, *c*); B. 260; G. 231–234; H. 530, 534. 2, 3; 535 (468, 469. I, II. 1, 2); H-B. 468. 2; 484, 485.

60. The imperfect may express attempted action, but if there be danger of ambiguity it is best to use **cōnor**, *attempt*, with the infinitive.

61. The most important uses of the imperfect are two: —

a. To express customary or continued action in past time.

b. To describe situations, fill in details and particulars; while the important forward steps in the narrative are denoted by the perfect.

This difference between the perfect and the imperfect is well illustrated by the latter half of Chapter 7, beginning **Caesar quod**, etc. The situation is described by the imperfects, **tenēbat, putābat, exīstimābat.** These are all preparatory to the first decisive and important act on Cæsar's part, expressed by the words **respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum.**

62. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

hōc proeliō factō.	*after this battle was fought.*
pontem faciendum cūrāre.	*to see to building a bridge.*
calamitātis reminīscī.	*to remember the disaster.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 13

63. 1. He [1]attempted to overtake the forces of the Helvetians. 2. He sees to building a bridge over the Saone. 3. After this battle was fought they kept sending ambassadors to him. 4. Divico had now for a long time been the leader of the Helvetians. 5. The Helvetians were going into that part where Cæsar did not wish them to be. 6. He attacked those who were crossing the river. 7. They remembered the former disaster and the destruction of the Roman army. 8. The canton which was called[2] Tigurinus relied[3] upon valor more than upon strategy. 9. They had [4]long since learned this from their ancestors.

1. Imperfect of attempted action. 2. Descriptive imperfect. 3. Imperfect if regarded as descriptive, perfect if narrative. 4. **iam dūdum.**

LESSON XV

64. The Perfect Indicative. — § 161, 473, 474, 476 (115. *c* ; 279. *a*, *e*) ; B. 262 ; G. 235, 236, 239, 240 ; H. 538 (471. 1, 2, 3) ; H-B. 468. 4. *a* ; 487, 489.

65. The following perfects have the force of the English present: —

nōvī, *I know* (*have learned*), from **nōscō**, *I learn.*

cōnsuēvī, *I am accustomed* (*have become accustomed*), from **cōnsuēscō**, *I become accustomed.*

meminī, *I remember*, present system wanting.

ōdī, *I hate*, present system wanting.

The pluperfect of these verbs has the meaning of the imperfect: **nōveram**, *I knew* (*had learned*), etc.

66. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

memoriā tenēre.	*to remember.*
contumēliae oblīvīscī.	*to forget an insult.*
iniūriās alicui īnferre.	*to inflict injuries upon some one.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 14

67. 1. I remember those things that the Helvetii have mentioned. 2. I have the less hesitation because I have been deceived. 3. He did not think that the Roman people[1] ought to fear. 4. Cæsar did not forget the former insult. 5. They boasted insolently of their victory. 6. You have inflicted injuries a long time with impunity. 7. The immortal gods are wont to grant greater prosperity to those whom they wish to punish. 8. They [2]paid damages to the Hædui for the wrongs which they had inflicted on them. 9. The Helvetii are wont to receive hostages, not to give them. 10. The Helvetii hate the Romans.

1. Dative of agent. 2. **satisfaciō**.

LESSON XVI

68. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

posterō diē.	*the next day.*
novissimum āgmen.	*the rear.*
proelium committere.	*to engage in battle.*

For Written Translation — Book I. 15

69. On the next day both Cæsar and the Helvetii moved their camps, and Cæsar sent forward the cavalry which he had[1] collected from the province and his allies, [2]to keep the enemy from plundering. The Roman cavalry [3]was pursuing too eagerly, and engaged[4] in battle with five hundred Helvetian horsemen in an unfavorable place. These boldly provoked our (soldiers[5]) to battle and defeated (them). There was no more than five or six miles between the rear of the enemy and our van, but[6] Cæsar kept[3] his men from fighting for fifteen days.

1. Continued and descriptive action in past time. What tense? 2. Not infin. 3. Imperf. of continued action in past time. 4. Perfect in narration. 5. Omit words in parenthesis. 6. **tamen.**

LESSON XVII

70. **The Future, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative.** — § 472, 477, 478 (278, 281, 280); B. 261, 264, 263; G. 242–244, 241; H. 536, 540, 539 (470, 473, 472); H-B. 468. 3, 5, 6; 494.

71. *Latin is much more exact than English in the use of tenses.* Attention has already been called to the common use of the English present for what is really future (cf. sec. **56**); in like manner English often uses a present or future for what is really future perfect. In every instance the Latin will use the exact tense. Hence the future perfect is much commoner in Latin than in English.

For example, in *he will come if he can*, the word *can* is really future and we should translate **veniet, sī poterit**; in *if they conquer, they will rejoice*, the verb *conquer* may be future or even future perfect, and we translate **sī vincent** (or **vīcerint**), **laetābuntur**.

72. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre.	*to demand grain from the Hædui.*
magistrātuī praeesse.	*to hold an office.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 16

73. 1. Cæsar [1]had now for a long time been demanding grain from the Hædui. 2. On account of frosts the grain will not be ripe. 3. Grain had been brought up the river Saone by boats. 4. If the Helvetii turn[2] their march away from the river, Cæsar cannot[3] use their grain. 5. Not even Diviciacus[4] will be able to buy grain. 6. The day is at hand when it will be necessary to call the chiefs together. 7. I will severely censure them, if they [5]do not assist me. 8. He had undertaken the war at a critical time. 9. He severely censured Liscus, who held the highest office.

1. Not pluperf. 2. Latin, "shall have turned." 3. Not present. 4. Where should this word be placed? 5. Latin, "shall not assist."

IV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

LESSON XVIII

74. I. **The Subjunctive in General.** — § 438 (265); B. 272; G. 255, 256; H. 193, 194 (196. I, II); H-B. 462.

II. **The Hortatory or Volitive Subjunctive.** — § 439, 450 (3) (266. R. *b*); B. 273–276; G. 263–264; H. 559. 1, 2 (483. 3; 484. II, IV); H-B. 500 501. 2, 3.

75. The tenses of the subjunctive in independent clauses denote time as follows: —

Subjunctive Tenses.
- *a.* Present denotes *future* or *indefinite* time.
- *b.* Imperfect denotes *present* or *past* time.
- *c.* Perfect denotes *future* or *past* time.
- *d.* Pluperfect denotes *past* time.

It will be seen that though the subjunctive has no future tenses the future idea is inherent in both the present and the perfect tense. When the future idea is emphatic the first periphrastic forms are used (e.g. **amātūrus sim**).

76. The Latin subjunctive in some of its constructions approaches the meaning of the English potential auxiliaries: *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*. But when these auxiliaries are literal and emphatic they must be rendered by independent verbs, as *may*, *might*, by **licet**; *can*, *could*, by **possum**; *should* by **dēbeō**, etc.

77. Many subjunctive constructions are translated by the English indicative and show no special form or modal auxiliary. In such cases, therefore, there is nothing in the English to show that the Latin subjunctive must be used: e.g. **sciō quid faciās**, *I know what you are doing;* **tanta erat tempestās ut nāvēs dispellerentur**, *the storm was so great that the ships were scattered.*

78. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express —

1. An exhortation or command (Hortatory or Volitive). Negative is **nē**.
2. A wish or desire (Optative). Negative is **nē**.
3. A rhetorical question expressing doubt or indignation (Deliberative). Negative is **nōn**.
4. A possibility (Potential). Negative is **nōn**.

79. The Hortatory Subjunctive in its usual form is in the first or third person of the present tense, and is introduced in English by *let*. When expressing a command it is sometimes called the *jussive* (cf. **iubeō**) subjunctive.

80. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

lībertātem alicui ēripere.	*to deprive some one of liberty (to take liberty from some one).*
māgnā ex parte.	*in great measure.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 17

81. 1. Let us demand grain of the Hædui. 2. Let Liscus declare what he has before kept secret. 3. [1]Do not keep the multitude from giving grain. 4. Let us obtain the chief power in Gaul [2]and not endure the dominion of the Romans. 5. [1]Do not doubt that the Romans [3]intend to conquer the Helvetians. 6. Let us not deprive the Gauls of their liberty. 7. [1]Do not announce our plan to the enemy. 8. Let him keep silence as long as he can. 9. Liscus was influenced in great measure by Cæsar's speech.

1. Hortatory subjv. in a prohibition. Either the present or the perfect tense may be used, but the perfect is more common. Remember, however, that prohibition is usually expressed by **nōlī** or **nōlīte** with the infin. 2. **nēve.** 3. Express by the first periphrastic. Cf. **sint ēreptūrī.**

LESSON XIX

82. **The Optative Subjunctive.** — § 441, 442 (267. *a*, *b*); B. 279; G. 260, 261; H. 558. 1, 2 (483. 1, 2, 3; 484. I); H-B. 510, 511. 1.

83. Wishes are expressed by the present, imperfect, and pluperfect subjunctive. **Utinam** is always used with the imperfect and the pluperfect, sometimes with the present. The negative is **nē.** The force of the tenses is as follows: —

a. The *present* denotes a wish that is still possible because it lies in the future: **vīvās fēlīciter,** *may you live happily!*

b. The *imperfect* expresses a wish unattained in present time, the *pluperfect* one unattained in past time: **utinam vīveret fēlīciter,**

would that he were living happily (but he is n't); **utinam vīxisset fēlīciter**, *would that he had lived happily* (but he did n't).

84. The sign in English of the optative subjunctive is *may* (in a wish or prayer) or *would that*, or more colloquially, *I wish that*, *grant that*, *I hope that*, *if only*, *it would be a good thing if*, etc.

85. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

plūribus praesentibus.	*in the presence of others.*
cupidus rērum novārum.	*eager for a revolution.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 18

86. 1. Let us not discuss these matters in the presence of others. 2. Would that we were finding these things to be true. 3. Would that Dumnorix had not been eager for a revolution. 4. I hope that you may buy the revenue at a small price. 5. Would that we had provided large means for bribery. 6. I hope you may not find on examination that Dumnorix is in command of the cavalry. 7. If only you and Cæsar and the Romans had not restored my brother to his former place of influence! 8. [1]Do not give your sister in marriage to Dumnorix. 9. Grant that nothing may happen to Cæsar.

1. Give the prohibition in two ways.

LESSON XX

87. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāre.	*to see to the exchange of hostages.*
mē praesente.	*in my presence.*
satis causae.	*sufficient reason.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 19

88. Cæsar commanded Diviciacus to be called to him and spoke [1]as follows: "[2]Would that there were not sufficient

reason for commanding[3] the state to punish your brother Dumnorix. Let me show the things that were said about him in my presence in the council. Without my order and without the knowledge of the state he led the Helvetii through the territory of the Sequani and saw to the exchange of hostages. [4]I hope that I may not hurt your feelings by his punishment."

1. **ita.** 2. Observe that this is *direct*, not *indirect* discourse. 3. Imperf. subjv. 4. Cf. sec. **84.**

*LESSON XXI

89. The Subjunctive in Rhetorical or Deliberative Questions. — § 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559. 4 (484. V); H-B. 503, 513. 1.

90. The Rhetorical or Deliberative Question partakes of the character of an exclamation. It is usually in the first person and does not expect a reply. It may be expressed by either the indicative or the subjunctive. The indicative presents no peculiarities. If the subjunctive is used, the present tense translates an English present or future, and the imperfect the English past: —

What { *am I to* / *should I* / *shall I* } *advise you?* **quid tē moneam?**

What was I to do? **quid facerem?**

The negative is **nōn.**

91. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

plūs dolōris capere.	*to be more grieved.*
opibus ūtī.	*to use resources.*
in reliquum tempus.	*for the future.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 20

92. 1. [1]Do not take severe measures against my brother. 2. How[2] shall I know that those things are true? 3. Who

* Lessons thus marked may be omitted at the discretion of the teacher. See Preface.

will be more grieved than I? 4. Let Diviciacus, who is very powerful at home, use his resources. 5. Shall I weaken my influence because of love for my brother? 6. Who will not think that it has been done with my consent? 7. May the hearts of all Gaul not be turned from me! 8. Would that I had warned him to avoid all suspicions! 9. When he begged this with tears, what was I to do? 10. What shall I do for the future?

1. Express in two ways, cf. sec. **81**, note 1. 2. **quōmodo.**

LESSON XXII

93. The Potential Subjunctive. — § 446, 447. 1, 2, 3 (311. I, II); B. 280; G. 257–259; H. 552–557 (485, 486); H-B. 516, 517. 1; 518, 519. 1. *a*, *b*.

94. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action as *conceived* or *possible*, not as desired (hortatory, optative) or real (indicative). It has no single English equivalent; but is rendered according to circumstances by the auxiliaries *would*, *should*, *may*, *might*, *can*, *could* (cf. sec. **76**). The negative is **nōn.**

95. The chief uses of the Potential may be classified as follows: —

1. In polite or modest assertions — first person singular present or perfect: **velim**, *I should like;* **dīcam**, *I should feel inclined to say.*

2. With verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, and the like, to express an opinion — usually in the indefinite second person singular, present or imperfect. The imperfect expresses past time and is translated like a pluperfect: **dīcerēs**, *you would have said;* **crēderēs**, *you would have believed;* **vidērēs**, *you might have seen.*

3. In general to express an action as *possible*, and equivalent to the conclusion of an implied condition: **ille id faciat**, *he would do this* (i.e. if he should be called upon).

96. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

octō mīlia passuum.	*eight miles.*
reī mīlitāris perītissimus.	*experienced in military matters.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 21

97. 1. Let us encamp eight miles from Cæsar's camp. 2. It would be easy to find out what the character of the mountains is. 3. About the third watch you might have seen Labienus with his legions climbing[1] the highest ridge. 4. I should feel inclined to say that those guides know[2] the way. 5. Let us show what our plan is. 6. You might have thought that Considius was experienced in military matters. 7. Let the cavalry and the scouts be sent forward. 8. [3]I wish that they had found out what the ascent was on the various sides. 9. I should like to send forward the cavalry.

1. Pres. part. 2. Remember that the verb **cōgnōscere** means *to learn* in the present tenses and *to know* in the perfect. 3. Cf. sec. **84**.

V. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

LESSON XXIII

98. **The Imperative Mood.** — § 448, 449, 450 (269. *d*, *e*); B. 281. 1, 2; G. 266, 267. R.; H. 560, 561 (487. 1, 2; 488, 489); H-B. 495, 496, 501. 3. *a*. 1), 2).

99. Prohibitions are expressed in classic prose

1. By **nōlī** (plural **nōlīte**) with the present infinitive: **nōlī pūgnāre**, *don't fight.*

2. By **cavē** (sometimes **cavē nē** or **fac nē**) with the present subjunctive: **cavē pūgnēs**, *don't fight.*

3. By **nē** with the perfect subjunctive: **nē pūgnāveris**, *don't fight.*

Of these the first is used oftenest. The last is less formal and more peremptory.

100. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

summus mōns	*the top of the mountain.*
aciem īnstruere.	*to draw up the line of battle.*
proeliō abstinēre.	*to refrain from battle.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 22

101. 1. Let Labienus occupy the top of the mountain. 2. Find out from the captives whether[1] my approach is known.[2] 3. [3]Don't join battle. 4. Draw up the line of battle not more than a mile and a half from the mountain. 5. Would that Labienus had seen Cæsar's troops near the camp of the enemy. 6. [4]Shall I wait for our men and refrain from battle? 7. Don't report as seen that which you have not seen. 8. Lead your forces on to the nearest hill and attack the enemy. 9. Late in the day the camp was pitched at the customary distance. 10. [3]Don't follow the enemy.

1. sī. 2. Cf. sec. 97, note 2. 3. Express in as many ways as you can. 4. Deliberative question.

LESSON XXIV

102. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XIII–XXIII.

103. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

aciem īnstruere.
calamitātis reminīscī.
contumēliae oblīvīscī.
cupidus rērum novārum.
dē tertiā vigiliā.
Haeduōs frūmentum flagitāre.
hōc proeliō factō.
iniūriās alicui īnferre.
in reliquum tempus.
lībertātem alicui ēripere.
magistrātuī praeesse.
māgnā ex parte.
memoriā tenēre.
mē praesente.
novissimum āgmen.
obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāre.
octō mīlia passuum.
opibus ūtī.
plūribus praesentibus.
plūs dolōris capere.
pontem faciendum cūrāre.
posterō diē.
proeliō abstinēre.
proelium committere.
reī mīlitāris perītissimus.
satis causae.
summus mōns.

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 23, 24

104. On the next day Cæsar, changing his line of march, hastened to go to Bibracte, which was the richest city of the Hædui and not more than eighteen miles distant, because in two days[1] it [2]would be necessary to measure out grain to the army. The Helvetii thought that he was frightened, and began to follow and harass ours on the rear. But Cæsar led his forces to the nearest hill, and, [3]drawing up his line of battle, said: "Gather the packs into one place, and let the two legions which I last enrolled be stationed on the top of yonder[4] ridge."

1. Abl. of time. 2. Imperf. subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc. 3. Abl. abs. 4. ille.

VI. MOODS AND TENSES IN DEPENDENT AND SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

LESSON XXV

105. Sequence of Tenses. — § 482–484 (284–286. R.); B. 266, 267; G. 509 ff.; H. 543–545 (490–494); H-B. 476.

106. The Sequence of Tenses is nothing peculiar to Latin, but is familiar from English usage. Compare —

He **fears** that he **may** die.
He **feared** that he **might** die.

The change from **may** to **might**, owing to the change in the main verb from **fears** to **feared**, corresponds to the change in Latin from the present to the imperfect subjunctive. The above in Latin would be —

Timet nē moriātur.
Timēbat nē morerētur.

The laws of Tense-Sequence do not apply with equal stringency to all dependent constructions and were often disregarded.

107. Table for Sequence of Tenses

	Principal Verb	Dependent Subjunctive	
		Incomplete or Continued Action	Completed Action
Primary	Present Future Future Perfect	Present	Perfect
Secondary	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

108. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

impetum facere in aliquem.	*to make an attack on some one.*
conversa sīgna īnferre.	*to face about and charge.*
sē recipere.	*to retreat.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 25

109. 1. Let us remove the horses to make the danger of all equal. 2. The soldiers hurled their javelins to break through the phalanx of the enemy. 3. They had drawn their swords to make an attack upon us. 4. The Gauls were so[1] hindered that many threw their shields away. 5. The iron has bent[2] so that we cannot draw it out. 6. They were so[3] worn out with wounds that they retreated to the mountain. 7. The Tulingi, who are guarding the rear, will exhort the Helvetii to renew the battle. 8. They were fighting with body unprotected in order that their shields might not be [4]a hindrance to them. 9. [5]Shall we face about and charge?

1. adeō. 2. Latin, "bent itself." 3. tam. 4. Latin, "for a hindrance to themselves." 5. A deliberative question. Cf. sec. **90**.

LESSON XXVI

110. Peculiarities in Tense-Sequence. — § 485. *a, b, c, e, g, h* (287. *a, b, c, e, f*); B. 268. 1–6; G. 509. 2; H. 546–550 (495. I–VI); H-B. 478.

111. Note that after a primary tense the *perfect subjunctive* must be used to denote *any past action*, e.g. —

I do not doubt that they { *have written.* / *were writing.* / *wrote.* } **nōn dubitō quīn scrīpserint.**

112. The Historical Present takes either the primary or the secondary sequence.

113. The Perfect Definite (perfect with *have*) takes the secondary sequence unless the reference to present time is very distinct.

114. The most important exception to the rules for tense-sequence is that in Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses) completed action is regularly expressed by the *Perfect Subjunctive* after secondary as well as after primary tenses. However, if the action is regarded as continued or incomplete, the Imperfect Subjunctive should be used here as elsewhere after a secondary tense.

115. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ācriter pūgnātum est.	*the battle has been sharply fought, there has been sharp fighting.*
alterī . . . alterī.	*the one party . . . the other party.*
ad multam noctem.	*till late at night.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 26

116. 1. The battle has been so sharply fought that no one can see an enemy in retreat. 2. The one party retreats[1] to the mountain, the other withdraws to the wagons to escape[2] the attacks of our (men). 3. That they might wound our men, they kept hurling javelins till late at night. 4. Let us take possession of the baggage [3]that they may not

pile up the carts for a rampart. 5. They march[1] continually all night that they may arrive in the territory of the Lingones. 6. Cæsar has sent a letter to the Lingones that they may not assist the enemy. 7. He [4]tells in what light he regards them. 8. He told in what light he had regarded them. 9. He is telling in what light [5]he will regard them. 10. He has told in what light he regards them. 11. He tells in what light he was regarding them.

1. Historical present. 2. **effugiō**. 3. **nē**, negative purpose. 4. **dīcō**, here followed by an indirect question. 5. First periphrastic, cf. sec. **219**.

LESSON XXVII

117. Pure and Relative Clauses of Purpose. — § 530, 531 (317. 1, 2. *b*); B. 282; G. 543, 544. I; 545; H. 568, 590 (497); H-B. 502. 2.

118. Relative clauses are used in Latin not alone to state a fact about the antecedent, but may be used as well to express *purpose*, *result*, *characteristic*, *cause*, or *concession*. The subjunctive mood is used in all such cases. The indicative merely states a fact.

119. A test for a relative clause of purpose is that **ut** with a personal or demonstrative pronoun may be substituted for the relative pronoun, e.g. —

Mīsit mīlitēs quī vidērent = **mīsit mīlitēs ut (iī) vidērent.**
He sent soldiers who should see = *he sent soldiers that they might see.*

120. The difference in emphasis between a clause of purpose introduced by **ut** and one introduced by a relative pronoun may be illustrated by the following sentence: —

a. **lēgātōs mīsit ut peterent pācem.**
b. **mīsit lēgātōs quī peterent pācem.**

Either form of the sentence may be translated *he sent ambassadors to seek peace*. But in *a* the **ut**-clause is an adverbial modifier of **mīsit** and emphasizes the purpose of the sending. In *b* the

quī-clause is an adjective modifier of **lēgātōs** and emphasizes the ambassadors as the persons who have a purpose to perform.

121. **quō** (abl. of the relative) is used to introduce a purpose clause containing a comparative. **quō** = **ut eō**, and is the abl. of degree of difference: —

Pontem facit quō facilius trānseat, *he builds a bridge that he may cross more easily* (lit. *by which the more easily*).

Classem cōgit quō parātior esse possit, *he collects a fleet that he may be more prepared.*

122. In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive: —

She stoops to conquer. He sent ambassadors to seek peace.

IT IS NEVER SO EXPRESSED IN THE BEST CLASSIC LATIN PROSE.

123. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

in itinere.	*on the way.*
arma trādere.	*to surrender arms.*
prīmā nocte.	*the first part of the night.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 27, 28

124. 1. The Helvetii will send legates to him [1]to beg for peace. 2. They met him on the way to talk [2]the sooner about a surrender. 3. Six thousand men hastened to the Rhine that they might not surrender their arms. 4. They went in the first part of the night the better[3] to conceal their flight. 5. The hostages and arms have been surrendered that we may not be regarded in the light of enemies. 6. We have nothing at home to sustain hunger. 7. Let us restore the towns and villages which we have burned, lest the Germans cross into the Helvetian territory. 8. Let us cross the river to [4]supply them with grain [5]more easily.

1. Rel. clause of purpose. 2. **quō mātūrius.** 3. **melius.** By what conjunction should the purpose clause be introduced? Cf. sec. **121.** 4. Latin, "make a supply of grain for them." 5. **facilius.**

LESSON XXVIII

125. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

imperiō potīrī.	*to obtain the chief power.*
ab hīs poenās repetere.	*to inflict punishment on these* (lit. *to exact punishment from these*).
ex ūsū Galliae.	*to the advantage of Gaul.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 29, 30

126. Cæsar found in the Helvetian camp records, written in Greek characters, which showed[1] how many could bear arms. The sum total of these was about ninety-two thousand. With these forces they had left their homes to obtain the supreme power over entire Gaul and to hold the remaining states as vassals. [2]For this reason the chiefs of Gaul, when they came[3] to congratulate Cæsar, said: [4]"Although you made war upon the Helvetians to inflict punishment upon them for injuries [5]to the Romans, yet this matter has happened not less to our advantage than to yours.[6]"

1. **dēmōnstrō, -āre.** 2. **Quam ob rem.** 3. Latin, "had come." 4. Observe that this is not indir. disc. 5. Objective genitive. 6. **tuō**, sc. **ūsū.**

LESSON XXIX

127. **Substantive Clauses.** — § 561, 562 (329); B. 294; H. 540; H-B. 238.

128. **Substantive Clauses of Purpose.** — § 563, 564 (317. 3, 331); B. 294–296; G. 546–550; H. 564–567, 568. 2 (498, 499); H-B. 502. 3, 4.

129. Among the common verbs that regularly take the subjunctive in the object clause to express the purpose or will of the speaker are —

cēnseō, *move, resolve.*	**negōtium dō**, *employ, charge.*
hortor, cohortor, *urge, exhort.*	**operam dō**, *take pains.*
imperō, mandō, *order, command.*	**ōrō, petō, quaerō, rogō**, *ask.*
metuō, timeō, vereor, *fear.*	**persuādeō**, *persuade.*
moneō, *advise.*	**pōstulō**, *demand.*

130. Common verbs that may take the subjunctive but more usually take the infinitive are —

cupiō, *desire.*	**statuō, cōnstituō**, *determine.*
sinō, *permit.*	**volō**, *wish* (also **nōlō, mālō**).

131. The following verbs take the infinitive: —

cōnor, *attempt.*	**patior**, *allow.*
iubeō, *order, command.*	**vetō**, *forbid.*

132. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

semel atque iterum.	*again and again.*
auxilium pōstulātum.	*to ask aid.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 31 TO **Sed pēius victōribus**, ETC.

133. 1. We ask that it be permitted us to talk to you privately. 2. They fear lest what they have said[1] will be reported. 3. Let us strive to obtain what we desire. 4. The Arverni wished[2] the Germans to be called in (to serve) for pay. 5. There are now about fifteen thousand Germans in Gaul. 6. But we fear that more will be brought across. 7. The Hædui could not be prevented from contending with these again and again. 8. Let us go to Rome to the senate [3]to ask aid. 9. We fear that they can be held neither by oath nor by hostages.

1. Subjv., because part of the purpose clause (subjv. by attraction), cf. sec. **293**. 2. **cupiō**. 3. Express in two ways.

LESSON XXX

Clauses of Purpose — *Continued*

134. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

paucīs annīs.	*in a few years.*
nōbilissimī cūiusque līberī.	*children of all the noblest.*
idem facere quod.	*to do the same as.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 31 FROM **Sed pēius victōribus**

135. 1. They feared that Ariovistus, king of the Germans, would settle in their[1] territory. 2. He could not be prevented [2]from occupying the best part of entire Gaul. 3. He commanded[3] them to prepare a place for the Harudes. 4. In a few years the Germans will try [4]to drive the Gauls from the Gallic territory. 5. He demanded the children of all the noblest as hostages, in order that everything might be done according to his[1] will. 6. Let us seek another home that we may no longer be under his control. 7. Cæsar prevented a larger number of Germans [5]from crossing the Rhine. 8. We must do the same as the Helvetians did, [6]the more easily to defend ourselves from the violence of Ariovistus.

1. **suus.** 2. Latin, "by which not," **quīn** with the subjv. 3. Use both **imperō** and **iubeō**. 4. **Cōnor** takes the complementary infin., other verbs of striving and effort usually the subjv. 5. **quōminus** or **nē** with the subjv. 6. What conjunction?

LESSON XXXI

136. **The Various Ways of Expressing Purpose.** — § 533 (318); B. 282. 1, 2; 338. 1. *c*), 3; 339. 1, 6; 340. 1; 337. 4; G. 545, 546 ff., 630, 428. 2; 432, 435, 438. N.; H. 568 ff., 626. 5; 628, 633, 638. 3 (497 ff., 542. I, III. N. 2; 544. 1; 546, 549. 3); H-B. 502. 2; 612. I, III; 618.

137. To express purpose observe—

a. That the *usual way* is by **ut** (neg. **nē**).

b. That the *relative* **quī** is preferred when the persons who have the purpose to perform are emphasized (cf. sec. **120**).

c. That **quō** is used when the purpose clause contains a comparative (cf. sec. **121**).

d. That the *gerund and gerundive* are used in short phrases.

e. That the *supine* is used only with verbs of *motion* and is not common even with them (cf. sec. **351** and **353**).

f. That the future participle and the infinitive (cf. sec. **122**) should be avoided.

138. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ōrātiōnem habēre.	*to make a speech.*
nē in occultō quidem.	*not even in secret.*
dē aliquō supplicium sūmere.	*to inflict punishment on some one.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 32

139. 1. Diviciacus was present [1] to make a speech. 2. The cruelty of Ariovistus prevented the Sequani from doing the things that the others did. 3. Who [2] persuaded them [3] to receive him within their bounds? 4. They came to implore aid. (Express the purpose in as many ways as possible.) 5. Cæsar urged [4] the Sequani to reply, but they remained silent. 6. Not even in secret did they complain, lest he inflict severe punishment on them.[5] 7. Do you fear that I shall be unable to defend the Sequani?

1. Express by the gerundive. 2. **quis.** 3. Not accusative. 4. **hortor.** 5. Use **ipse.**

LESSON XXXII

140. Review the rules for Sequence of Tenses, Lessons XXV-XXVI.

141. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

ab hīs poenās repetere.
ācriter pūgnātum est.
ad multam noctem.
alterī . . . alterī.
arma trādere.
auxilium pōstulātum.
conversa sīgna īnferre.
dē aliquō supplicium sūmere.
ex ūsū Galliae.
idem facere quod.
imperiō potīrī.
impetum facere in aliquem.
in itinere.
nē in occultō quidem.
nōbilissimī cūiusque līberī.
ōrātiōnem habēre.
paucīs annīs.
prīmā nocte.
sē recipere.
semel atque iterum.

For Written Translation — Book I. 33

142. I think that these matters [1]should be attended to as soon as possible. For the Germans are growing accustomed to cross the Rhine, and when they hold[2] all Gaul in servitude the wild and barbarous men will not restrain themselves from hastening into Italy. In addition to this, it is very disgraceful to me [3]that hostages of the Hædui, our allies, are with Ariovistus. He seems to me very arrogant.[4] Let us, therefore, promise our allies that we will put an end to the outrages of Ariovistus, and let us encourage them [5]to be of good courage.

1. Note that in the Latin idiom the verb is impersonal. 2. Fut. perf. indic. Cf. sec. **71**. 3. An infinitive clause. 4. Abl. of description. 5. Latin, "to have good hope."

LESSON XXXIII

143. Clauses of Characteristic. — § 535. *a*, *b* (320. *a*, *b*); B. 283. 1, 2; G. 631. 1, 2; H. 591. 1 (503. I); H-B. 520, 521. 1. *a–c*.

144. When a relative clause states not a mere fact about the antecedent (cf. sec. **118**), but defines it as having a certain quality or characteristic, the subjunctive is used and we have a relative clause of characteristic. This construction is especially common when the antecedent is indefinite or general and needs to be defined. Compare the two sentences —

a. The soldier who is fleeing is afraid.

b. No one who flees is brave.

In *a* the relative clause merely states the fact that the soldier is fleeing; in *b* the thought is "No one *of such a character that* he flees is brave." Hence the Latin: —

a. **Mīles quī fugit est timidus.**

b. **Nēmō quī fugiat est fortis.**

145. Among the indefinite and general expressions followed by the relative clause of characteristic are the following: —

there are some / *there are those* } *who* = **sunt quī.**

who is there who = **quis est quī.**

there is no one who = **nēmō est quī.**

there are none who = **nūllī sunt quī.**

he is the only one who = { **ūnus** / **sōlus** } **est quī.**

the one to, such a man as to = **is quī.**

146. A test for the relative clause of characteristic is that the relative may be translated by the words *of such a character that.*

147. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

aliquid ab aliquō pōstulāre.	*to demand something from some one.*
grātiam referre.	*to make a grateful return.*
iniūriās neglegere.	*to overlook injuries.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 34, 35

148. 1. There were some who wished to confer with Ariovistus about the supreme welfare.[1] 2. Ariovistus [2]is not the man to come to Cæsar. 3. Ariovistus did not dare to come [3]into the parts of Gaul that Cæsar possessed. 4. Ariovistus did not dare to come into such parts of Gaul as Cæsar possessed. 5. I am not the only one to whom it seems strange. 6. [4]Who is there that will carry this reply back to Cæsar? 7. [5]I am not the man to overlook the wrongs of the Hædui. 8. There is no one that dares to demand these things of him. 9. There are some who think that the general welfare should be discussed. 10. Is there no one to make a grateful return to the Roman people?

1. **res.** 2. **nōn is est.** 3. The only difference between this clause and the corresponding one in the next sentence is in the mood of the verb *possessed.* The indic. in the former merely states the fact; the subjv. in the latter characterizes the parts of Gaul into which Ariovistus did not dare to come as belonging to Cæsar. 4. **quis est quī,** i.e. *who is of such a character that.* 5. Cf. sentence 2.

*LESSON XXXIV

149. **Relative Clauses after** *dīgnus, indīgnus,* **etc.** — § 535. *f* (320. *f*); B. 282. 3; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5–7 (503. II); H-B. 513. 3.

150. Compare the Latin and English idioms in the following sentence: —

These books are { worthy / unworthy / suitable / fit } to be read.

Hī librī sunt { **dīgnī** / **indīgnī** / **idōneī** / **aptī** } **quī legantur.**

Such sentences sometimes assume a more colloquial form in English, as, *these books are worth reading, fit to read, deserve to be read,* etc.

This construction of the subjunctive is closely related to characteristic.

151. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

suō iūre ūtī.	*to exercise one's rights.*
alicui bellum īnferre.	*to make war upon some one.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 36

152. 1. The reply of Ariovistus was [1]worth hearing. 2. What state is there that does not govern the conquered after its own will? 3. You are not a suitable person to prescribe to me how I shall exercise my rights. 4. You are the one, Cæsar, that is making my revenues less. 5. The conquered [2]do not deserve to exercise rights of their own. 6. Among the soldiers of Ariovistus there were some that had not entered a house for fourteen years. 7. [3]Don't make war upon the Hædui. 8. Is there [4]any one, Ariovistus, that can contend with you without his own destruction?

1. Latin, "worthy which should be heard." 2. Latin, "are unworthy who should." 3. For prohibitions, cf. sec. **99**. 4. **quisquam**, followed here by a relative clause of characteristic.

LESSON XXXV

153. Pure and Relative Clauses of Result. — § 537. 1, 2. *a*; 538 (319. 1, 2. R. *a*); B. 284. 1, 2; G. 552, 631; H. 570, 591 (500. I, II); H-B. 521. 2.

154. Distinguish carefully between the English expression of purpose and of result. Compare —

a. He fled quickly to save his life.

b. He fled so quickly that he saved his life.

a expresses a purpose, *b* a result. In Latin the constructions of purpose and result are precisely alike except that the negative in a purpose clause is **nē**, but in a result clause it is **nōn**.*

155. Frequently demonstrative words, meaning *so* or *such*, like **ita, sīc, tam, tālis, tantus, adeō**, in the main clause give warning that a result clause is to follow. Cf. text, Book I. 38, **reliquum spatium . . . mōns continet . . . ita ut**, etc.

156. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

quam celerrimē.	*as quickly as possible.*
sē coniungere cum.	*to unite with.*
dūcere bellum.	*to prolong the war.*
ex utrāque parte.	*on each side.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 37, 38

157. 1. The Hædui came [1]to complain. 2. The Suevi had encamped near the bank of the river [2]that they might cross more easily. 3. Cæsar was so moved by these reports [3] that he hastened as quickly as possible. 4. Cæsar feared that the new force of the Suevi would unite with the old forces of Ariovistus. 5. Ariovistus will hasten to seize Vesontio. 6. I must take the greatest precautions that this does not happen. 7. Vesontio is [4]a town such that it offers a great opportunity for prolonging a war. 8. It is so fortified by nature that a river surrounds almost the entire town. 9. A mountain filled up the remaining space, so that the banks of the river touched the mountain on each side.

1. Not infin. 2. What conjunction? Cf. sec. **121**. 3. Latin, "things." 4. **id oppidum quod**, cf. sec. **146**.

* See sec. **114** for a possible difference in the sequence of tenses.

LESSON XXXVI

158. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

sīgna ferre.	*to march, advance* (lit. *to bear the standards*).
nōn mediocriter.	*not a little.*
alius aliā causā inlātā.	*one on one pretext, another on another.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 39

159. Cæsar hastened towards Vesontio by such long marches that he seized the town before the arrival of Ariovistus. While he [1] was tarrying there a few days, the army heard so [2] many rumors [3] about the incredible valor and huge size of the Germans, that great fear seized the soldiers and disturbed their hearts not a little. Not even the tribunes of the soldiers could compose their features; but one on one pretext, another on another, [4] sought permission to depart. There were some who feared that the soldiers would not obey the command when Cæsar should order them to break camp and march.

1. Not past in Latin. Cf. sec. **54**, II. 2. *so* = tam when modifying an adjective or adverb; usually ita or sīc when modifying a verb. 3. Latin, "voices." 4. Latin, "asked that it might be permitted them."

LESSON XXXVII

160. Substantive Clauses of Result. — § 568–571 (332. *a*. 1, 2); B. 297; G. 553; H. 571 (501); H-B. 521. 3. *a*), *b*).

161. Substantive Clauses of Result may be —

a. Subject.
b. Object.
c. Appositive (with neuter pronoun).

d. Predicate nominative after **mōs est** (*it is a custom*) and similar expressions.

162. Common verbs and phrases taking an **ut**-clause of result as subject or object are —

accēdit, additur, } *it is added.*
accidit, contingit, ēvenit, fit, *it happens.*
facere, efficere, *to cause, effect, accomplish, bring about.*
necesse est, *it is necessary.*
relinquitur, reliquum est, restat, *it remains.*
sequitur, cōnsequitur, *it follows.*

163. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

patrum nostrōrum memoriā.	*within the memory of our fathers.*
dē virtūte dēspērāre.	*to despair of valor.*
proximā nocte.	*the next night.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 40

164. 1. I fear that Ariovistus will not seek the friendship of Cæsar. 2. Rage and madness caused[1] him to make war upon them. 3. [2]Can it be that you despair of your valor or of my care? 4. [3]An added fact is that Marius conquered these same Germans within the memory of our fathers. 5. [4]From which it follows that they are not a match for our army. 6. Ariovistus is a general who conquers by stratagem more than by valor. 7. There were some who acted arrogantly. 8. Thus it happened that he moved the camp the next night. 9. Cæsar [5]had such confidence in the tenth legion that he said he would go with it alone.

1. **efficiō**. 2. **potestne fierī** with a subject clause of result. 3. **Latin,** "it is added that." 4. **ex quō**. 5. Latin, "so trusted to."

LESSON XXXVIII

165. Clauses introduced by *quīn* and *quōminus*. — § 558, 559 (319. *d*; 332. *g*. R., N. 2); B. 284. 3; 295. 3; 298; G. 549, 554, 555, 556; H. 568. 8; 594. II; 595, 596 (504, 505. I. 1; II); H-B. 502. 3. *b*); 519. 4. *b*); 521. 1, 2, 3. *b*).

166. Verbs of Hindering and Opposing take —

a. When *affirmative* the subjunctive with **nē** or **quōminus**.

b. When *negatived* the subjunctive with **quīn**.

NOTE. — **Prohibeō** more commonly takes the infinitive.

167. The constructions after **dubitō** are as follows: —

a. **Dubitō** in the sense of *hesitate* takes the infinitive: —

Germānī trānsīre dubitant, *the Germans hesitate to cross.*

b. **Nōn dubitō**, *I do not doubt*, and similar negative expressions of doubt take the subjunctive with **quīn**: —

Nōn dubitō quīn Germānī trānseant, *I do not doubt that the Germans will cross.*

c. **Dubitō**, *I doubt*, is followed by an indirect question (cf. sec. 217):

Dubitō num Germānī trānseant, *I doubt whether the Germans are crossing.*

168. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

grātiās agere.	*to thank.*
summa bellī.	*the supreme control of the war.*
alicui maximam fidem habēre.	*to have the greatest confidence in some one.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 41

169. 1. There is no doubt that the feelings[1] of all were changed. 2. The tenth legion did not hesitate to thank him. 3. There was no doubt that this legion was well prepared for carrying on war. 4. The remaining legions could

not be prevented[2] from apologizing to Cæsar. 5. We do not doubt that the judgment concerning the supreme control of the war belongs to the general. 6. They feared that Cæsar would not accept their apology. 7. He commanded[3] Diviciacus to reconnoiter the route. 8. It happened that Cæsar had the greatest confidence in him. 9. The cowardice of the soldiers did not prevent Cæsar from setting out. 10. I doubt whether the scouts will inform Cæsar.

1. Latin, "minds." 2. **prohibeō**. 3. Express both with **imperō** and with **iubeō**.

LESSON XXXIX

General Review of Purpose and Result

170. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XXVII–XXXVIII.

171. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

māgnam in spem venīre.	*to be very hopeful* (lit. *to come into great hope*).
ultrō citrōque.	*back and forth.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 42

172. 1. Ariovistus sent ambassadors to Cæsar [1]to demand a conference. 2. Cæsar did not doubt that Ariovistus was now returning to reason. 3. I am very hopeful that the result will be that he will cease from his obstinacy. 4. It happened that ambassadors were sent back and forth frequently. 5. Cæsar, I demand that you bring no infantry to the conference. 6. I fear that I shall be surrounded. 7. Fear of an ambush did not prevent[2] Ariovistus from coming to the conference. 8. I will mount the tenth legion on horses,[3] that I may go more safely.[4]

1. Express in as many ways as possible. 2. **dēterreō**. 3. The dative, or **in** with the accusative. 4. **tūtius**. What conjunction is used when the purpose clause contains a comparative?

LESSON XL

173. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

alicui bellum īnferre.	**māgnam in spem venīre.**
alicui maximam fidem habēre.	**nōn mediocriter.**
aliquid ab aliquō pōstulāre.	**patrum nostrōrum memoriā.**
alius aliā causā inlātā.	**proximā nocte.**
dē virtūte dēspērāre.	**quam celerrimē.**
dūcere bellum.	**sē coniungere cum.**
ex utrāque parte.	**sīgna ferre.**
grātiam referre.	**summa bellī.**
grātiās agere.	**suō iūre ūtī.**
iniūriās neglegere.	**ultrō citrōque.**

For Written Translation — Book I. 43

174. Both Cæsar and Ariovistus came to a certain[1] mound to hold a conference. The German and Roman cavalry had been so arranged that they were distant two hundred paces from the mound. The Roman people have this custom, that they do not allow influence and rank to be taken from those that have sought their friendship; [2]and so Cæsar demanded from Ariovistus that he should not make war upon the Hædui nor their allies. For it happened that there were ancient and just reasons for [3]intimate relations between the Romans and the Hædui.

1. **quīdam.** 2. **itaque.** 3. "intimate relations," translate by one word.

LESSON XLI

175. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod, quia, quoniam*, and *quandō*. — § 540. *a* (321. N. 3); B. 285, 286; G. 539 ff.; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555, 535. 2. *a, b*.

176. Causal Clauses are expressed by

1. **quod** and **quia**.
   - *a.* With the indicative to assign a reason positively on the writer's or speaker's authority.
   - *b.* With the subjunctive to assign a reason doubtfully on another's authority.
2. **quoniam** and **quandō**, with the indicative.
3. **cum** (*since*), with the subjunctive.
4. **quī**, with the subjunctive.

N.B. The subjunctive with **quia** is *rare*.

177. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

imperītus rērum.	*ignorant of affairs.*
prō hoste habēre.	*to regard as an enemy.*
auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūtī.	*to use the help of the Romans.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 44

178. 1. I crossed the Rhine because the Gauls invited me. 2. The Germans left home because they had dwelling-places in Gaul. 3. It is a right of war that victors impose a tribute on the conquered. 4. Ariovistus will make war upon the Gauls because they have made war upon him. 5. Kings sought the friendship of the Roman people, because it was a protection to them. 6. Ariovistus was not so ignorant of affairs as not to know this. 7. Ariovistus regarded Cæsar as an enemy because he did not surrender Gaul to him. 8. You are unjust because you keep an army in Gaul to crush me. 9. The Hædui wished to use the help of the Romans because they had been called friends by the senate.

N.B. Sentences 2, 4, 5, 7, 9, should be given both with the indic., as expressing the speaker's reason, and with the subjv., as expressing the reason of another.

LESSON XLII

179. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum* and *quī*. — § 540. *c*, *d*; 549, 535. *e* (320. *e*; 321. *c*; 326); B. 286. 2; 283. 3. *a*; G. 586, 626; H. 592, 598, 599 (517); H-B. 523, 526, 527.

180. **Cum** causal (*since*) is a variety of **cum** temporal (*when*) and should be used when *since* has also the idea of *when* (*the circumstances being such*) so that the conjunction may be translated by either word without changing the essential meaning of the sentence. **Cum** causal is never used when the reason is regarded as an admitted fact.

181. **Quī** causal is merely a variety of the relative clause of characteristic (cf. sec. **144**), the quality expressed by the subjunctive being regarded as the cause for the action of the main verb. For example, in the sentence *a general who conquers his enemies is praised*, the relative clause *who conquers his enemies* characterizes *a general* and also gives the reason for his being praised, hence the Latin: **imperātor quī hostīs vincat laudātur.**

182. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

loquendī fīnem facere.	*to cease speaking.*
sine ūllō perīculō.	*without any danger.*
iūdiciō senātūs.	*in the judgment of the senate.*
Galliā Rōmānīs interdīcere.	*to order the Romans out of Gaul.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 45, 46

183. 1. It is the custom of the Roman people not [1]to desert their deserving allies. 2. I judge that Gaul belongs rather to the Roman people, since they have conquered it. 3. In the judgment of the senate, there is no doubt that Gaul ought to be free. 4. Since the horsemen were drawing

nearer the mound, Cæsar ceased speaking. 5. I command you not to throw back any weapons at all. 6. A battle with the cavalry will be without danger to you [2]who are of the chosen legion. 7. There ought to be no ground for saying that the Germans were betrayed. 8. Since Ariovistus has ordered the Romans out of all Gaul, let us attack him. 9. Since Fabius had not reduced Gaul to a province, it used its own laws.

1. Not infin. 2. A relative clause of cause.

LESSON XLIII

184. Temporal clauses may be classified as follows: —

1. Clauses with **postquam, ubi, ut, simul ac**, etc., with the *indicative* (usually perfect).

2. Clauses with **cum** with the indicative or subjunctive.

3. Clauses with **antequam** or **priusquam** with the indicative or subjunctive.

4. Clauses with **dum, dōnec**, or **quoad** with the indicative or subjunctive.

N.B. Observe that only with the first of these varieties is the indicative always used.

185. In general it may be stated that expressions of *pure time* are in the indicative. The subjunctive is used when the time relation is modified by some other idea, as *cause*, *concession*, *doubt*, *purpose*, and the like.

186. **Temporal Clauses introduced by** *postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, ut prīmum*, etc. — § 543. *a* (323, 324); B. 287; G. 561 ff.; H. 602 (518); H-B. 550, 557, 558.

187. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

dē rēbus agere.	*to talk* or *deliberate about things.*
causa conloquendī.	*an occasion for a conference.*
peccandī Germānīs causa nōn est.	*the Germans have no ground for committing an outrage.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 47

188. 1. After Cæsar had returned to camp, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him. 2. Since we have begun to talk about these things, let us finish them. 3. I want you [1]to name a day for a conference a second time. 4. Since Cæsar[2] did not see an occasion for a conference, he sent an ambassador to him. 5. The Germans cannot be restrained from hurling their weapons against their enemies. 6. He sent Valerius Procillus, [3]in (respect to) whom the Germans had no ground for committing an outrage. 7. As soon as he tried to speak, Ariovistus threw him into chains. 8. After you have learned what Ariovistus says, report to me. 9. As soon as he saw them in camp, he shouted.

1. Not infin. 2. Place first. Cf. sec. **18**. 3. A relative clause of cause. Cf. secs. **118, 181**.

LESSON XLIV

189. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

diēs continuōs quīnque.	*for five days in succession.*
facultātem pūgnandī facere.	*to give an opportunity for fighting.*
castrīs sē tenēre.	*to keep one's self in camp.*

For Written Translation — Book I. 48, 49

190. After the Germans had made a camp two miles beyond him, Cæsar, that he might not be cut off from grain and supplies, led his troops out before the camp five days in succession to give Ariovistus an opportunity for fighting. But since the king kept himself in camp, Cæsar thought that [1]he ought to advance further. When Ariovistus[2] perceived that Cæsar was moving his camp forward, he sent sixteen

thousand light-armed infantry with all the cavalry, with this intention, that he might terrify our forces.

1. Second periphrastic conjugation, used impersonally in this case because the verb is intransitive. The subject "he," if expressed, would be the dative of apparent agent, but may be omitted. The dative of apparent agent is often omitted when it is a personal pronoun. 2. Place first. Cf. sec. **18**.

LESSON XLV

191. **Temporal Clauses introduced by** *cum*. — § 545, 546. N. 3 (325); B. 288, 289; G. 578–585; H. 600, 601 (521); H-B. 524, 525, 550. *a*; 551.

192. The rules for **cum** temporal may be summarized in the general statement that in temporal clauses with **cum** the *indicative* is used of *present* and *future* time; and the *subjunctive* of *past* time, except when a date is given or the time at which the action of the main verb occurred is defined (cf. A. & G. § 546. N. 3).

a. **Cum** temporal with a past indicative is not of frequent occurrence; and when so found **cum** is generally preceded by **tum**, as, —

Tum cum multī ceciderant hostēs fūgērunt, *at that time when many had fallen, the enemy fled.*

193. When **cum** means *whenever* it expresses customary or recurrent action and introduces a general condition (cf. sec. **240**). In this use **cum** is usually followed by the perfect or pluperfect indicative.

194. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

aciem īnstruere.	*to draw up the line of battle.*
ad speciem ūtī.	*to use for show.*

For Oral Translation — Book I. 50, 51

195. 1. When he had marched a short distance from the larger camp, he drew up his line of battle. 2. He led his army back into camp because the enemy did not give[1] him an opportunity for fighting. 3. He will send troops [2]to

storm the camp. 4. When I inquired from the matrons, they spoke as follows. 5. This is a custom among the Germans, that they do not fight before the new moon. 6. Since you wish to use the auxiliaries for show, station them before the camp. 7. When Cæsar approached [3]up to the very camp, they led out their forces. 8. When they had surrounded the line with carts, they put the women in[4] them.

1. Indic. or subjv. or either? Cf. sec. **176**. 2. Express in as many ways as possible. Cf. sec. **137**. 3. Latin, "even to the camp." 4. in with the accusative, or the adv. eō.

*LESSON XLVI

196. Temporal Clauses introduced by *antequam* and *priusquam*. — § 551 (327); B. 291, 292; G. 574–577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. *a–d*; 550. *b*; 561, 571.

197. The constructions after **antequam** and **priusquam** are summarized in the following table: —

Antequam and Priusquam	I. Present and Future Tenses.	Indicative.	
	II. Past Tenses.	*a.* Indicative.	The Perfect Indicative is used to state an *actual occurrence*.
		b. Subjunctive.	The Imperfect Subjunctive (rarely the Pluperfect) is used to denote *purpose* or *tendency*, in past time or when the action that it denotes *did not take place*.

198. **Antequam** and **priusquam** consist each of two parts often written separately and sometimes separated by other words: **ante . . . quam, prius . . . quam.** **Priusquam** is commoner in classic prose than **antequam.**

199. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ā dextrō cornū.	*on the right wing.*
pūgnātum est.	*the battle was fought, there was fighting.*
in aliquem incidere.	*to fall in with some one.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK I. 52, 53

200. 1. Before he joined battle, Cæsar put a *legatus* in command of each legion. 2. The enemy ran forward before we could hurl our spears. 3. Crassus sent the third line as aid, when we were hard pressed on the right wing. 4. There was sharp fighting on the left wing. 5. We did not cease fleeing before we came to the Rhine. 6. After the enemy had fled, Procillus and Metius were rescued from their hands. 7. Ariovistus found a skiff before he could be captured. 8. When I was being dragged along by my guards, I fell in with Cæsar. 9. The Germans consulted the lots about me three times before the Romans found me.

LESSON XLVII

201. **Temporal Clauses introduced by** *dum*, *dōnec*, **and** *quoad*. — § 553–556 (328); B. 293; G. 571, 572; H. 603 (519); H-B. 507. 5; 550. *b*; 559, 560.

202. The constructions after **dum, dōnec, quoad**, are as follows: —

Dum, dōnec, quoad.

- **dum, quoad** (*until*) — Indicative:
  - *a.* Perfect Indicative to denote an actual fact in past time.
  - *b.* Present or Imperfect Subjunctive in temporal clauses implying purpose or expectancy.
- **dum, dōnec, quoad** (*as long as*) — Indicative.
- **dum** (*while*) — Present Indicative (Historical Present) to denote continued action in past time.

N.B. **Dum** (*until*) with a past indicative is *rare*.

203. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Caesarem certiōrem facere.	*to inform Cæsar.*
molestē ferre.	*to take (it) ill.*
dum haec geruntur.	*while this was going on.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 1, 2

204. 1. Cæsar remained in Hither Gaul, until rumors were brought to him. 2. While the Belgæ were giving hostages to each other, Labienus informed Cæsar. 3. We fear that the Roman army will be led against us. 4. Do not take it ill that the Romans are wintering in Gaul. 5. We shall have opportunities for hiring men until they seize the sovereignty. 6. Cæsar set out after he had enrolled two new legions. 7. Cæsar waited[1] until there began to be an abundance of fodder. 8. Cæsar moved his camp while the Belgæ were collecting their forces. 9. While this was going on, he arrived at the territory of the Belgæ.

1. **exspectō.**

LESSON XLVIII

205. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

dē imprōvīsō.	*unexpectedly.*
manūs cōgere.	*to assemble forces.*
nōn dēterrērī quīn.	*not to be prevented from.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 3

206. While the Belgæ were assembling their forces, Cæsar unexpectedly arrived at their borders. The Remi, who were the [1]only ones that had not conspired against the Romans, when they heard[2] of Cæsar's arrival sent ambassadors to him and assisted (him) with grain and other supplies. But all the rest of the Belgæ were in arms, and not

even the Germans who dwell on this side of the Rhine could be prevented from [3]making common cause with these.

1. **sōlus**, followed by a relative clause of characteristic. Cf. sec. **145**. 2. Latin, "had heard." 3. Translate "making common cause" by one word.

*LESSON XLIX

207. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quod*. — § 572 (333); B. 299; G. 524, 525; H. 588. 3 (540. IV); H-B. 552.

208. The substantive clause with **quod** is usually used as subject or in apposition with a neuter pronoun (cf. examples in the grammar). It should be remembered that an **ut**-clause or an infinitive with subject accusative are possible equivalents and are much more common.

209. English clauses introduced by *whereas* or *as to the fact that* are rendered in Latin by a **quod**-clause with the indicative. The whole clause may be regarded as an accusative of specification.

210. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

quid in bellō possunt?	*what is their ability in war?*
ab Germānīs ortī.	*of German descent* (lit. *sprung from the Germans*).

For Oral Translation — Book II. 4

211. 1. Let us see what their ability is in war. 2. As regards the fact that the Belgians assume great authority in military affairs, they are the only ones [1]that drove out the Germans. 3. This seems sure,[2] that the Belgians are of German descent. 4. [3]It was well for Cæsar that the Remi had found out everything. 5. As regards the fact that the Bellovaci demanded the control of the entire war, they had promised the greatest number of men. 6. [4]To this was added the fact that they excelled in valor. 7. King Galba was of

such[5] wisdom that the supreme control of the entire war was given to him. 8. It seems wonderful[6] that all these thousands of Belgians did not conquer Cæsar.

1. Cf. sec. **145**. 2. **certus, -a, -um**. 3. **Bene Caesarī accidit**. 4. **Hūc accēdēbat quod**. 5. Latin, "so great." 6. **mīrābilis, -e**.

LESSON L

212. **Direct Questions.** — § 330–337 (210, 211, 212); B. 162; G. 450–459, 471; H. 378–380 (351–353); H-B. 231–234.

213. The usual interrogatives in a double question are —

utrum / **-ne** / —— . . . **an** (*or*, with verb). / **annōn** (*or not*, regularly without verb).

N.B. **utrum** and **-ne** do not appear in the English translation.

214. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

ad diem fierī.	*to be done to the day.*
castra pōnere.	*to pitch camp.*
pōns in flūmine.	*a bridge over a river.*

For Oral Translation — Book II. 5, 6

215. 1. Did Cæsar command hostages to be brought to him? [1]He did. 2. Will not all these things be done to the day? [1]They will. 3. Can this be done or not? It can. 4. He pitched camp after he had led the army across the Axona. 5. There is no bridge over that river, is there? No.[1] 6. Whom did he leave on the other side of the river? Sabinus.[2] 7. Was Bibrax far distant from this camp? Only[3] eight miles. 8. Did they make a *testudo*, or undermine the wall? 9. Did not Iccius send us a messenger regarding peace? Yes. 10. Shall we send aid to them or not?

1. Questions are answered by repeating the verb. If the answer be negative, repeat the verb with **nōn**. 2. Not nominative. 3. **tantum**.

LESSON LI

216. Indirect Questions. — § 330. 2; 573–575. *a* (210. 2; 334); B. 300; G. 460, 467; H. 649. II. 1, 2, 3; 650. 1, 2; 651 (529. I, II. 1. N. 1, N. 3; 3. 1), 2); 4, 5); H-B. 537. *b*, *c*, *d*; 507. 3.

217. An indirect question is a question which depends, usually as *object*, upon a verb of asking or upon some expression of uncertainty or doubt. The introductory word may be **num**, **sī**, or **-ne**, *whether*, or an interrogative pronoun or adverb.

218. The double indirect question is introduced by the same particles as the double direct question (cf. sec. **213**), but *or not* is expressed by **necne** rather than by **annōn**.

219. The regular laws for tense-sequence are followed in indirect questions: —

1. *I see what you are doing* — **videō quid faciās.**

2. *I see what you* { *will* / *are going to* / *intend to* / *are about to* } *do* — **videō quid factūrus sīs.**

3. *I see what you* { *were doing* / *have done* / *did* / *had done* } — **videō quid fēceris** (perf. subjv.).

4. *I saw what you* { *did* / *were doing* } — **vīdī quid facerēs.**

5. *I saw what you* { *would* / *intended to* / *were about to* / *were going to* } *do* — **vīdī quid factūrus essēs.**

6. *I saw what you had done* — **vīdī quid fēcissēs.**

a. Observe from examples 2 and 5 that a future indirect question is expressed by the first periphrastic.

b. Observe from example 3 that after a principal tense *were doing* and *had done* are expressed by the *perfect* subjunctive, and

do not be misled by the English idiom into using an imperfect for the former or a pluperfect for the latter (cf. sec. 111).

220. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus.	*less than two miles off.*
proeliō supersedēre.	*to refrain from battle.*
ad extrēmās fossās.	*at the ends of the ditches.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 7, 8

221. 1. Tell me what guides Cæsar used. 2. Cæsar tells[1] us [2]why the enemy lost hope of taking the town. 3. Do you know where the enemy pitched (their) camp? Less than two miles off. 4. He asked whether Cæsar refrained from battle or not. 5. I will try what the enemy can do by valor. 6. He asked whether the place in front of the camp was suitable for drawing up a line of battle. 7. Do you not know how much space an army drawn up for battle occupies? 8. I will try whether or not I can place the engines at the ends of the ditches. 9. He told me what legions had been last enrolled.

1. **dīcō.** 2. Follow the idiom of the text.

LESSON LII

222. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XLI–LI.

223. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

ā dextrō cornū.	**causa conloquendī.**
ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus.	**dē imprōvīsō.**
ab Germānīs ortī.	**dē rēbus agere.**
aciem īnstruere.	**dēterrērī quīn.**
ad diem fierī.	**dum haec geruntur.**
ad extrēmās fossās.	**Galliā Rōmānīs interdīcere.**
ad speciem ūtī.	**in aliquem incidere.**
Caesarem certiōrem facere.	**iūdiciō senātūs.**
castra pōnere.	**loquendī fīnem facere.**

māgnam in spem venīre.
manūs cōgere.
molestē ferre.
peccandī Germānīs causa nōn est.
pōns in flūmine.
proeliō supersedēre.
pūgnātum est.
quid in bellō possunt?
sine ūllō perīculō.

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 9, 10

224. The enemy waited for a long time (to see) if Cæsar would cross the swamp, but after he had led his troops back into camp they hastened to the Axona [1]for the purpose of destroying the bridge. Since, however, they could neither take the city nor cross the river, [2]it was discussed in a council whether it was best to return home or to remain longer. We know why [3]the Bellovaci could not be persuaded to remain, and there was the added fact that provisions had begun to fail.

1. Latin, "with this purpose, that they might destroy." 2. **dēlīberātum est.** 3. Follow the text.

LESSON LIII

225. **Conditional Sentences. General Statements.** — § 512, 513, 514. *A–C* (304); B. 301; G. 589, 590; H. 572, 573 (506, 507); H-B. 573–577.

226. **Conditional Sentences with the Indicative.** — § 515. *a*; 516. 1. *a* (306, 307. 1. *a*); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574, 575 (508); H-B. 579. *a*.

227. In dealing with conditions, the first thing to be determined is the TIME. The English is often misleading, owing to the fact that the tense used and the *real* time denoted by it are not always the same (cf. sec. 71). Compare the two sentences: —

a. If this *is* a state, I *am* a citizen.

b. If the general *arrives*, he *will conquer*.

In *a* the tense used and the time are both *present;* but in *b* the present *arrives* is really future in time, as is shown by the verb *will conquer* in the conclusion. It is to be observed —

1. That *Latin always translates the real time* of the English verb rather than the tense in which it may appear.

2. That in English conditions the conclusion (apodosis) is more apt to show the real time than the condition (protasis).

228. Next to the *determination of the time* comes *its proper Latin expression.* The indicative presents no difficulties, as its tenses are used in conditions as elsewhere. The time denoted by the subjunctive tenses in conditions is as follows: —

Present subjunctive	denotes	Future time.
Imperfect subjunctive	"	Present "
Perfect subjunctive	"	Future "
Pluperfect subjunctive	"	Past "

Note carefully that THE NAMES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES AND THE TIME THEY ACTUALLY DENOTE ARE NOT THE SAME.

229. Conditions are classified according to *form* as SIMPLE, FUTURE, or CONTRARY TO FACT; and according to *time* as PRESENT, FUTURE, or PAST.

These facts and the typical use of moods and tenses are shown in the table on page 60.

For Oral Translation — Book II. 11

230. 1. If we return home, we can use our home supplies of grain. 2. As to the fact that they set out from the camp in great confusion, there was [1]no particular person in command. 3. If each one sought the first place in the march, the departure seemed like a flight. 4. If he fears[2] an ambush, he will keep his army in camp. 5. Why are they departing? I do not yet see why they are departing. 6. If the matter has been confirmed, let us send forward the cavalry. 7. If these attack the rear, they will kill a great number. 8. If they hear the noise, they will seek safety for themselves in flight. 9. If you cease[2] to pursue at sunset, you will return to camp without any danger.

1. Follow the text. 2. Cf. sec. 227.

MOODS AND TENSES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Table of Conditions.

I. Simple.

a. Present.
- Present Indicative in both clauses:
  Sī adest, bene est, *if he is* [now] *here, it is well.*

b. Past.
- Imperfect or Perfect Indicative in both clauses:
  Sī aderat, bene erat, *if he was* [then] *here, it was well.*
  Sī adfuit, bene fuit, *if he has been (was) here, it has been (was) well.*

II. Future.

a. More Vivid. Future.
1. Future Indicative in both clauses:
   Sī aderit, bene erit, *if he is* [*shall be*] *here, it will be well.*
2. Future Perfect Indicative in the condition, Future Indicative in the conclusion:
   Sī adfuerit, bene erit, *if he is* [*shall have been*] *here, it will be well.*

b. Less Vivid. Future.
1. Present Subjunctive in both clauses:
   Sī adsit, bene sit, *if he should be here, it would be well.*
2. Perfect Subjunctive in the condition, Present Subjunctive in the conclusion:
   Sī adfuerit, bene sit, *if he should be* [*should have been*] *here, it would be well.*

III. Contrary to Fact.

a. Present.
- Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses:
  Sī adesset, bene esset, *if he were* [now] *here, it would be well* (but he is NOT here).

b. Past.
- Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses:
  Sī adfuisset, bene fuisset, *if he had* [then] *been here, it would have been well* (but he was NOT here).

N.B. The mastery of this table is essential.

LESSON LIV

231. **Conditional Sentences with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (Less Vivid Future).** — § 516. 2. *b*, *c*, *d* (307. 2. *b*); B. 303; G. 596; H. 576, 577 (509); H-B. 580. *a*.

232. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

māiōrēs nātū.	*the old men.*
vīneās agere.	*to move sheds.*

For Oral Translation — Book II. 12, 13

233. 1. If he should hear that the city was without defenders, he would storm it. 2. Have you not heard why he could not take it? 3. They did not move the sheds [1] until the camp had been fortified. 4. A multitude of Suessiones arrived in the city [2] before the mound was thrown up. 5. If you [3] set up towers, the Gauls will send ambassadors. 6. If the Remi [4] should ask that the Gauls be preserved, they would gain their request. 7. I will receive the Suessiones in surrender, if they (shall) give up their arms. 8. If the old men [4] should come forth from the town, they would stretch out their hands to Cæsar. 9. If Cæsar should approach the town, the women and children would beg for peace.

1. Cf. sec. **202**. 2. Cf. sec. **197**. 3. Not present. 4. Place first. Why? Cf. sec. **18**.

LESSON LV

234. **Conditional Sentences with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive (Contrary to Fact).** — § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.

235. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

prō aliquō verba facere.	*to speak in some one's behalf.*
in servitūtem redigere.	*to reduce to slavery.*
sē dēdere.	*to surrender.*

For Oral Translation — Book II. 14, 15

236. 1. Cæsar would not have preserved the Bellovaci, if Diviciacus had not spoken in their behalf. 2. If he [1]were returning to Cæsar, he would dismiss his forces. 3. If the Bellovaci[2] should be influenced by their chiefs, they would make war upon the Romans. 4. If we [3]are reduced to slavery, we shall endure all manner of insults. 5. If[4] they had not[4] perceived how great a calamity they had brought upon the state, they would not have fled to Britain. 6. If the state was large, he demanded six hundred hostages. 7. If they allowed wine to be imported, their courage would be weakened. 8. If they had surrendered to the Romans, the other Belgians would have blamed them. 9. If ambassadors had been sent, they would not have accepted any conditions of peace.

1. Observe that in English the Latin imperfect subjv. in a protasis is usually expressed by the simple past or by the English subjv. with *were*. 2. Place first. Why? 3. Not present. Cf. sec. 71. 4. "If . . . not," **nisi**.

LESSON LVI

237. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

sub sarcinīs.	*under (their) packs.*
nihil negōtī.	*no trouble.*
māgnus numerus impedīmentōrum.	*a great quantity of baggage.*

For Written Translation — Book II. 16, 17

238. If Cæsar had marched across the Sabis river, he would have found there all the Nervii and their neighbors whom they had persuaded to await the arrival of the Romans. The Belgæ thought that there would not be any trouble [1]in attacking them under their packs. [2]This plan of theirs was assisted, too, by the fact that certain of the Gauls had come

to the Nervii and pointed out that a great quantity of baggage intervened between the several legions. [3]They said, "If you should attack the first legion while the others are a great way off, and useless for battle, the other legions would not dare to make a stand."

1. Infin. as in the text. 2. Latin, "it assisted this plan"; cf. the text. 3. Observe that the form of dīcō here introduces a direct quotation.

*LESSON LVII

239. I. **Conditions in which the Protasis denotes Generalizing or Repeated Action.** — § 518. *a*, *b* (304. *d*; 309. *a*, *c*); B. 302. 2, 3; G. 566, 567, 594. N. 1; H. 578 (508. 5); H-B. 504. 2; 540.

II. **Conditions Contrary to Fact with the Indicative in the Apodosis.** — § 517. *c*, *d* (308. *c*, *d*); B. 304. 3; G. 597. 3. (*a*); H. 582, 583 (511. N. 3; 2); H-B. 581. *a*; 582. 3. *a*.

240. The distinction between a Particular and a General Condition is important. (See A. & G. § 513. 1, 2.) Such conditions are sometimes introduced by **cum** or **ubi**, in the sense of *whenever*, *if at any time*. Their forms of expression when different from those of Particular Conditions are shown by the following table.

GENERAL CONDITIONS

Time	Condition (Protasis)	Conclusion (Apodosis)
Present	Present Subjunctive, Second Person Singular, of an Indefinite Subject or Perfect Indicative	Present Indicative
Past	Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive (not found in Cicero) Pluperfect Indicative	Imperfect Indicative

a. Observe that in general conditions the Latin perfect indicative may be translated like a present and the pluperfect like a simple past.

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 18, 19

241. 1. If the hill had not been wooded, the enemy could not have kept themselves concealed. 2. Whenever he sent forward the cavalry, he followed with all the forces. 3. Whenever Cæsar approaches[1] the enemy, he leads his legion [2]in light marching order. 4. If you make an attack upon them, they do not dare to pursue. 5. [3]If they should make an attack on our cavalry, they (the cavalry) would repulse them easily. 6. Whenever they made an attack on our cavalry, they repulsed them easily. 7. If they had made an attack on our cavalry, they could [4]have repulsed them easily. 8. If the Nervii knew the order of march, the plan of joining battle [5]ought to have been given up. 9. If any of the Nervii retired into the forest, they again rushed forth from the forest [6]to attack us.

1. Cf. sec. **240**, *a*. 2. Translate by one word. 3. Compare carefully sentences 5 and 6; the first is a particular, the second a general condition. 4. Pres. infin. in Latin. 5. Second periphrastic. 6. Express by the gerundive construction of purpose.

*LESSON LVIII

242. Conditional Clauses of Comparison with *ac sī, ut sī, quasi*, etc. — § 524 (312); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584 (513. II); H-B. 504. 3.

243. Remember that in these clauses the *present* and *perfect* subjunctive are used after principal tenses, although the English idiom gives a contrary-to-fact implication and would lead us to expect the imperfect or pluperfect (cf. A. & G. 524. N. 2): —

They shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus, as if he were present, **crūdēlitātem Ariovistī horrent velut sī adsit.**

With a past tense this sentence would become *they shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus, as if he were* (or *had been*) *present*, and the Latin would use secondary tenses, as, **crūdēlitātem Ariovistī horrēbant velut sī adesset.**

244. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

aggeris petendī causā.	*to seek materials for the mound.*
ad sīgna cōnsistere.	*to take a stand beside the standards.*
mīlitēs cohortārī.	*to address the soldiers.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 20, 21

245. 1. Cæsar must do everything at the same time, as if the enemy were already in the camp. 2. If any had gone too far, to seek materials for the mound, they were summoned. 3. If the soldiers had not been trained by former battles, they would have had to wait for the commands[1] of Cæsar. 4. They gave themselves orders, as if they were instructed by others. 5. The *legati* did what seemed best [2]of their own accord, as if Cæsar were present. 6. Don't be disturbed in heart, but[3] bravely meet the attack of the enemy. 7. [4]Whenever time was lacking, they did not take the coverings from the shields. 8. Cæsar [5]intended to address the soldiers, if the [6]time had not been so short. 9. Each one took his stand beside the standards which he first saw, as if they were his own.

1. Singular in Latin. Make this word the subject of the second periphrastic. 2. per sē. 3. et. When a negative sentence is followed by a positive in which the same thought is continued, the Latin uses "and" where English uses "but." 4. General condition, past time. 5. First periphrastic. 6. Latin, "the shortness of time had not been so great."

LESSON LIX

246. Concessive Clauses. — § 527. *a–d*; 549, 535. *e* (313); B. 308, 309; G. 603 ff.; H. 586, 593. 2 (514, 515); H-B. 532, 556. *a*; 582. 8; 525, 526.

247. The Latin concessive particles, which are freely translated by *although*, have each a peculiar force which should be carefully observed in translating from English into Latin.

quamquam = *though the fact is that* (indic.).
licet = *it may be conceded that* (subjv., pres. or perf.).
quamvīs = *however much* (subjv.).
cum = *though the circumstances may be such that* (subjv.).
et sī, tametsī, etiamsī } *even if* (indic. or subjv.).

248. Observe the different constructions with **cum** : —

Cum { *when* (temporal), indicative or subjunctive (cf. sec. **192**).
since (causal), subjunctive (cf. sec. **180**).
although (concessive), subjunctive (cf. sec. **247**).

249. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

hostibus resistere.	*to resist the enemy.*
cursū exanimātus.	*breathless with running.*
locus inīquus or **aliēnus.**	*an unfavorable place.*
in fugam conicere.	*to put to flight.*

For Oral Translation — Book II. 22, 23

250. 1. However[1] brave the Nervii are, they cannot conquer the Romans. 2. Though the different legions were drawn up some in one place and others in another, they nevertheless resisted the enemy bravely. 3. [2]Since the inequality of fortune was so great, different results followed. 4. Though the Atrebates were breathless with running, they

nevertheless attempted to cross the river. 5. Though they had advanced into an unfavorable place, yet they put the enemy to flight. 6. They renewed the battle just as if a great part of them had not been killed. 7. Even if the twelfth legion should take its stand on the right wing, yet nearly the whole camp would be exposed on the left side. 8. Although the Viromandui had been routed, yet the Nervii under their leader Boduognatus began to surround the legions on the exposed flank.

1. **quamvīs.** 2. Cf. sec. **180**.

LESSON LX

251. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons LIII–LIX.

252. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

ad sīgna cōnsistere.
aggeris petendī causā.
cursū exanimātus.
hostibus resistere.
in fugam conicere.
in servitūtem redigere.
locus inīquus or **aliēnus.**
māgnus numerus impedīmentōrum.
māiōrēs nātū.
mīlitēs cohortārī.
nihil negōtī.
prō aliquō verba facere.
sē dēdere.
sub sarcinīs.
vīneās agere.

For Written Translation — Book II. 24

253. The cavalry, though they had been routed in the first attack of the enemy, were returning to the camp, when suddenly[1] they met[2] the enemy face to face and again fled; and the camp-followers, [3]who go forth to plunder whenever the army is victorious, [4]took to headlong flight, some in one direction, others in another, as if our fortunes[5] were hopeless. [6]To this was added the fact that the enemy had possession of the camp, and that the

legions were nearly surrounded. [7]No wonder that the Treveri — though they have a great reputation for valor — terrified by the noise and confusion, reported that the Romans had been defeated.

1. **subitō**. 2. Perfect indic. 3. A general condition. 4. Follow the idiom of the text. 5. **rēs**. 6. Cf. sec. **208**. 7. **nec mīrum** followed by an infin. clause.

LESSON LXI

254. Clauses with *dum*, *modo*, *dum modo*, denoting a Wish or a Proviso. — § 528 (314); B. 310; G. 573; H. 587 (513. I); H-B. 529.

255. Note carefully the different meanings and constructions of **dum**: —

Dum
- *a*. *While* (in the time but not occupying the whole of it) — present indicative (cf. sec. **54**. II).
- *b*. *While*, *as long as* (in the time and throughout the whole period) — present, past, or future indicative (cf. sec. **202**).
- *c*. *Until*, usually with the subjunctive (cf. sec. **202**).
- *d*. *Provided that*, with the subjunctive (cf. sec. **254**).

256. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

ab novissimīs.	*on the rear.*
rēs in angustō est.	*the position is critical* (lit. *the thing is in a strait*).
prīma aciēs.	*the front rank.*
operam nāvāre.	*to do one's best.*

For Oral Translation — Book II. 25

257. 1. Cæsar will proceed to the right wing [1]in his desire to encourage the twelfth legion. 2. If the soldiers should be crowded together, they would be [2]in each other's way for fighting. 3. The standard would not have been lost, if the

standard-bearer had not been killed. 4. Some on the rear are withdrawing from the battle as if they wished to avoid the weapons. 5. Though the position is critical, yet there is no reserve that can be sent. 6. The courage of the soldiers will be renewed, provided that Cæsar proceeds to the front rank. 7. Cæsar will take a shield from a soldier, provided he has come without one.[3] 8. Open out the ranks that you may be able to use your swords more easily. 9. The attack of the enemy will be checked, provided that you do your best.

1. Latin, "provided only that he may." 2. Latin, "for a hindrance to themselves." 3. Repeat the word "shield."

VII. MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

LESSON LXII

258 Declaratory Sentences in Indirect Discourse. — § 578–585 (336. 1, 2. *a*, *b*, *c*. N. 1, N. 2; 336. A; 336. B); B. 313, 314, 317, 318; G. 648, 649, 650, 653–655; H. 641–645, 617–620 (522, 523. I; 524–526, 537); H-B. 533, 534. 1, 2; 589, 591, 593.

259. In English we can say either—

He judges that the Gauls are brave

or

He judges the Gauls to be brave.

The Latin has only the latter form of expression and can say only —

Putat Gallōs fortēs esse.

N.B. The English conjunction THAT which introduces indirect discourse after verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, etc., is not expressed in Latin.

260. Discriminate carefully between the different meanings of English *that* and its Latin equivalents: —

that = *in order that* introduces a purpose clause (cf. sec. **137**).

that = *so that* introduces a result clause (cf. sec. **154**).

that = *the fact that, in that*, introduces a **quod**-clause of fact (cf. sec. **207**).

that after verbs of *saying, thinking*, and the like introduces indirect discourse and is not expressed.

261. It is of the first importance to remember that the tense of the infinitive in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb which it represents in direct discourse. Its tense has nothing to do with the tense of the verb of saying on which the indirect discourse depends, and is not affected by the laws of tense-sequence. For example, if we have in direct discourse the sentence —

mīlitēs fortiter pūgnant,

the verb **pūgnant**, being present in tense, will be represented in indirect discourse by the present infinitive, *no matter what the tense may be of the verb that introduces the indirect discourse* : —

He { *says* / *said* / *will say* / *had said* / etc. } *that the soldiers fight* (or *fought*) *bravely.*

{ **Dīcit** / **Dīxit** / **Dīcet** / **Dīxerat** / etc. } **mīlitēs fortiter pūgnāre.**

262. Some of the commoner verbs followed by the infinitive of indirect discourse are —

know { **sciō.** / **cōgnōscō.** }

think { **putō.** / **exīstimō.** / **arbitror.** }

tell { **dīcō.** / **nūntiō.** / **referō.** / **certiōrem faciō.** }

promise { **polliceor.** / **prōmittō.** }

perceive { **audiō.** / **comperiō.** / **sentiō.** / **videō.** }

263. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

castrīs potīrī.	*to get possession of the camp.*
in summō colle.	*on top of the hill.*
cursū incitātō.	*at full speed.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 26

264. 1. Cæsar says that the seventh legion, [1]which stood near, was also hard pressed by the enemy. 2. He said that the legions which were hard pressed gradually united. 3. He saw that the legions feared that they would be surrounded. 4. He said that the battle had been announced to the soldiers who were guarding the baggage. 5. The enemy will not get possession of the camp provided that Labienus sends the tenth legion to our assistance. 6. He says that the enemy who were on the top of the hill saw the two legions hastening[2] at full speed. 7. What[3] was going on in the camp? I saw what was going on in the camp. 8. We know[4] that the legions and general were in great danger. 9. Labienus said that he left nothing undone for speed.

1. As this is an explanatory parenthetical clause, it is not affected by the indir. disc. and has its verb in the indic. 2. Pres. participle. 3. Latin, "what things." 4. What tense of **cōgnōscō**? Cf. sec. **65**.

*LESSON LXIII

265. I. **Interrogative Sentences in Indirect Discourse.** — § 586, 587 (338); B. 315; G. 651; H. 642 (523. II); H-B. 537.

II. **Commands in Indirect Discourse.** — § 588. *a.* N. 1, N. 2 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. III); H-B. 538.

266. In the case of questions, note first what mood is used in the direct form.

If the mood is subjunctive, the question is rhetorical (cf. sec. 90) and the subjunctive mood will be retained in indirect discourse

with such change of tense as may be necessary by the law of tense-sequence.

If the mood is indicative, the question is either a real one expecting an answer, or it is merely rhetorical (cf. sec. 90). Real questions are expressed in indirect discourse by the subjunctive. Rhetorical questions with the indicative are equivalent to declaratory sentences, and like them are expressed in indirect discourse by the infinitive.

N.B. *A real question in the direct form is usually in the second person; a rhetorical question is usually in the first; a question in the third person may be either real or rhetorical.*

267. Observe that a prohibition expressed by **nōlī** and the infinitive in direct discourse becomes the hortatory subjunctive with **nē** in the indirect; present after a primary tense, imperfect after a secondary: —

Direct: *Don't fight* — **nōlī pūgnāre.**
Indirect: *He tells him not to fight* — **dīcit nē pūgnet.**
He told him not to fight — **dīxit nē pūgnāret.**

268. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ūtī misericordiā in with acc.	*to show mercy toward.*
ab iniūriā sē prohibēre.	*to refrain from doing harm.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 27, 28

269. 1. He said that even those who were weakened by wounds renewed the battle. 2. He says, why do not the cavalry wipe out the disgrace of their flight by their valor? 3. The leader Boduognatus told them [1]to throw back the intercepted javelins. 4. He replied, [2]what but[3] greatness of courage had made easy things out of (those that were) difficult? 5. He said, [4]what should he say about the calamity of a state which had been reduced from six hundred senators to three? 6. Cæsar preserved the Gauls, [5]whenever he wished to seem to show mercy toward the wretched. 7. He

told them to use their territory and towns. 8. I shall order your neighbors [6]to refrain from doing harm.

1. A command in indir. disc. 2. A rhetorical question in indir. disc. 3. **nisi**. 4. A deliberative question with the subjv. in dir. disc., consequently the subjv. will be retained in indir. disc. Cf. sec. **90**. 5. Cf. sec. **240**. 6. Latin, "to keep themselves from."

LESSON LXIV

270. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ex omnibus partibus.	*on all sides.*
prīmō adventū.	*as soon as he arrived* (lit. *at his first arrival*).
ab tantō spatiō.	*at such a distance.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 29, 30

271. Cæsar says that the Aduatuci, [1]who are descended from the Cimbri and Teutones, had chosen for an abode a place remarkably fortified by nature, since it had steep cliffs on every side; and that they had fortified the gentle sloping approach which was left on one side, by a very high double wall. Cæsar, as soon as he arrived, commanded his (men) [2]to hem in the city with a twelve-foot wall and to set up the tower. When the enemy[3] saw so big a machine being set up at such a distance they laughed and said, with what strength, pray, did men of such small stature hope to set a tower of such weight on the wall?

1. A parenthetic clause and hence not affected by the indir. disc. 2. A command in indir. disc. after **imperō**. If we insert **ut** we have an object clause of purpose (cf. sec. **129**). The sense is practically the same. 3. Place first.

LESSON LXV

272. Conditional Sentences with the Indicative, or of the First Class, in Indirect Discourse. — § 589. *a* (337. 1, 2; Examples 1, 2, 3); B. 319; G. 595. R. 1; 656. 1, 2; 657; H. 646 (527. I); H-B. 534. 1. *b*; 2; 536.

273. The condition (protasis) of a conditional sentence, being a subordinate clause, regularly has its verb in the subjunctive (cf. sec. **258**).

274. The conclusion (apodosis) of a conditional sentence, being a principal clause, regularly has its verb in the infinitive (cf. sec. **261**).

a. The only exception to this rule is when the direct form has the imperative which would become subjunctive, or when it has the hortative, optative, or deliberative subjunctive which would remain subjunctive. Practically such instances are very rare.

275. The future infinitive is used in the conclusion (apodosis) of a future condition, and there is no distinction in indirect discourse between the more vivid and the less vivid form: —

Sī turris moenibus adpropinquābit, lēgātōs mittent (more vivid).
Sī turris moenibus adpropinquet, lēgātōs mittant (less vivid).

Either sentence in indirect discourse becomes —

Dīcit, sī turris moenibus adpropinquet, eōs lēgātōs missūrōs esse.

276. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

adpropinquāre moenibus.	*to approach the walls.*
sē suaque omnia.	*themselves and all their possessions.*

For Oral Translation — Book II. 31, 32

277. 1. He says that if they see the tower approaching the walls, they will send ambassadors concerning peace. 2. Cæsar replied that if they had come [1]to seek peace, [2]they should give up themselves and all their possessions. 3. He said that even if he should preserve the Aduatuci, he would

deprive them of their arms. 4. They say that if they have hostile neighbors, they (the neighbors) envy their valor. 5. Cæsar said that he would defend them from their enemies, if they should surrender their arms. 6. Cæsar says that he will preserve you, if you (shall) surrender before the battering-ram touches the wall. 7. He said that if the matter was reported, they did what was ordered. 8. They say that if all the arms were thrown into the ditch, the heap equaled the height of the wall.

1. Not infin. 2. For the imperative of dir. disc.

LESSON LXVI

278. Conditional Sentences with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or of the Second Class, in Indirect Discourse. — § 589. *a.* 3 (337. 1, 2. *a.* 3); B. 320; G. 658; H. 646 (527. II); H-B. 534. 1. *b*; 2; 536.

279. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

sub vesperum.	*at evening.*
ēruptiōnem facere.	*to make a sally.*
in diciōnem populī Rōmānī redigere.	*to bring under the sway of the Roman people.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK II. 33–35

280. 1. He said that if the gates should be closed at evening, the soldiers would go forth from the town. 2. We believe that the Romans would withdraw their guards, if we should surrender.[1] 3. He said that the Gauls used to make shields of bark, [2]if the shortness of time demanded it. 4. Cæsar commanded the soldiers [3]to give the signal with fires, if the enemy should make a sally. 5. He says if the men were brave they fought with spirit. 6. Cæsar perceived that the enemy would fight fiercely, if every hope rested on

valor alone. 7. We thought that if Cæsar should batter down the gates, no one would defend (them). 8. He was informed that if he should send Crassus with a single legion, he would bring the maritime states under the sway of the Roman people. 9. Cæsar says that if the tribes which dwell across the Rhine send ambassadors, he will order them to return the following summer.

1. Remember that this verb in Latin is always followed by the reflexive object; e.g. *I surrender* = **dēdō mē**. 2. A general condition in indir. disc. 3. Not infin. Cf. sec. **271**, note 2.

LESSON LXVII

281. Conditional Sentences with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or of the Third Class, in Indirect Discourse. — § 589. *b.* 1–4. N. 1, N. 3 (337, *b.* 1, 2, 3); B. 321, 322; G. 659; H. 647 (527. III. N. 1); H-B. 581. *b.* 1), N.; 472. *c.*

282. The verb in the condition (protasis) of a condition of the third class (contrary to fact) suffers no change in mood or tense on becoming indirect.

283. The verb in the conclusion (apodosis) of a condition of the third class (contrary to fact) on becoming indirect becomes the future participle in **-ūrus** with **fuisse**. Observe that the verb in the conclusion (apodosis) shows no distinction between the present and past forms of this condition. Such distinction is, however, retained by the verb in the protasis. For example, in the two sentences —

sī Caesar adesset, hostēs nōn vincerent,
sī Caesar adfuisset, hostēs nōn vīcissent,

the verbs in the conclusion, **vincerent** and **vīcissent**, would both become **victūrōs fuisse** in indirect discourse; but **adesset** and **adfuisset**, remaining unchanged, would preserve the distinction between the present and past form.

284. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

opus esse.	*to be necessary.*
secunda proelia facere.	*to fight successful battles.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 1

285. 1. He said that if the road over the Alps had not been dangerous,[1] Cæsar would not have sent a legion there.[2] 2. We believe that there would have been no reason for sending, had not merchants been in the habit of going by that route. 3. He says that if he thinks it necessary, he will pass the winter in these regions. 4. He thought that if the enemy were fighting successful battles, they would not give hostages to Galba. 5. Galba said that he would not have passed the winter in Octodurus, [3]had it not been necessary. 6. He says that the plain would be larger, if it were not cut into two parts by a river. 7. I think that it would have been better if Galba had not assigned one part of the village to the Gauls. 8. Galba said that the cohorts would have abandoned Octodurus, had he not fortified that village with a wall and ditch.

1. Latin, perīculōsus, -a, -um. 2. eō. 3. I.e. "if it had not," etc.

LESSON LXVIII

286. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

superiōra loca.	*the high ground.*
cōnsilium capere.	*to take counsel.*
salūtem dēspērāre.	*to despair of safety.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 2, 3

287. [1]After the surrender had been made and the hostages received, Galba thought[2] [3]that there was nothing of

a hostile character to fear; but when he was[2] informed that all the Gauls had left the village, and saw[2] that nearly all the higher ground was already held by a multitude of armed men, he knew that the Gauls were planning[4] to crush the legion. He says that this [5]would not have happened if the legion had been full, and if the Gauls had not persuaded themselves that the Romans were trying to add those regions to the province. When a council had been quickly called, some, now almost despairing of safety, thought that if the baggage should be abandoned, they could[6] hasten to safety.

1. Abl. abs. 2. Pluperfect. 3. Latin, "nothing concerning war ought to be feared." 4. Latin, "taking counsel." 5. As accidō has no fut. part. we must use **futūrum fuisse ut** with the imperfect subjv. 6. **Possum** has no fut. part. Cf. note 5.

*LESSON LXIX

288. Passive Subjunctive Apodoses in Indirect Discourse. — § 589. *b*. 3; 569. *a* (337. *b*. 3; 288. *f*); B. 270. 3; 321. 1, 2; G. 248. N. 3; H. 647. 2; 619. 2 (527. III. N. 1; 537. 3); H-B. 472. *c*.

289. The passive subjunctive in the conclusion (apodosis) of a conditional sentence becomes —

a. In *future conditions*, fore or **futūrum esse** with **ut** and the subjunctive. The tense of the subjunctive will be present or perfect after primary tenses, imperfect or pluperfect after secondary tenses.

b. In *conditions contrary to fact*, **futūrum fuisse ut** with the imperfect subjunctive.

290. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

integrīs vīribus.	*with unimpaired strength.*
suī recipiendī facultās.	*an opportunity of recovering themselves.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 4, 5

291. 1. He says that if a short space of time had not intervened, there would have been hardly time to carry out the plans agreed upon. 2. They seem to think that if they hurl their javelins against the wall, no weapon will be sent in vain. 3. He said that the camp would not have been hard pressed, if others had not come up with unimpaired strength. 4. He saw that if the enemy should withdraw from battle, an opportunity would be given our men of recovering themselves. 5. He said that if weapons should fail our men, nothing could be done. 6. I do not think that Baculus, the centurion, [1]would have run up to Galba, if [2]the situation had not been desperate. 7. He said that the sally would not have been made, if the centurions had not pointed out that single hope of safety. 8. [3]It is clear that the Romans would have been destroyed if they had not placed every hope of safety in their valor.

1. The verb **accurrō** has no future participle. What construction must be used? 2. Follow the idiom in the text. 3. **cōnstat**.

*LESSON LXX

292. Implied or Informal Indirect Discourse. — § 592. 1, 2, 3 (340, 341); B. 323; G. 508. 3; 628, 663. 2; H. 649. I (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. *a*; 536. *a*.

293. The fundamental difference between the indicative and subjunctive moods is what determines the construction in implied indirect discourse and in clauses dependent on a subjunctive or equivalent infinitive.

Statements of fact and of actual occurrences are in the indicative, things imagined or represented as mere possibilities are expressed by the subjunctive. For example, in the sixth sentence below, if the relative clause "which inhabited Illyricum" is a statement

of fact for which the speaker assumes all responsibility, the indicative is employed. On the other hand, if he wishes to show that the statement is another's (e.g. Cæsar's), a mere possibility for which the speaker wishes to assume no responsibility, the subjunctive must be used.

So the subjunctive in a clause dependent on a subjunctive shows that the dependent clause is an essential part of the clause on which it depends, partakes of its nature, and shares in its mood. If, however, the speaker wishes to show that the dependent clause states a *fact* and is independent of the subjunctive clause, he uses the indicative.

294. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in spem venīre.	*to have hopes* (lit. *to come into hope*).
in hīberna.	*into winter quarters.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 6, 7

295. 1. They hoped for a [1]change of fortune, if they should make a sally from all the gates. 2. It is established that they had hopes of taking the camp. 3. The enemy were terrified [2]because they were surrounded on every side. 4. Galba returned to the province, [3]because he was unwilling to tempt fortune too often. 5. I went into winter quarters with one design, and met with [4]another state of affairs. 6. Cæsar wished to visit the tribes which inhabited Illyricum. 7. Cæsar tells about a sudden war [5]which arose in Gaul. 8. Crassus, who was wintering among the Andes, was the cause of this war. 9. He sent out prefects [6]because there was a scarcity of grain in these regions. 10. Cæsar says that he would not have set out for Illyricum, if Gaul had not been subdued.

1. Latin, "changed fortune." 2. I.e. "because (as they thought)." Cf. sec. **176**. 3. What mood should be used? 4. Latin, "other things." 5. I.e. "which (as he says)." 6. I.e. "because (as he said)."

*LESSON LXXI

296. Subjunctive of Integral Part or Attraction. — § 593. *a.* N. 1, N. 2 (342); B. 324; G. 629, 663; H. 652 (529. II); H-B. 539.

297. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

initium facere.	*to begin* (lit. *make a beginning*).
servitūtem perferre.	*to endure slavery.*

For Oral Translation — Book III. 8

298. 1. Cæsar tells about the Veneti, [1]whose influence is by far the greatest. 2. It is their custom[2] to make tributary nearly all who use that sea. 3. The Veneti excel the others in power, [3]because they hold the harbors, which (are) few in number (and) lie at long intervals. 4. They think that they will get back the hostages which they gave to Crassus. 5. They were induced by these [4]to seize the ambassadors who had been sent by Crassus. 6. They urged the states to abide in that liberty which they had received from their ancestors. 7. When the Veneti [5]began to seize the ambassadors that had been sent to them, their neighbors did the same. 8. I think that the Romans who were sent would not have been seized, if the Gauls had preferred to endure slavery. 9. If you wish to regain those we have seized, send us back our hostages.

1. I.e. on the authority of Cæsar. Implied indir. disc. 2. **mōs**. 3. Subjv. clause as depending on Cæsar's authority. 4. Not infin. 5. Latin, "had made a beginning of seizing."

LESSON LXXII

299. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons LXI–LXXI.

300. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

ab iniūriā sē prohibēre.
ab novissimīs.
ab tantō spatiō.
adpropinquāre moenibus.
castrīs potīrī.
cōnsilium capere.
cursū incitātō.
ēruptiōnem facere.
ex omnibus partibus.
in diciōnem populī Rōmānī.
in hīberna.
in spem venīre.
in summō colle.
initium facere.
integrīs vīribus.
operam nāvāre.
opus esse.
prīma aciēs.
rēs in angustō est.
salūtem dēspērāre.
sē suaque omnia.
secunda proelia facere.
servitūtem perferre.
sub vesperum.
suī recipiendī facultās.
superiōra loca.
ūtī misericordiā in with acc.

For Written Translation — Book III. 9

301. When the Veneti had been informed that men-of-war were being built on the Loire, which [1]flows into the ocean, and that Cæsar [2]was coming as soon as [3]the time of year would permit, they determined to prepare for the war which [4]was impending. They perceived the magnitude of the danger and how great a crime they had committed [5]in that they had thrown the ambassadors into chains; but nevertheless they were confident that the Romans, who were not acquainted with the places[6] where they were going to carry on war, could not remain with them long. For they knew the shallows, the harbors and islands, and had very many ships; and navigation is a very different thing in an inclosed sea and on the mighty ocean.

1. Why not subjv.? 2. Future infin. 3. Follow the idiom of the text. 4. **impendeō**, subjv. because the thought of the Veneti. 5. A **quod**-clause of cause. 6. Remember that **locus** is neuter in the plural.

VIII. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS OF THE VERB

LESSON LXXIII

302. Tenses of the Infinitive. — § 486, 584 (288, 336. A); B. 270; G. 281, 530, 531; H. 617–620 (537); H-B. 472, 593. *a*.

303. The Infinitive as Subject or Predicate. — § 452, 454 (270. 1. *a*, *b*; 272. R. 2; 330. *a*, *b*, *c*); B. 325–327, 329, 330, 332. N.; G. 419–422, 535; H. 611, 615, 616. 1 (534. 1. N. 1, N. 2; 538, 539. I); H-B. 597. 1. *a*); 585, 589, 590. 1, 2.

304. Observe that the Latin present infinitive must sometimes be translated by an English past; for example, —

Dīcit sē venīre is translated *he says that he* **is** *coming*,

but

Dīxit sē venīre is translated *he said that he* **was** *coming*.

305. In deciding what tense of the infinitive should be used in an indirect statement,[1] it is a good plan to make the indirect statement direct. Then —

a. A present indicative of the direct becomes present infinitive in the indirect.

b. Any past tense of the indicative becomes perfect infinitive.

c. A future indicative becomes future infinitive, or, if the verb be passive or lack the future participle, **fore** (**futūrum esse**) **ut** with the subjunctive.

To illustrate: *he said that he would come* is an indirect statement. The direct form, i.e. what he said in his own words, was, *I will come*. This is the future indicative and would become the future infinitive in the indirect form: hence, **dīxit sē ventūrum esse.**

[1] Cf. also sec. **261.**

306. The infinitive as subject is especially common after **est,** with a predicate noun or adjective. Such expressions are —

fās est, *it is right.*
nefās est, *it is wrong.*
turpe est, *it is disgraceful.*
mīrum est, *it is strange.*
manifēstum / **apertum** } **est,** *it is plain.*
fāma est, *it is rumored.*
vērum est, *it is true.*
falsum est, *it is false.*
necesse / **opus** } **est,** *it is necessary.*

307. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in officiō continēre. *to keep faithful.*
per vim. *by force.*
aliquem alicui reī praeficere. *to place some one in command of something.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 10, 11

308. 1. It is plain that there were many difficulties in waging this war. 2. Nevertheless [1]Cæsar decided not to leave this part unnoticed. 3. All men ought[2] by nature to hate a state of slavery. 4. It was reported to Cæsar that several states were conspiring. 5. It is plain that Cæsar[3] ought to distribute his army[4] more widely. 6. It seemed advantageous[5] to send Labienus to the Treveri before more states should conspire. 7. Labienus, I order you to visit the Remi, who of the Belgæ are[6] nearest to Gaul. 8. It is necessary to keep the Belgæ faithful. 9. It is evident that if the Germans had crossed the river by force, they would have been restrained. 10. [7]It is of importance to Cæsar that the tribes of Aquitania should not send aid. 11. I will see to keeping that force away. 12. It was rumored that Cæsar had placed Brutus in command of the ships.

1. **Caesarī placuit.** 2. **oportet.** 3. Dative of agent with second periphrastic. 4. Acc. subject of infin. 5. **ūtile.** 6. Subjv., if part of the order, otherwise indic. 7. **interesse,** with the genitive.

LESSON LXXIV

309. **The Infinitive as Object.** — § 459, 579, 563. *a*, *b*; 582 (272, 330. B). B. 329, 331, 332; G. 526–533; H. 414, 613, 614 (534, 535); H-B. 589, 587.

310. The infinitive with subject accusative is used as object after the following classes of verbs: —

a. Most frequently after verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, and the like, which introduce indirect discourse (cf. sec. **262**).

b. After **iubeō**, *order*, **vetō**, *forbid*, **patior**, *allow*.

c. Sometimes after **cupiō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (but cf. sec. **130**).

311. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in extrēmīs lingulīs.	*on the ends of tongues of land.*
nūllus pedibus aditus.	*no approach by land.*

For Oral Translation — Book III. 12

312. 1. Cæsar says that the towns are located on the ends of tongues of land. 2. [1]It is said that [2]when the tide was high they had no approach by land. 3. It is clear that [3]when the tide goes down the ships [4]will be dashed upon the shallows. 4. The Romans bore it ill that the siege of the towns was hindered by these things. 5. The soldiers were ordered to shut out the sea by dikes. 6. They hoped that the Gauls would despair of [5]their fortunes. 7. It was easy to bring up a great number of ships and retreat to the nearest towns. 8. He was informed that there was the greatest difficulty in sailing because there were almost no harbors. 9. The advantages of the place allowed them to defend themselves for a great part of the summer. 10. The storms were of such a nature that the ships which Cæsar had made were detained.

1. Remember that for the tenses of incomplete action the personal construction is preferred. 2. Follow the idiom of the text. 3. Abl. abs. 4. Use **fore ut** with the subjv. to avoid the fut. pass. infin. which is rare. 5. **dēspērāre** is followed by the dat. or the acc. or by the abl. with **dē**.

LESSON LXXV

313. **The Complementary Infinitive.** — § 456, 457, 458 (271); B. 328; G. 423; H. 607, 608 (533); H-B. 586. *a.*

314. **The Historical Infinitive.** — § 463. N. (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595.

315. Some of the commoner verbs followed by the complementary infinitive are —

possum, *am able.*
dēbeō, *ought.*
volō, **cupiō**, } *desire.*
nōlō, *be unwilling.*
mālō, *prefer.*
audeō, *dare.*
cōnor, *try.*
contendō, **fēstīnō**, **mātūrō**, **properō**, } *hasten.*
coepī, **incipiō**, } *begin.*
soleō, *be accustomed.*
statuō, **cōnstituō**, } *determine, decide.*

316. Observe that the subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative, not in the accusative.

317. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

tanta onera nāvium. — *ships of such weight* (lit. *such weights of ships*).
bellum parāre. — *to prepare for war.*

For Oral Translation — Book III. 13

318. 1. The Veneti built[1] ships, fortified[1] their towns, and prepared[1] for war. 2. They used[2] to make the prows very high to receive the waves more easily. 3. They tried to make the ships capable of enduring any violence whatsoever. 4. They thought that linen sails could not withstand the strength[3] of the winds. 5. Ships of such weight cannot be managed by sails. 6. They feared to fasten the anchors with ropes on account of the size of the waves. 7. Cæsar

hastened to the army, divided the forces, and sent Labienus to the Treveri. 8. The ships of the enemy are of such a nature that we cannot injure them [4]by ramming. 9. When the wind began to rage, they easily endured the storm. 10. Their strength was so great that they did not fear [5]being left by the tide at all.

1. Note that the historical infinitive is descriptive, and that usually two or more occur together. 2. **soleō**. 3. Latin, "attacks." 4. Latin, "by the beak." 5. What is the construction in Latin after verbs of fearing?

LESSON LXXVI

319. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

hostibus nocēre.	*to inflict injuries on the enemy.*
ratiōnem pūgnae īnsistere.	*to adopt a plan of battle.*
māgnō ūsuī esse.	*to be of great service.*

For Written Translation — Book III. 14

320. When Cæsar had stormed several towns to no purpose and had not been able to inflict injuries on the enemy, he determined to wait for the fleet which [1]had been assigned to Brutus. When this had arrived, [2]at first it was not clear to Brutus what plan of battle to adopt, for he knew that the enemy's ships were completely furnished with every kind of arms, and [3]that valor was the only thing in which his own soldiers excelled. The Romans, however, had prepared iron hooks which were of great service; for with these they seized the ropes, tore them away, and destroyed all usefulness of the ships [4]at a single stroke.

1. Indic. or subjv. or either? 2. **prīmō**, distinguished from **prīmum**. 3. Latin, "that his own soldiers excelled in valor alone." 4. Latin, "at one time."

LESSON LXXVII

321. The Participle. — § 488 (289); H. 636 (548); H-B. 599. *a*, *b*, *c*.

322. Tenses. — § 489–493 (290); B. 336; G. 282; H. 640 (550) H-B. 600. 1, 2, 3, 4; 602. 1, 2.

323. Adjective and Predicate Uses. — § 494. *a*, 495, 496 (291, 292); B. 337; G. 664 ff.; H. 637, 638 (549); H-B. 320, 604. 1–7.

324. The Ablative Absolute. — § 419, 420 (255); B. 227; G. 409, 410; H. 489 (431); H-B. 421.

325. The tenses of the participles are used with much greater precision in Latin than in English. For example, in the sentences —

a. The captives weeping begged for peace.
b. Cæsar hearing this was much disturbed.

the English participles *weeping* and *hearing* are both present. The Latin would use the present participle in *a*, but the perfect in *b*; because in *a* the action of the participle and of the verb are contemporaneous, but in *b* the action of the participle is prior to that of the verb, hence: —

a. **Captīvī *flentēs* pācem petēbant.**
b. **Hīs *audītīs* Caesar perturbābātur.**

In short, do not use the present participle in Latin unless the act denoted by it is contemporaneous with that of the verb on which the participle depends.

326. Observe that the Latin participle lacks the *present passive* (e.g. *being seen*) and the *perfect active* (e.g. *having seen*).

a. The present passive participle is supplied by a clause with **dum** or **cum**.

b. The perfect active participle is supplied —

1. In *deponent* verbs by the perfect passive participle with active meaning: *Cæsar, having set out* — **Caesar profectus.**

2. In *other* verbs by a clause with **cum** or **postquam** or by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute: —

Cæsar, having called together his lieutenants

- **Caesar cum lēgātōs convocāvisset** (cf. sec. **192**).
- **Caesar postquam lēgātōs convocāvit** (cf. sec. **184**. 1).
- **Caesar lēgātīs convocātīs.**

327. The following perfect deponent participles are used like presents: —

rātus, *thinking.* **veritus**, *fearing.*
solitus, *being wont.*

328. Use the ablative absolute only when its substantive refers to a person or thing not elsewhere mentioned in the same sentence. For example, do not translate, *Cæsar, having captured the town, burned it*, by **Caesar, oppidō captō, id incendit** where **id** and **oppido** refer to the same thing, but rather **Caesar oppidum captum incendit.** On the other hand, in *Cæsar, having captured the town, burned the temple*, the ablative absolute may be used, and we have **Caesar, oppidō captō, templum incendit.**

329. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

sē movēre ex locō.	*to move from the spot.*
fugā salūtem petere.	*to seek safety in flight.*
vindicāre in aliquem.	*to punish some one.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 15, 16

330. 1. After the yards had been torn off, the ships could not move from the spot. 2. The soldiers hastened [1]while climbing into the ships of the enemy. 3. We saw the enemy seeking safety in flight. 4. After the business was finished, very few ships out of the whole number reached the land. 5. The Romans took the ships [2]by surrounding them. 6. The Veneti, [3]having lost all their ships, surrendered to Cæsar. 7. [4]Since they had gathered all their ships into one place, they thought that they would be victorious. 8. Cæsar will not punish those [5]that respect the right of ambassadors.

9. He sold those inhabiting[6] the coast into slavery. 10. Cæsar, fearing the treachery[7] of the barbarians, punished them more severely.

1. Pres. part. expressing time. 2. Pres. part. expressing means. 3. Cf. sec. **326**. 4. Express this causal clause by a participial phrase in the abl. abs. 5. Express by a participial clause. 6. **incolere**. 7. **perfidia**.

LESSON LXXVIII

The Future Passive Participle (Gerundive)

331. **Denoting Purpose.** — § 500. 4 (294. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*). 2); G. 430; H. 622 (544. N. 2); H-B. 605. 2.

332. **The Second Periphrastic Conjugation.** — § 194. *b*; 196, 500. 2 (129, 294. *b*); B. 115; G. 251; H. 237 (234); H-B. 162, 600. 3.

333. **The Dative of Agent.** — § 374. *a* (232); B. 189; G. 354, 355; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1, 2.

334. The second periphrastic conjugation is always passive. Therefore, to express *duty* or *necessity* by means of this construction, the sentence must first be cast in the passive form, if it is not so expressed already. For example, to translate *Cæsar must give the signal*, we first recast to *the signal must be given by Cæsar;* Latin: **Caesarī sīgnum dandum est**.

335. Bear in mind that the gerundive of an intransitive verb is neuter (impersonal), and that the object, if there be one, will be in the case regularly governed by the verb; e.g. **eīs persuādendum est**, *they must be persuaded.*

336. The gerundive of purpose agreeing with the object is used in Cæsar after the verbs **cūrō**, **dō**, and **trādō**.

337. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

studium praedandī.	*love of plunder.*
in contemptiōnem venīre.	*to incur contempt.*
pūgnandī potestās.	*an opportunity for battle.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 17

338. 1. [1]After receiving his troops from Cæsar, Sabinus hastened into the territory of the Venelli. 2. Viridovix [2]saw to collecting an army from the states that had revolted. 3. The Aulerci surrendered[3] their senate to be slain. 4. Closing our gates, let us join[4] Viridovix. 5. They killed those unwilling to be instigators of war. 6. We[5] must call them from their daily toil by the love of plunder. 7. Sabinus thought he ought [6]to incur the contempt of the enemy. 8. I ought not to fight with so great a multitude while Cæsar is absent. 9. The soldiers could see the enemy approaching even to the rampart of the camp. 10. Sabinus[7] ought to lead forth his troops and give an opportunity for battle.

1. Abl. abs. 2. cūrō. 3. trādō. 4. Latin, "join ourselves with." 5. Dative of agent, if expressed at all. 6. Impersonal because intransitive, cf. sec. **335**. 7. Dative of agent.

LESSON LXXIX

The Gerund and Gerundive

339. General Rules. — § 501–503. N. 1. *a* (295, 296. N.; 297); B. 339; G. 425–427; H. 623–625 (541, 543); H-B. 609–612, 613.

340. The Genitive. — § 504. *a*, *b* (298); B. 338. 1; 339; G. 428; H. 626 (542. I; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. I.

341. The Dative. — § 505. *a* (299); B. 338. 2; 339; G. 429; H. 627 (542. II; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. I, II.

342. The following essential points of difference between the gerund and gerundive may be of service to beginners: —

1. The gerund is a verbal noun, the gerundive a verbal adjective.

2. The gerund, being a verbal noun, may stand alone or with an object.

3. The gerundive as a verbal adjective is used only in agreement with a noun.

4. As a rule, only the genitive of the gerund and the ablative without a preposition admit a direct object. In other cases, and often in these, the gerundive construction is preferred.

5. To change a gerund with a direct object into the corresponding gerundive construction, put the direct object into the case of the gerund, and use the gerundive in adjective agreement with it.

343. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

sē castrīs tenēre.	*to keep one's self in camp.*
negōtium bene gerere.	*to carry on a matter successfully.*
prō perfugā.	*as a deserter.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 18

344. 1. He kept himself in camp [1]to confirm the impression of fear. 2. He chooses a crafty man well fitted [2]to carry out the matter successfully. 3. We ought to persuade[3] him to go over to the enemy as a deserter. 4. He came to them [4]to set forth the fear of the Romans. 5. He showed them that Cæsar was hard pressed by the Veneti. 6. He said that Sabinus was desirous[5] of secretly leading out his army the next night. 7. We ought not to lose this favorable opportunity of going to the camp. 8. Cæsar says that men generally gladly believe that which they wish. 9. War ought not to be waged before provisions have been carefully provided. 10. [6]After the council was dismissed, they collected fagots suitable[7] for filling the Roman ditches.

1. Gen. of the gerund with **causā**. 2. The dative of the gerund should not be used with a direct object. Use the gerundive instead. 3. Impersonal, because intransitive. 4. Express by the gerundive with **causā**. 5. **cupidus** with the gen. 6. Abl. abs. 7. **aptus** with the dative.

LESSON LXXX

345. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

eōdem ferē tempore.	*at about the same time.*
bellum gerendī causā.	*to wage war.*
paucīs ante annīs.	*a few years before.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 19, 20

346. Sabinus, having given the signal to his [1]eager men, suddenly made a sally from two gates, and, pursuing with unimpaired strength the enemy [2]who were breathless with running, killed a great number of them and left the pursuit[3] of the rest to the cavalry. About the same time Crassus arrived in Aquitania to wage war in those places where, a few years before, an army had been defeated and its baggage lost. For this reason he saw that he would have to use extraordinary care, see to a grain-supply,[4] and prepare[5] cavalry and auxiliaries. When his arrival was known, the Sotiates were desirous[6] of engaging in a cavalry battle.

1. Latin, "the ones desiring." 2. Express by a participial clause. 3. Gerundive of purpose. 4. **rēs frūmentāria.** 5. For the agreement of this participle in gender, cf. sec. **34.** 6. **cupidus** with the genitive.

LESSON LXXXI

The Gerund and Gerundive

347. The Accusative. — § 506 (300); B. 338. 3; 339; G. 430, 432; H. 628 (542. III; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. III.

348. The Ablative. — § 507 (301); B. 338. 4; 339; G. 431, 433; H. 629–631 (542. IV; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. IV.

349. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ex itinere.	*in the course of one's march.*
in dēditiōnem recipere.	*to receive in surrender.*

For Oral Translation — Book III. 21, 22

350. 1. The Sotiates attempted to conquer by fighting long and bravely. 2. Our men are desirous of showing[1] what they can do without the general. 3. Crassus thought that he ought to besiege a town in the course of his march. 4. They resisted bravely by attempting sallies. 5. The Aquitani were by far the most skillful in running mines. 6. They send ambassadors to Crassus to beg for peace. 7. They were received in surrender on giving up their arms. 8. Cæsar says that Adiatunnus had six hundred devoted followers who are called *soldurii*. 9. If they wish to enjoy all the blessings of life with these, they must endure the same fate. 10. The soldiers drove Adiatunnus back into the city by rushing to arms and attacking him.

1. Genitive of the gerund of **ostendere**.

LESSON LXXXII

The Supine

351. **The Supine in *-um*.** — § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.

352. **The Supine in *-ū*.** — § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635 (547); H-B. 619.

353. In Cæsar the supine in **-um** occurs after **mittō**, **veniō**, **conveniō**, and **conlocō**.

354. In Cæsar the supine in **-ū** occurs but four times; twice after **perfacile** (*very easy*), once each after **optimum** (*best*) and **horridior** (*more frightful*).

355. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

bellum īnferre alicui.	*to make war upon some* **one.**
scientia reī mīlitāris.	*skill in military affairs.*

For Oral Translation — Book III. 23

356. 1. The Sotiates obtained peace by surrendering arms and giving hostages. 2. Crassus set out to make war upon the Vocates. 3. The town was stormed a few days after (his) arrival there. 4. The barbarians [1]made a compact, gave[1] hostages to each other, and prepared[1] troops. 5. This seems best to do. 6. They sent ambassadors to other states to summon aid. 7. Generals were chosen [2]to carry on the war. 8. This was easy to do because many had very great skill in military affairs. 9. These had been with Sertorius and were very skillful [3]in fortifying a camp. 10. I perceive that the number of the enemy is increasing daily. 11. I think that I ought not to delay in bringing this matter before the council.

1. Historical infin. 2. Express the purpose by **ad** and the gerundive. 3. Gen. of the gerund.

IX. SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS

LESSON LXXXIII

357. Personal Pronouns. — § 295 (194); B. 242; G. 304; H. 500 (446); H-B. 254, 255, 257.

358. Possessive Pronouns. — § 302. *a*, *c*, *d*, *e* (197); B. 243; G. 312; H. 501 (447); H-B. 256, 258.

359. Reflexive Pronouns. — § 299. *a*; 300. 1, 2 (196); B. 244; G. 309; H. 502–504 (448, 449); H-B. 260; 262. 1, 2.

360. When, in a subordinate clause, we wish to refer back to the subject of the principal sentence, and for any reason the use of **sē** would lead to ambiguity, we use **ipse**.

361. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

prīmā lūce.	*at dawn.*
victōria sine volnere.	*a bloodless victory.*
suus quisque.	*each one his own.*

For Oral Translation — Book III. 24, 25

362. 1. At dawn Crassus led forth all his own[1] forces. 2. Do you[2] draw up the line of battle. I[2] will [3]wait and see what plan the enemy adopt. 3. Crassus, we think that we shall fight safely because of the fewness of your (men). 4. The enemy think that they will win a bloodless victory on account of the scarcity of grain. 5. Although the Roman commanders have led forth each his own forces, we shall remain in camp. 6. Did not the enemy fear that[4] they would make our soldiers more eager by their delay? 7. [5]We expressed the opinion unanimously that there ought to be no more delay. 8. I will urge my men to fill the ditches. 9. The auxiliaries were more useful[6] for supplying stones and weapons than for fighting. 10. Crassus sent horsemen [7]to go around the camp. 11. Who of you desires to drive away the defenders from the rear gate?

1. Gen. of **ipse**. 2. Emphatic by contrast. 3. "wait and see," express by one word. 4. **ut** or **nē**? 5. Latin, "the voices of us all were heard," etc. 6. **ūtilis**. 7. Supine of purpose.

LESSON LXXXIV

363. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

intrītus ab labōre.	*unwearied by toil* (lit. *from toil*).
intentus ad pūgnam.	*intent upon the battle.*

For Written Translation — Book III. 26, 27

364. I will show you what I wish done. Spur on your horsemen by giving them great rewards. Take with you those cohorts which are unwearied by toil, and lead them around by a longer route, that they may not be seen by the

enemy. When you have arrived at those fortifications which I have mentioned, quickly demolish them and occupy the enemy's camp before they can find out what is going on. This will not be hard to do, for the eyes and minds of all will be intent[1] upon the battle. Then we on the other[2] side, trusting to your victory, will surround the enemy on every side and pursue them [3]as they seek safety in flight.

1. What gender? Cf. sec. **34**. 2. **alter**. 3. **Express by a participial clause.**

LESSON LXXXV

365. **Relative Pronouns.** — § 304–307. *a*, *b*. N.; *e*; 308. *a*, *c* (197. 5—201); B. 250, 251; G. 610 ff.; H. 510 (453); H-B. 281, 282, 284, 1–6.

366. **Interrogative Pronouns.** — § 333 (104); B. 90; G. 106; H. 511 (454); H-B. 275.

367. **Indefinite Pronouns.** — § 309, 310. *a*; 311, 313, 314. 1, 2. *a* (202); B. 252; G. 313–319; H. 512–515 (455–459); H-B. 276.

368. The relative pronoun cannot be omitted in Latin, as it often is in English in phrases like *the bridge you are building*. In Latin the relative is always expressed, and we have *pōns* **quem** *facis*.

369. Of the indefinite pronouns, **quis** is the least definite and **quīdam** the most definite. The commoner ones, with their meanings and uses, are —

quis, *some one*, *any one*, never stands first in its clause, and usually follows **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, or **num**.

aliquis, *some one*, *any one*, more definite than **quis**.

quisquam (substantive), *any one*, **ūllus** (adjective), *any*, used chiefly in negative sentences or such as imply a negative.

quīvīs or **quīlibet**, *any one you please*.

quisque, *each* (to be distinguished from **uterque**, *each of two*), follows the word to which it belongs and is often used with the superlative; e.g. **optimus quisque**, *every good man* or *all the best men*.

quīdam, *a*, *a certain*, implies a definite knowledge.

370. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

longē aliā ratiōne ac.	*in a far different manner from.*
quae cum ita sint.	*since this is so.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK III. 28, 29

371. 1. Cæsar led his army against the Morini, [1]a state which had never sent hostages. 2. If any one thinks that that war can be quickly finished, he [2]is mistaken. 3. Certain tribes carry on war in a far different manner from the rest of the Gauls. 4. They withdraw themselves and all their possessions to the forests and swamps. 5. Neither can any one see the enemy, nor follow them, in the more difficult places. 6. But they attack the Romans without any danger. 7. Who will seize his arms and drive the enemy back into the woods? 8. Since this[3] is so, Cæsar will fell the forests. 9. He will pile up for a rampart all the timber that he cuts. 10. After a great space had been cleared, something happened[4] of such a nature that the work was stopped. 11. Some villages and buildings which the enemy had were burned. 12. Cæsar stationed his legions each in its own winter quarters.

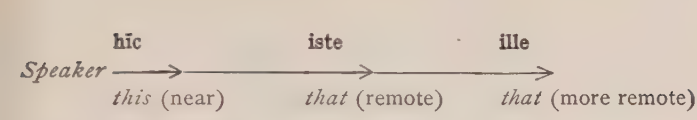
1. Remember that an antecedent which is an appositive is incorporated in the rel. clause. 2. errāre. 3. Rel. for demonstrative. 4. accidere.

LESSON LXXXVI

372. Demonstrative Pronouns. — § 296, 297, 298 (100–102, 195); B. 246–249; G. 305–311; H. 505–507 (450–452); H-B. 271–274, 267–270.

373. *alius* and *alter*. — § 315 (203); B. 253. 1–3; G. 319; H. 516 (459); H-B. 279.

374. Hic, iste, and ille always point out definitely in place or time. Their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus: —



The pronoun is is used of things either far or near and makes no definite reference to place or time. As a substantive it is commonly used as a pronoun of the third person (*he*, *she*, *it*), and is often found as the antecedent of a relative.

375. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

maximam partem.	*for the most part.*
multum sunt in.	*spend much time in.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 1

376. 1. Cæsar waged many wars, some in Gaul and others in Africa and Spain. 2. Concerning the man[1] himself, one thinks one thing, another another. 3. In that year Pompey and Crassus were consuls, of whom the former was a famous general, the latter very rich.[2] 4. Cæsar heard that the Germans had crossed the Rhine for some reason. 5. He was not [3]the man to fear them. 6. The Suevi and Usipetes were German tribes. 7. The one oppressed the other and kept it[4] from agriculture. 8. The Suevi lead out yearly one hundred thousand armed men for war. 9. These[5] are supported by those that stay at home. 10. They live for the most part on milk. 11. They likewise[6] spend much time in hunting. 12. [7]Not even in their extreme climate do they wear any clothing except skins. 13. This[8] method of life makes them men of great size. 14. Cæsar says something about the customs of the Suevi. 15. Does he say anything about the others?

1. is. 2. dīves. 3. is quī. Cf. sec. **145**. 4. Omit. 5. Masc. referring to men. 6. īdem. 7. nē . . . quidem, with the emphatic word between them. 8. Relative for demonstrative.

X. SYNTAX OF NOUNS

LESSON LXXXVII

Expressions of Time

377. **Time When or Within Which.** — § 423, 424. *d*, *e* (256, 259. *a*, *c*); B. 230, 231; G. 393; H. 486, 487 (429); H-B. 439.

378. **Time How Long or During Which.** — § 423, 424. *c* (256, 259. *c*); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. II.

379. **Use of Prepositions in Expressions of Time.** — § 424. *a*, *e* (256. *a*; 259. *b*); B. 181. 2; 230. 2; G. 336, 394; H. 487. 1, 2 (429. 1, 2); H-B. 439. *a*; 387. II. *a*.

380. **Time Before or After an Event.** — § 424. *f* (259. *d*); B. 357. 1; G. 336. 3; 403. 4; H. 488. 1, 2, note 2 (430, note 1. 1)–3); note 3); H-B. 424; 387. II. *b*.

381. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

bellum gerere.	*to wage*, or *carry on, war.*
ūnā ex parte.	*on one side.*

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 2, 3

382. 1. Pompey was consul in the fifty-fifth[1] year before Christ.[2] 2. At that time Cæsar was carrying on war in Gaul. 3. Two years later Crassus was killed in his province. 4. The Gauls were subdued by Cæsar in eight years. 5. In the fourth year he made his first inroad[3] upon the territory of the Germans. 6. A few months after he hastened to Britain. 7. Cæsar used the same horse for many years. 8. The Germans do not use saddles, nor do they regard anything as more disgraceful. 9. On one side the fields of the Suevi lie vacant, on the other the Ubii adjoin. 10. These the Suevi had made tributary to themselves, but, [4]only a few years before, the state had been rich and powerful. 11. The Suevi would have driven the Ubii out of their

territories if they had been able. 12. Neither in war nor in peace did the Germans allow themselves to become feeble.

1. For the numerals consult the table of numerals in the grammar. 2. **Christus, -ī.** 3. **incursiō.** 4. **paucī** means "*only* a few."

LESSON LXXXVIII

383. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons LXXIII–LXXXVI.

384. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

aliquem alicui reī praeficere.
bellum gerendī causā.
bellum gerere.
bellum īnferre alicui.
eōdem ferē tempore.
ex itinere.
fugā salūtem petere.
hostibus nocēre.
in contemptiōnem venīre.
in dēditiōnem recipere.
in extrēmīs lingulīs.
in officiō continēre.
intentus ad pūgnam.
intrītus ab labōre.
longē aliā ratiōne ac.
māgnō ūsuī esse.
maximam partem.
multum sunt in.
negōtium bene gerere.
nūllus pedibus aditus.
paucīs ante annīs.
per vim.
prīmā lūce.
prō perfugā.
pūgnandī potestās.
quae cum ita sint.
ratiōnem pūgnae īnsistere.
scientia reī mīlitāris.
sē castrīs tenēre.
sē movēre ex locō.
studium praedandī.
suus quisque.
ūnā ex parte.
victōria sine volnere.
vindicāre in aliquem.

For Written Translation — Book IV. 4

385. The Usipetes and Tencteri, [1]tribes which I have mentioned above, having been driven out from their territory, wandered about for three years, but finally reached the villages of the Menapii, some of which were on one bank of the Rhine and others on the other. But the Menapii,

being terrified by the approach of so great a multitude, crossed the river before the enemy appeared,[2] and by setting guards prevented the Germans from crossing. [3]The Germans after trying [4]in vain for several days, — since they had no ships and could not surprise the guards, — in order that they might destroy the Menapii by a sudden[5] attack, pretended that they were returning to their own settlements. Making a journey of three days in a single night, they [6]fell upon their unsuspecting foes, killed them, seized their ships, crossed the river, and supported themselves on the captured supplies the rest of the winter.

1. Cf. sec. **371**, note 1. 2. Pass. of **videō**. 3. **illī**, place first in the sentence. 4. **frūstrā**. 5. **subitus, -a, -um**. 6. **adorior**.

LESSON LXXXIX

Expressions of Place

386. **Place From Which.** — § 426. 1; 427. 1; 428. *b, e, f* (258. *a*); B. 229; G. 390, 391; H. 461, 462. 1, 4 (412. I, II. 1); H-B. 409, 451.

387. **Place To Which.** — § 426. 2; 427. 2; 428. *b, c* (258. *b*); B. 182. 1, 2; G. 337. 1–3; H. 418. 4 (380. I, II. 1); H-B. 385, 450.

388. **Place Towards Which.** — § 428. *a, c* (258. *b*. N. 2; *c*. 2. N. 1); B. 182. 3; G. 337. 4; H. 418. 4; 462. 3 (380. 1; 412. 3. N.); H-B. 453.

389. **Place At or In Which.** — § 426. 3; 427. 3; 428. *b, d*. N. 1 (258. *c, f*); B. 228; G. 385–387; H. 483, 485. 1 (425. I, II. 2); H-B. 436, 449.

390. **Place By, Through, or Over Which.** — § 429. *a* (258. *g*); B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476 (420. 3)); H-B. 426.

391. **Words Used Like Names of Towns.** — § 427. *a*; 429. 1, 2 (258. *c*. R.; *d, f*. 1, 2); B. 228. 1. *b*), *c*); G. 385. N. 1; 388; H. 419. 1; 462. 4; 484. 1, 2 (380. II. 2. 1), 2); 412. 1; 426. 1, 2); H-B. 449. *a*; 436. *a, b*.

392. **The Locative Case.** — § 427. ftn. 1 (258. *c*. 2; *d, e*); B. 232; G. 411; H. 78. 4; 83. 4; 108 (48. 4; 51. 8; 66. 4); H-B. 449.

393. **Summary of Place Relations.** — § 426, 427; H. 491. I, II (427, 428).

394. Apply as a general principle the rule that the relations of place are expressed by prepositions with their proper cases, but that names of towns and **domus** and **rūs** omit the preposition.

395. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

terrā marīque.	*by land and sea.*
domī mīlitiaeque.	*at home and in the field.*
aliquem alicūius reī in vēstīgiō paenitēre.	*some one repents of something on the spot.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 5, 6

396. 1. Cæsar waged war against the Gauls by land and sea for many years. 2. He was illustrious[1] both at home and in the field. 3. He was killed at Rome by those who a few years before had been his friends. 4. During the winter before the war against the Germans, Cæsar had been in Italy. 5. From Italy to Germany is a long journey. 6. The Gauls are so[2] quick in making plans that they must needs repent of them on the spot. 7. In the towns the Gauls surround travelers to ask what each one of them has heard about each thing. 8. Cæsar set out for his army early because he feared that the Gauls were sending embassies to the Germans. 9. The army [3]had passed the winter not far from the sea in the states which had last[4] made war. 10. [5]Don't invite the Germans to leave the Rhine. 11. If they wander too widely, they will never return home. 12. Cæsar will not return to Rome until he conquers them.

1. **clārus, -a, -um.** 2. **tam,** as usual with adjectives and adverbs. 3. **hiemō.** 4. **proximē.** 5. Cf. sec. **99.**

LESSON XC

The Genitive with Nouns

397. **General Rules.** — § 342 (213); H. 437–439 (393–395); H-B. 337.

398. **Possessive Genitive.** — § 343 (214. 1); B. 198; G. 362; H. 440. 1 (396. I); H-B. 339. *a*, *b*.

399. **Genitive of Material.** — § 344 (214. 2); B. 197; H-B. 349.

400. **Genitive of Quality.** — § 345 (215); B. 203; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. V); H-B. 355.

401. **The Subjective Genitive.** — § 343. N. 1 (214); B. 199; G. 363; H. 440. 1 (396. II); H-B. 344.

402. **Partitive Genitive.** — § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367–372; H. 440. 5; 441–444 (397. *a*. 1–4; *c*, *e*); H-B. 346. *c*.

403. **The Objective Genitive.** — § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. III); H-B. 354.

404. The dependence of one noun upon another is usually expressed by the genitive. As a rule this relationship should not be expressed in Latin by a preposition, thus making the preposition a sort of conjunction between the two nouns. Such forms of expression are common enough in English, but in Latin the genitive or some other construction is preferred. For example, we say *the war against the Gauls;* the Romans would say *Bellum Gallōrum* or *Bellum Gallicum* or *Bellum in Gallōs gestum*.

405. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

parem esse alicui.	*to be a match for some one.*
mīlle passūs.	*a mile* (lit. *a thousand paces*).
multa mīlia passuum.	*many miles* (lit. *many thousands of paces*).

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 7, 8

406. 1. What plan[1] did Cæsar have? 2. He made a march of a few days into those regions where[2] he heard the

Germans were. 3. The Germans were (men) of the greatest valor. 4. Ambassadors came from them to Cæsar. 5. It is a custom of the Germans not to refuse to resist those who make war upon them. 6. This tribe of Germans had been driven from home by fear of the Suevi. 7. The Rhine is the largest river of Germany. 8. It is many miles long and twenty feet[3] deep. 9. The friendship of the Germans might be of great[4] (value) to Cæsar. 10. The Suevi were the only ones of[5] all the Germans whom they could[6] not conquer. 11. They were a match for all[7] of the others. 12. You may settle in the territory of the Ubii if you choose. 13. The ambassadors of the Ubii are complaining about the wrongs of the Suevi.

1. Partitive genitive. 2. Cf. text. 3. Genitive of measure. 4. Genitive of value. 5. ex, rather than the partitive genitive. Why? 6. Subjunctive of characteristic. 7. Remember that with **omnēs** the partitive genitive is not used.

LESSON XCI

407. **The Genitive in Apposition with a Possessive Pronoun.** — § 302. *e* (184. *d*); B. 243. 3. *a*; G. 321. 2; H. 393. 6 (363. 4. 1); H-B. 339. *b*.

408. **Predicate Genitive after** *esse*. — § 314. *b* (214. 1. *c*); B. 198. 3; 203. 5; G. 366; H. 447 ff. (401 ff.); H-B. 340.

409. **Genitive with Adjectives.** — § 349. *a–c* (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 ff. (399); H-B. 354.

410. In Cæsar the genitive occurs after the adjectives **perītus, imperītus, cupidus, īnsuētus, plēnus,** and **cōnscius.**

411. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

perītus reī mīlitāris.	*skillful in military affairs.*
aliquot diēbus ante.	*several days before.*
longō spatiō fluere.	*to flow over a long course.*

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 9, 10

412. 1. It was [1]of great (importance) to Cæsar to overcome the Germans. 2. [2]It was the duty of the ambassadors to report to their people what[3] Cæsar had said. 3. Of all the Germans the tribe of the Suevi is the most skillful in military affairs. 4. The ambassadors will return three days later. 5. A large part of the cavalry had been sent across the Meuse several days before to plunder. 6. They were desirous[4] of interposing delay until the cavalry should return. 7. The Meuse is of great depth[5] and is always full[6] of water. 8. The Rhine flows[7] over a long course through the territory of many tribes. 9. But the Germans consider[8] the Rhine their own[9] river. 10. Don't move the camp nearer to us. 11. The Rhine, like the Nile,[10] flows into the sea by many mouths. 12. The river is full of fish.

1. Pred. gen. of value. 2. Latin, "it was of the ambassadors." 3. Latin, "those (things) which." 4. **cupidus, -a, -um.** 5. **altitūdō.** 6. **plēnus, -a, -um.** 7. Latin, "is carried." 8. **habēre.** 9. Appositional gen. of **ipse.** 10. **Nīlus, -ī.**

LESSON XCII

413. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

post diem tertium.	*after three days.*
ut erat cōnstitūtum.	*as had been agreed upon.*
aquātiōnis causā.	*for the sake of getting water.*
potestātem facere.	*to give permission.*

For Written Translation — Book IV. 11

414. When the ambassadors[1] had returned to Cæsar after three days, as had been agreed upon, they were full of fear because he was[2] no more than twelve miles distant from their camp, and begged him not to approach nearer. Cæsar

said that he would not proceed more than four miles that day for the purpose of getting water, and that, if they were desirous of sending ambassadors to the Ubii with reference to those terms that he had proposed, he would give them[3] permission. They asked for three days time, which Cæsar granted, although he knew that reasons for delay[4] would be given[5] until their cavalry had returned.

1. Place first. Why? 2. Indic. or subjv. or either? 3. Why not **sibi** as in the text? 4. Objective gen. 5. Latin, "shown." Use the usual circumlocution for the fut. pass. infin.

LESSON XCIII

The Genitive with Verbs

415. With Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting. — § 350, 351 (219); B. 206; G. 376; H. 454, 455 (406. II); H-B. 350, 351.

416. With Verbs of Judicial Action. — § 352 (220); B. 208; G. 378; H. 456 (409. II); H-B. 342, 343.

417. With Verbs of Feeling (mostly Impersonal). — § 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457 (406. I; 409. III); H-B. 352.

418. With *interest* and *rēfert*. — § 355 (222); B. 210 ff.; G. 381; H. 449 (406. III); H-B. 345.

419. With Verbs of Plenty and Want. — § 356 (223); B. 212; G. 383; H. 458 (410. V. 1); H-B. 347.

420. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

māgnī hostium interest (rēfert).	*it is of great importance to*, or *it greatly concerns, the enemy.*
māgnī meā interest (rēfert).	*it greatly concerns me.*
resistere alicui.	*to resist some one.*

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 12

421. 1. The enemy attacked our horsemen as soon as they saw them. 2. [1]They were not ashamed of this, although

that day had been asked for a truce. 3. For this reason Cæsar accused them of treachery.[2] 4. It greatly concerns the enemy to throw our (men) into confusion quickly. 5. After our horses were stabbed we were sorry[3] that we had resisted them. 6. Cæsar will not forget the death of his brave horsemen. 7. It is of small concern to me to live if I [4]do not rescue my brother from peril. 8. If he should be killed, I should be justly[5] accused of cowardice.[6] 9. Mindful of my duty,[7] I will spur my horse against the enemy. 10. All (men) are not like Piso. 11. Some of the soldiers were greatly frightened, but a certain Piso was very brave.

1. Latin, "it did not shame them of this." 2. **perfidia**. 3. **paenitet**. Latin, "it repented us that." 4. Fut. perf. in Latin. Cf. sec. 71. 5. **rēctē**. 6. **īgnāvia**. 7. **officium**.

LESSON XCIV

The Dative Case

422. **General Rule.** — § 361 (224); B. 186; G. 344; H. 422, 423 (382); H-B. 358.

423. **The Indirect Object.** — § 362. *a*; 366 (225, 226); B. 187; G. 345, 346; H. 424 (384); H-B. 365.

424. It should be carefully noted that the various constructions of the dative with verbs all come under the general head of the indirect object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object and are therefore followed by the dative. Transitive verbs take a direct object and are followed by the accusative, but sometimes they have an indirect object or dative as well. *The whole question, then, as to whether or not a certain verb takes the dative depends upon its capacity for governing an indirect object.* Remember that English is not a safe guide, for many verbs that are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin, and *vice versa*.

425. When *to* denotes motion it is never expressed by the dative, but by **ad** or **in** with the accusative: —

He sent the soldiers to the town, **mīlitēs** { **ad** / **in** } **oppidum mīsit.**

426. In English we may say —

a. He gives the boy a book.

b. A book is given to the boy.

c. The boy is given a book.

Sentences *a* and *b* are similarly expressed in Latin, as, —

a. **Puerō librum dat.**

b. **Liber puerō datur.**

Observe that the *direct object* of the active verb becomes the *subject* of the passive.

Sentence *c* is foreign to the Latin idiom and cannot be thus expressed. The indirect object of the active cannot be used as the subject in the passive.

427. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nōn iam.	*no longer.*
nihil spatī.	*no time.*
contrā atque.	*contrary to what.*
sī quid possumus.	*whatever we can.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 13

428. 1. [1]Cæsar ought no longer to listen to ambassadors. 2. He cannot forget the treachery of the Germans. 3. He charged them with making[2] war upon him without provocation. 4. It is [3]the height of folly to wait until the forces of the enemy are increased. 5. I will give the enemy no time for making plans. 6. Do you not perceive how much prestige the enemy have won? 7. The day after that day all the elders came to him to the camp. 8. Cæsar accuses the Germans of using[2] deceit. 9. We have come to excuse ourselves. 10. The battle was begun, contrary to what had

been ordered. 11. Let us obtain whatever we can in the way of a truce. 12. The chief men were placed in Cæsar's power by a very fortunate circumstance. 13 The cavalry had been greatly terrified a few days before.

1. Cf. sec. **338**, note 7. 2. Gen. of the gerund. 3. Pred. gen. as in the text.

LESSON XCV

429. The Dative of the Indirect Object with Special Intransitive Verbs. — § 367 (227); B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 426–428 (385); H-B. 362. I–III; 364. 1.

430. The Dative with Passive Intransitive Verbs. — § 369. *a*; 372 (230); B. 187. II. *b*; G. 208. 2; 346. 1; H. 426. 3 (384. 5); H-B. 364. 2.

431. The so-called special verbs that govern the dative take this construction, not because of any arbitrary rule, but because from the Latin point of view they are intransitive and take an indirect object. The English meaning is not a safe guide, for it sometimes happens that two Latin verbs with the same English equivalence will be the one transitive, governing the accusative, and the other intransitive, governing the dative. For example, the Latin has the two verbs **nocēre** and **laedere**, both translated *to injure;* but the former is intransitive and the latter transitive.

432. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

persuādet omnibus.	*he persuades all.*
omnibus persuādētur.	*all are persuaded.*
fugā dēspērātā.	*despairing of safety.*
apud Caesarem remanēre.	*to stay with Cæsar.*

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 14, 15

433. 1. Cæsar quickly finished a march of eight miles. 2. He could not pardon[1] the treachery of the Germans. 3. He commanded[2] his legions to give the enemy time neither for defending the camp nor for seeking safety in

flight. 4. It is of great concern to the enemy that they seize their arms quickly and resist the Germans. 5. The Germans spared[8] neither women nor children. 6. [4]All had been persuaded [5]to cross the Rhine. 7. Cæsar sent his cavalry [6]to pursue them. 8. Despairing of safety, they threw themselves into the river. 9. The Germans stayed with Cæsar through fear of the Gauls. 10. The Gauls were not friendly to them because they had [7]done them harm. 11. He would not have given them permission to depart, if they had been guilty[8] of treachery. 12. He was not ashamed of his cruelty.

1. īgnōscere. 2. imperāre. 3. parcere. 4. Latin, "it had been persuaded to all." 5. Not infin. 6. Express by the supine. 7. nocēre. 8. noxius, -a, -um.

LESSON XCVI

434. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

auxilium ferre.	*to give aid.*
māgnopere ōrāre.	*to entreat earnestly.*

For Written Translation — Book IV. 16

435. The Germans thought that the Rhine bounded the power of the Roman people and[1] that it was not[1] right that anything across the river should be under Roman authority. [2]They had been persuaded that Cæsar neither dared nor could cross the Rhine with an army and[1] that he would not[1] give aid to those that had given[3] hostages and made[3] friendship. Even[4] at that very[5] time ambassadors [6]from the Ubii were earnestly entreating him to take his army across [7]because the Suevi were making war upon them.[8] For these[9] reasons Cæsar decided that he ought to cross the river immediately.[10] He thought it of great importance to

himself and the state that even the farthest German tribes should fear for their own[11] fortunes.

1. *And . . . not*, neque. 2. Latin, "it had been persuaded to them," followed by indir. disc. 3. Subjv. Why? 4. etiam. 5. ipse. 6. Gen. 7. I.e. on the authority of the Ubii. Cf. sec. 176. 8. sibi, as indirect reflexive. 9. Use relative for demonstrative. 10. statim. 11. Appositional gen. of ipse.

LESSON XCVII

436. **The Dative of the Indirect Object with Compounds.** — § 370. *a*; 371 (228); B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

437. **The Dative with Verbs of Taking Away.** — § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*); G. 347. 5; H. 427 (385. II. 2); H-B. 371.

438. *Many verbs compounded with* **ad, ante, con,** *etc., do not take the dative.* Their doing so depends upon their capacity for governing an indirect object (cf. sec. **424**). The usage of the best writers as recorded in the lexicon is the only safe guide. Transitive compounds take the accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect object), as — **Caesar Gallīs bellum īnfert.**

439. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

proeliō interesse.	*to take part in a battle.*
quō . . . eō.	*the . . . the* (followed by a comparative).

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 17

440. 1. Part of the cavalry did not take part in the battle. 2. It was not consistent with Cæsar's dignity to cross the Rhine with boats. 3. He thought that he ought to build a bridge. 4. This was not easy to do, for reasons which I shall mention. 5. The river was of great width, swiftness, and depth. 6. No one can [1]take from Cæsar the fame[2] of building this bridge. 7. The beams were so joined together that they could withstand the violence of

the stream. 8. The Romans deprived[8] many thousand[4] Gauls and Germans of life. 9. The barbarians wished to injure the bridge. 10. To whom did Cæsar assign[5] the building of the bridge? 11. He placed[6] his *legati* over[6] the work. 12. The longer the bridge was, the more difficult it was to defend.

1. ēripere with acc. and dat. of separation. 2. glōria. 3. auferre. 4. Dat. of separation followed by the part. gen. 5. trādere. Cf. sec. 336. 6. praeficere.

LESSON XCVIII

441. The Dative of Possession. — § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374.

442. The Dative of Purpose or End. — § 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360, 361.

443. Both the dative with esse and habēre with the accusative are freely used to express possession with little distinction in meaning: —

The soldier has a horse { mīlitī est equus. / mīles equum habet.

In expressions of naming the dative with esse is more common.

444. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

pōns in Rhēnō.	*a bridge over the Rhine.*
alicui metum inicere.	*to inspire fear in some one.*
ūnum in locum convenīre.	*to assemble in one place.*

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 18, 19

445. 1. The Germans had no bridge over[1] the Rhine. 2. All the work was done within ten days. 3. Cæsar hastened into the territory of a tribe whose[2] name was the Sugambri. 4. The bridge was [3]a great terror to the barbarians. 5. While Cæsar was delaying a few days across the

Rhine ambassadors came [4]to beg for peace. 6. [5]He commanded hostages to be brought to him. 7. The Sugambri hid themselves in the woods from the time that the bridge began to be undertaken. 8. He burned all the buildings that they had. 9. The Romans inspired fear in the Germans. 10. Let all that can bear arms meet in one place. 11. Cæsar had many reasons for leading his army across. 12. He returned to Gaul eighteen days after he had crossed. 13. The friendship of Cæsar was [6]of the greatest service to the Ubii.

1. in with the abl. 2. Gen. or dat. 3. Latin, "for a great terror." 4. Could this be expressed by the infin. (cf. sec. **122**)? By the supine (cf. sec. **353**)? 5. Express in two ways. 6. Dat. of purpose.

LESSON XCIX

446. **The Dative of Reference.** — § 376 (235); B. 188; G. 352; H. 425. 1, 2, 4 (384. II. 1. 1), 2); 4); H-B. 366, 369.

447. **The Dative with Adjectives.** — § 383, 384 (234); B. 192; G. 359; H. 434 (391); H-B. 362. I-III; 339. *c*.

448. In Cæsar the adjectives most common with the dative are **proximus, fīnitimus,** and **idōneus.**

449. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

longē abesse.	*to be far away.*
māgnō Caesarī ūsuī esse.	*to be of great service to Cæsar.*
māior nāvium multitūdō.	*a somewhat large number of ships.*

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 20

450. 1. The Gauls have early winters. 2. [1]As you set out from Gaul, Britain is not far away. 3. The time of the year was not suitable[2] for carrying on war. 4. Aid from

Britain was furnished to our enemies. 5. It will be of great service to Cæsar if he only visits[3] the island. 6. Strange[4] to say,[5] the harbors of the island were unknown to the Gauls. 7. The traders are the [6]only ones that know anything about Britain. 8. There is danger for one going there rashly. 9. I cannot find out how large the island is. 10. [7]Are the harbors adapted [8]to a somewhat large number of ships or not? 11. The tribes which inhabit Britain are similar to the Gauls. 12. The coast of the island is [9]near to Gaul.

1. Latin, "to those setting out." 2. **aptus, -a, -um.** 3. Fut. perf. Cf. sec. **71.** 4. **mīrābilis, -e.** 5. Supine. 6. **ūnus, -a, -um.** Cf. sec. **145.** 7. Cf. sec. **213.** 8. Use the dat. and observe that the text has the acc. with **ad.** 9. **fīnitimus, -a, -um.**

LESSON C

451. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons LXXXIX–XCIX.

452. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

alicui metum inicere.
aliquem alicūius in vēstīgiō paenitēre.
aliquot diēbus ante.
apud Caesarem remanēre.
aquātiōnis causā.
auxilium ferre.
contrā atque.
domī mīlitiaeque.
fugā dēspērātā.
longē abesse.
māgnī hostium interest (rēfert).
māgnī meā interest (rēfert).
māgnō Caesarī ūsuī esse.
māgnopere ōrāre.
māior nāvium multitūdō.
mīlle passūs.
multa mīlia passuum.
nihil spatī.
nōn iam.
omnibus persuādētur.
perītus reī mīlitāris.
persuādet omnibus.
pōns in Rhēnō.
post diem tertium.
potestātem facere.
proeliō interesse.
quō . . . eō.
resistere alicui.
terrā marīque.
ut erat cōnstitūtum.

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 21

453. Before Cæsar set out for Britain he sent ahead two men, Volusenus and Commius, who, he thought, would be suitable for this business.[1] The one did not trust himself to the barbarians, but[2] came back in five days and reported what he had seen. The other, (who was) faithful to him, a man[3] of great[4] valor, and (one) whose influence in these regions was considered of great consequence, he ordered to visit what states he could, and to announce that he himself would come there as soon as possible, and further to urge that they submit to the supremacy of the Roman people. Meanwhile he had set out for (the country of) the Morini, for from there the passage is the shortest for those[3] desiring to go to the island.

1. **negōtium.** 2. Latin, "and." Cf. sec. **245**, note 3. 3. Omit. 4. Latin, "the highest." Superlatives are much more common in Latin than in English.

LESSON CI

The Accusative Case

454. **The Direct Object.** — § 387. *a*, *b* (237); B. 172 ff.; G. 330; H. 404 (371); H-B. 390. *a*.

455. **The Cognate Accusative.** — § 390. *a*, *c*, *d* (238); B. 176; G. 332 333; H. 409 (371. II); H-B. 396. 1, 2.

456. **The Accusative of Extent.** — § 425. *a*, *b* (257); B. 181; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. I.

457. Many intransitive verbs become transitive when compounded with **circum**, **per**, **praeter**, or **trāns**.

458. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

imperītus Rōmānae cōnsuētūdinis.	*unacquainted with Roman customs.*

satis opportūnē accidere.	*to happen very opportunely.*
in fidem accipere.	*to receive under (one's) protection.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 22

459. 1. The Morini were distant about ten miles from the place where[1] Cæsar was equipping his ships. 2. They were unacquainted with Roman customs and lived a barbarous life. 3. For this reason they [2]made many mistakes. 4. They sent ambassadors to Cæsar to promise [3]many things. 5. This happened very opportunely for Cæsar. 6. On account of the time of year I will count nothing of more importance than Britain. 7. I will demand a great number of hostages [4]from them. 8. I advise them this,[3] [5]that they bring the hostages quickly and be received under my protection. 9. Cæsar[6] had about eighty transports for carrying over two legions. 10. I think that the transports were about eighty feet long and twenty feet wide. 11. To whom did Cæsar give the rest of the army to lead? To certain *legati*. 12. Ships are often kept by the wind from coming into port for many hours.

1. **ubi**. 2. **peccāre** with cognate acc. 3. Cognate acc. 4. Latin, "to them." 5. Appositive clause of result. 6. Dat. of poss.

LESSON CII

460. **Two Accusatives, Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.** — § 391, 392, 393. *a* (239. *a*); B. 177; G. 340; H. 410 (373); H-B. 392.

461. **Two Accusatives, Person and Thing.** — § 394, 395. N. 3; 396. *a* (239. *b*. 2. *b*, *c*. N. 1, R.); B. 178; G. 339; H. 411–413 (374–376); H-B. 393. *a*, *b*.

462. Note that **petō**, **pōstulō**, and **quaerō** do not take two accusatives, but the accusative of the thing and the ablative with **ab** (rarely **ex**) of the person: —

auxilium ā Caesare petere, *to ask aid from Cæsar.*

frūmentum ab sociīs pōstulāre, *to demand corn from the allies.*

463. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nāvīs cōnscendere.	*to embark.*
tertiā ferē vigiliā solvere.	*to cast off about midnight.*
hōrā diēī circiter quārtā.	*about ten o'clock.*
in ancorīs exspectāre.	*to lie at anchor.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 23

464. 1. Cæsar demanded a great many hostages from the Menapii. 2. The Menapii were asked for a great number of hostages by Cæsar. 3. The island nearest to Gaul was called[1] Britain. 4. Cæsar embarked and cast off about midnight. 5. He reached the island about ten o'clock. 6. Then he lay at anchor five hours until the rest of the ships should arrive there. 7. This place is not at all suitable for landing troops, because the sea is closely hemmed in by mountains. 8. The *legati* asked[2] Cæsar what he had learned from Volusenus. 9. He did not conceal[3] from them what he wished done. 10. Both wind and tide were favorable. 11. The Romans were not very skillful[4] in maritime affairs. 12. Who taught Cæsar navigation? I do not know. 13. The Britons did not beg Cæsar for peace.

1. appellāre. 2. rogāre. 3. cēlāre. Observe that in this sentence as in the preceding the acc. of the thing is expressed by the indirect question. 4. perītus, -a, -um.

LESSON CIII

465. The Adverbial Accusative. — § 397. *a* (240. *a*, *b*); B. 176. 3; 185; G. 333; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); H-B. 388, 389.

466. Accusative as Subject of an Infinitive. — § 397. *e* (240. *f*); B. 184; G. 343. 2; H. 415, 610, 612 (536); H-B. 398.

467. By far the most common form of the adverbial accusative in Cæsar is the adverbial use of neuter pronouns, or of neuter

adjectives indefinite in meaning. They are sometimes classed as cognate accusatives, sometimes as pure adverbs; but the line cannot be sharply drawn. Examples are **multum, plūs, plūrimum, paulum, nihil, quod.** These and similar words occur in Cæsar more than fifty times.

468. The subject of the infinitive was regarded originally as the object of the verb on which the infinitive depended. Thus **iubeō te vincere** is literally, *I command you for conquering.* Later, the accusative came to be used as the subject of the infinitive independently of any governing verb, as, **mīlitem timēre est turpe,** *for a soldier to fear is disgraceful.*

469. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in altō cōnstituī.	*to be anchored in deep water.*
ex aridō.	*from dry land.*
maximam partem.	*for the most part.*
nāvēs longae.	*men-of-war.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 24, 25

470. 1. These barbarians are generally in the habit of using chariots in battle. 2. The Romans[1] had the greatest difficulty in disembarking.[2] 3. Why did not the ships approach nearer the land? 4. Because, on account of their size, they could be anchored only in deep water. 5. We had to jump from the ships and stand in the waves, and were greatly hindered [3]in other respects. 6. The enemy hurled their weapons from dry land or advancing a little into the water. 7. For these reasons we [4]for the most part did not strive with the same zeal. 8. Cæsar says that the men-of-war were of great service to the Romans. 9. [5]While his men were hesitating, he ordered the men-of-war to be anchored on the exposed flank of the enemy. 10. He thought that the enemy would be terrified and retreat. 11. He cried

in a loud voice that they [6]should leap down, unless they were willing to betray the eagle to the enemy.

1. Dat. of poss. 2. Gen. of gerund. 3. cētera, adverbial acc. 4. Adverbial acc. 5. Abl. abs. 6. Remember that an imperative of direct disc. becomes subjv. in indir.

LESSON CIV

471. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

sīgna subsequī.	*to follow the standards.*
alius aliā ex nāvī.	*men from different ships.*
ab latere apertō.	*on the exposed flank.*
proelium facere.	*to fight a battle.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 26, 27

472. When Cæsar noticed that his soldiers could not follow the standards and that men from different ships joined whatever standard they happened upon and that the enemy were hurling weapons on the exposed flank, he commanded aid to be sent to those that were hard pressed. But as soon as the Romans stood on dry land, they put the enemy to flight; and the only thing that was lacking to Cæsar's former good fortune was this, [1]that he[2] had no cavalry [3]with which to pursue the enemy. After this battle was fought ambassadors came to ask[4] Cæsar for peace, and said that [5]he ought to pardon them because they had made war upon him through ignorance. Cæsar demanded hostages, all of whom[6] they gave in a few days.

1. Substantive clause with quod. Cf. sec. 208. 2. Dat. of poss. 3. Rel. clause of purpose. 4. Remember that petō does not take two accusatives. 5. Latin, "it ought to be pardoned to them." 6. Not part. gen. Why?

LESSON CV

The Ablative Case

473. **General Consideration.** — § 399 (242); B. 213; G. 384; H. 459 (411); H-B. 403.

474. **The Ablative of Separation.** — § 400, 401, 402 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 461–466 (414); H-B. 408. 1, 2, 3; 410, 411, 412.

475. **The Ablative of Source, Origin, and Material.** — § 403. *a* (244); B. 215; G. 395, 396; H. 467–470 (415); H-B. 413, 406. 4.

476. **The Ablative of Cause.** — § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444. *c*.

477. The ablative of separation regularly takes a preposition if the ablative denotes persons.

478. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in altum prōvehī.	*to put out to sea.*
adversā nocte.	*in spite of the darkness.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 28, 29

479. 1. The ships of the cavalry set sail from the upper harbor by Cæsar's order.[1] 2. They trusted to the smooth[2] sea[3] and gentle breeze.[3] 3. When they were already seen from the camp, a storm [4]kept them from the land. 4. The wind carried some back to the same place from which they had set out. 5. Others, after throwing out the anchors [5]in vain, of necessity put out to sea again,[6] in spite of the darkness. 6. [7]The Mediterranean sea [8]is without tides. 7. For this reason it happened that the Romans did not know that the ocean tides are highest at full moon. 8. Cæsar was deprived at one time both of his men-of-war and of (his) transports. 9. There is no doubt that the enemy rejoiced[9] at this occurrence. 10. Because of this calamity[10] there was great excitement throughout the whole army. 11. Cæsar was born

of a noble family.[11] 12. Commius sprang from the Atrebatian tribe. 13. The ships of the Veneti were made of oak.[12]

1. **iussū.** 2. **tranquillus, -a, -um.** 3. Abl. of cause or dat. after **cōnfīdō.** 4. **prohibēre.** 5. **frūstrā.** 6. **rūrsus.** 7. **Mare Internum.** 8. **carēre.** 9. **laetārī.** 10. Latin, "thing." 11. **genus.** 12. **rōbur.**

LESSON CVI

480. **The Ablative of Agent.** — § 405. N. 1, N. 2 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 467, 468 (415. I); H-B. 406. 1. *b.*

481. **The Ablative of Comparison.** — § 406, 407. *a*, *c* (247); B. 217; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. *d.*

482. **The Ablative of Manner.** — § 412. *a*, *b* (248); B. 220; G. 399; H. 473. 3 (419. III); H-B. 445. 1–3; 422.

483. Distinguish carefully between the ablative of agent which requires a preposition **ā** or **ab** and the ablative of means which is expressed without a preposition: —

a. The Gauls were overcome by the Romans, **Gallī ā Rōmānīs superābantur.**

b. The Gauls were overcome by the valor of the Romans, **Gallī virtūte Rōmānōrum superābantur.**

484. Note that after **plūs, minus, amplius,** and **longius,** the omission of **quam** often has no effect upon the construction.

485. The ablative of manner without either **cum** or an attributive adjective is rare and limited to a few words that have almost the force of adverbs. In Cæsar we find the following: **animō, mente, iniūriā, silentiō.**

486. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

nāvīs reficere.	*to repair ships.*
optimum factū.	*the best thing to do.*

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 30, 31

487. 1. To the chiefs of Britain liberty was dearer[1] than life. 2. Because of the tempest both horsemen, ships, and

grain were lacking to the Romans. 3. This camp was smaller than usual.[2] 4. They judged that the best thing to do was to keep us from grain and other supplies. 5. If the Romans had been conquered by them, no one thereafter would have crossed over to Britain to make war. 6. Cæsar began to suspect their plans from the fact that they had ceased to give hostages. 7. He therefore began to prepare his resources for every emergency with the greatest speed.[8] 8. How[4] did the Romans repair their ships? 9. They used the timber and bronze of those [5]that were in the worst condition. 10. Bronze is better[6] for ships than iron. 11. Everything was done by the soldiers with the greatest zeal.

1. cārus, -a, -um. 2. solitum, -ī. 3. celeritās. 4. quō modō, abl. of manner which has passed into the adverb quōmodo. 5. Follow the text. 6. ūtilis.

LESSON CVII

488. The Ablative of Means. — § 408, 409 (248. 8); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. *a.*

489. The Ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc. — § 410. N. (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. I); H-B. 429.

490. The Ablative with *opus* and *ūsus*. — § 411 (243. *e*); B. 218. 2; G. 406; H. 477. III (414. IV); H-B. 430. 1.

491. Means is expressed in English by *with* or *by*.
In Latin *no preposition should be used.*

492. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

opus est mihi aliquā rē.	*I need something.*
ab hostibus premī.	*to be hard pressed by the enemy.*

For Oral Translation — Book IV. 32

493. 1. [1]Cæsar needed both ships and cavalry. 2. While he was carrying on war in Britain, he did not enjoy much

quiet.[2] 3. [3]At that time part of the soldiers were on guard before the gates of the camp. 4. A tenth part of a legion is called a cohort. 5. There was need of a guard[4] lest the enemy [5]get possession of the camp. 6. Cæsar suspected from the dust that the legion which he had sent to gather grain was being hard pressed by the enemy. 7. He used the cohorts which were on guard [6]to set out with him. 8. He noticed that the legion was being hard pressed on every side by the weapons of the enemy. 9. They laid aside their arms while they were engaged in reaping. 10. They hid in the woods by night that they might attack the Romans suddenly. 11. The Romans were no braver than the Britons, but used better weapons.

1. Latin, "there was need to Cæsar." 2. **ōtium.** 3. **id temporis,** adv. acc. with part. gen. 4. **praesidium.** 5. **potior** with either the gen. or the abl. 6. **ad** with gerund.

LESSON CVIII

494. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in perpetuum.	*for ever.*
in omnīs partīs.	*in all directions.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 33, 34

495. The barbarians, thinking the opportunity very favorable both for taking booty and for freeing themselves for ever from fear of the Romans, sent messengers in all directions to collect infantry and cavalry and war-chariots. They trusted[1] most of all in the chariots, which, because of their strangeness, were more terrible[2] to the Romans than either horsemen or infantry, and generally threw the ranks into confusion by the very rattle of their wheels. The charioteers used them with the greatest skill,[3] and ran along the pole and stood on the yoke [4]while the horses were going at

full speed. [5]Whenever in battle they dismounted from the chariots, they so stationed them that if there [6]should be need of retreat, they could return to them very quickly.

1. cōnfidō with abl. of cause or with the dat. 2. horribilis, -e. 3. scientia. 4. Abl. abs. 5. Past general condition, cf. sec. **240**. 6. Imperf. subjv. Why?

LESSON CIX

496. The Ablative of Accompaniment. — § 413. *a*, *b* (248. 7); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1; 474 (419. I. 1); H-B. 418, 419, 420.

497. The Ablative of Degree of Difference. — § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424.

498. The Ablative of Quality or Characteristic. — § 415. *a* (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. II); H-B. 443.

499. The English preposition *with* needs special care in translation; it may denote —

a. CAUSE, as in *he shook with fear* (abl. of cause or the acc. with **propter** or **ob**, sec. **476**).

b. MEANS, as in *he slew him with a sword* (abl. of means, sec. **488**).

c. MANNER, as in *he ran with great speed* (abl. of manner, sec. **482**).

d. ACCOMPANIMENT, as in *he goes with three legions* (abl. of accompaniment, regularly with **cum**).

500. Cæsar uses the genitive to express quality more than twice as often as the ablative, and observes the following distinctions: —

a. Numerical statements of measure, number, time, and space are in the genitive.

b. Parts of the body are in the ablative.

c. Characteristics not included in *a* or *b* may be expressed by either case.

501. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

māior dīmidiō.	*larger by half.*
paucīs post hōrīs.	*a few hours later.*
tempestās nāvigātiōnī idōnea.	*weather suitable for sailing.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 35, 36

502. 1. Cæsar set out for Britain with two legions. 2. The barbarians' army was larger by half. 3. If we should defeat the enemy, they would escape peril by their swiftness. 4. Commius waş a leader of great authority[1] among the Atrebates. 5. Though the ships with the cavalry had not yet arrived, yet Commius had brought over some horsemen with him. 6. The longer the enemy sustained the attack, the more were killed. 7. The buildings which were burned were not of great size.[2] 8. A few hours later on the same day, ambassadors were sent by the enemy regarding peace. 9. Cæsar feared that he would not reach the continent if he set sail with weak ships. 10. At the time of the equinox the weather is not often suitable for sailing.

1. **dignitās.** 2. **māgnitūdō.**

LESSON CX

503. Ablative of Price. — § 416, 417. *b*, *c* (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. 1, 2. R.

504. Ablative of Specification. — § 418. *a* (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

505. Ablative with *dignus* and *indignus*. — § 418. *b* (245. *a*. 1); B. 226. 2; G. 397. 2; H. 481 (421. III); H-B. 442.

506. While price is regularly denoted by the ablative, it should be remembered that the four genitives **tantī**, **quantī**, **plūris**, and **minōris** are used with verbs of buying and selling to denote indefinite price.

507. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

arma pōnere.	*to lay down arms.*
māgnō cōnstāre.	*to cost a great price.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — BOOK IV. 37, 38

508. 1. Many of Cæsar's victories cost a great price. 2. But usually his care for[1] the lives[2] of his soldiers was worthy of the highest praise. 3. The Romans did not surpass[3] the Gauls in valor but in fortune. 4. If you don't want to be killed, lay down your arms. 5. Cæsar thought that the Morini were subdued, but they showed themselves unworthy of his friendship. 6. He commanded all the cavalry to be sent from the camp for aid to his men. 7. Though they fought very bravely for more than four hours, only a few had received wounds. 8. For how much did Cæsar sell[4] the captives that came into his power? For a very great price. 9. Labienus used the legions which had been brought back from Britain against the Morini. 10. No one was more distinguished[5] in war than Cæsar. 11. He surpassed[3] all other generals in number of thanksgivings.

1. **dē** with the abl. 2. Singular in Latin. 3. **praestāre** with the dative. 4. **vēndere**. 5. **clārus, -a, -um.**

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL NOTES

Ablative. Absolute, when not permissible, 328; agency distinguished from means, 483; manner without **cum** or modifying adjective, 485; means, 491; quality, 500; separation, 477.

Adjective agreement with two nouns of different genders, 34.

Adverbial accusative, 467.

Agency distinguished from means, 483.

antequam and **priusquam**, constructions after, 197.

Appositive, position of, 27.

Appositive with a locative, 29.

Attraction, subjv. of, 293.

Causal clauses, summary of, 176.

cum causal, 180; constructions with, 248; meaning *whenever*, 193; temporal, 192.

Characteristic, relative clauses of, 144, 145.

Clauses, arrangement of, 17, 23.

Complementary infinitive, 315.

Concessive clauses, force of the concessive particles, 247.

Conditional clauses of comparison with **ac si**, **ut si**, etc., tenses employed, 243.

Conditions, general, 240.

Conditions in indirect discourse, 273–275, 282, 283, 289.

Conditions, particular, 227–229.

conor, constructions after, 131.

Dative. With adjectives, 448; with compounds, 438; possession, 443; with special verbs, 431; with verbs, general principle, 424.

Demonstrative pronouns, 374.

dignus, **indignus**, constructions after, 150.

dubito, constructions after, 167.

dum, constructions after, 255.

dum, **donec**, **quoad**, constructions after, 202.

General conditions, 240.

Genitive. General rule, 404; indefinite price expressed by **tanti**, **quanti**, **pluris**, **minoris**, 506; quality, 500; with adjectives, 410.

Gerund and gerundive, difference between, 342; gerundive of intransitive verbs, 335; gerundive of purpose, 336.

Hindering and opposing, verbs of, 166.

Hortatory subjunctive, 79.

Imperative in prohibitions, 99.

Imperfect indicative, 61.

Indefinite pronouns, summary and meaning of, 369.

Indirect Discourse. Conditions, 273–275, 282, 283, 289; informal, 293; prohibitions, 267; questions, 266; tenses of infinitive, 261, 305; verbs introducing, 262.
Indirect questions, 217–219.
Infinitive. Complementary, verbs with, 315; subject of, 468; tenses of, 261, 305; present translated by English past, 304; with subject accusative, as object, 310.
Integral part, subjv. of, 293.
Interrogatives, 213.
Intransitive verbs made transitive, 457.
ipse as indirect reflexive, 360.
iubeo, construction after, 131.

Manner, expressed by abl. without **cum** or a modifying adj., 485.
Means, ablative of, 491.

Optative subjunctive, 83, 84.

Participle, tenses lacking, 326; tenses of, 325.
Particular conditions, 227–229.
patior, construction after, 131.
Perfect indicative with force of present, 65.
Perfect participle with force of present, 327.
Place, expressions of, general rule, 394.
plus, minus, amplius, longius, construction after, 484.
Potential subjunctive, 94, 95.
Present tense, translation of, 55; with force of future, 56.
Price, indefinite, **tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris**, 506.
Prohibitions, 99; in indir. disc., 267.
Pronouns. Agreement of, 41; demonstrative, 374; indefinite, 369.
Purpose. Expressed by gerundive, 336; supine, 353; not by infinitive, 122; relative clauses of, 119, 120; summary of constructions, 137; verbs introducing substantive clauses of, 129, 130.

Quality, genitive and ablative, 500.
Questions. In indirect discourse, 266; indirect, 217–219; rhetorical, 90.
qui causal, 181.
quin, quominus, constructions with, 166.
quo expressing purpose, 121.
quod, substantive clauses introduced by, 208, 209.

Relative clauses, general statement, 118.
Relative clauses of purpose, 119, 120.
Relative pronoun agreeing with predicate noun, 42; cannot be omitted, 368.
Result clauses, 154, 155.
Result, substantive clauses of, 162.
Rhetorical questions, 90.

Second periphrastic conjugation, construction with, 334.
Separation, ablative of, 477.
Sequence of tenses, 106, 107.

Subjunctive. Hortatory, 79; in independent sentences, 78; in wishes and prayers (optative), 83, 84; of integral part or attraction, 293; potential, 94, 95; tenses of, 75; translated by English indicative, 77; with force of English potential, 76.
Substantive clauses, summary of, 161; of purpose, 129, 130; of result, 162.
Supine in **-u**, 354; in **-um**, 353.

Temporal clauses, general statement, 185; summary of, 184.
Tenses. Imperfect, 61; more exact in Latin, 71; of infinitive, 261, 305; of participle, 325; of subjunctive, 75; perfect, 65; present, 55, 56; sequence of, 106, 107, 111–114.
that, meanings and Latin equivalents, 260; not rendered after verbs of saying, 259.
to not always a sign of the dative, 425.

Verbs of asking (**peto, postulo, quaero**), construction after, 462.
Verbs of hindering and opposing, 166.
veto, construction after, 131.

with, how to be translated, 499.
Word-Order. Adjective, 11; appositive, 27; clauses, 17, 23; common object, 19; common subject, 18; demonstratives, 11; emphasis, 4, 3, 10; general distinction between Latin and English, 2; general law of euphony, 20; normal order, 5; numerals, 11; rhetorical order, 9; **sum**, position of, 28; words referring back to a previous sentence, 12.

PART II

BASED ON CICERO'S MANILIAN LAW CATILINE I–IV, AND ARCHIAS

CONTENTS

THE MANILIAN LAW

Lesson		Page
1–8.	Rules for Agreement	1–10
9–23.	The Syntax of Nouns	10–33

CATILINE I-IV

24–58.	The Syntax of Verbs	34–79
59–64.	English Auxiliary Verbs	80–88

THE ARCHIAS

65–70.	Prepositions	89–100
	Index of Grammatical Notes	101–103

THE MANILIAN LAW*

I. RULES FOR AGREEMENT

LESSON I

1. **General Forms of Agreement.** — Ref. **26**.†

2. **Noun in Apposition or as Predicate.** — Ref. **28**.

3. An appositive frequently stands for a relative clause or for a clause of time or cause. Especially common in this construction are official titles and words like **adulēscēns**, **puer**, **senex**, etc., expressing time of life: —

Cicero, { *who* / *since he* / *when he* } *was consul, expelled Catiline from the city.*

Cicerō cōnsul Catilīnam ex urbe ēiēcit.

Cato began to write history when he was an old man.

Catō senex historiam scrībere īnstituit.

4. When a geographical name used as subject is followed by **urbs**, **oppidum**, **cīvitās**, **flūmen**, or the like in apposition, the verb and other words in agreement in the predicate agree with the appositive rather than with the real subject: —

Athēnae, nōbilissima Graeciae urbs, ā Sullā capta est.

Athens, the most noted city of Greece, was taken by Sulla.

5. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

tempus amīcōrum temporibus trānsmittere.	*to devote time to the demands of friends.*
optimus quisque.	*all the best.*
tantum . . . quantum.	*as much as.*

* Classes reading the Catilinarian Orations first will begin with Lesson XXIV.

† These references are to the Grammatical Summary at the end of the book.

For Oral Translation — Chapter 1

6. 1. The orator [1] was to speak from the Rostra,[2] [3] a place which seemed to him most honorable. 2. When a youth,[4] the orator devoted all his time to the demands of his friends. 3. This oration was delivered [5] at Rome, [6] the most noted city of Italy. 4. He was the first to be declared elected (as) prætor. 5. I perceive, fellow-citizens, that the path of honor is always open to all the best. 6. Cicero, who was a wide-awake man, defended Pompey's cause. 7. I ought to rejoice because such a case has been presented. 8. I will show what almost daily practice in speaking can accomplish. 9. Cicero, when he was prætor, spoke on the military command of Pompey. 10. Pompey did not have as much military authority as he wished.

1. Second periphrastic. 2. **rōstra, -ōrum,** N. 3. See sec. **27**, *b*. 4. **adulēscēns, -entis,** M. 5. **habēre.** 6. See Part I sec. **29.**

LESSON II

Noun in Apposition or as Predicate — *Continued*

7. The particle *as* standing before an appositive or predicate noun is not expressed in Latin: —

Cicero as consul saved his fatherland, **Cicerō cōnsul patriam cōnservāvit.**

They addressed Cicero as consul, **Cicerōnem cōnsulem appellāvērunt.**

8. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ab bellō discēdere.	*to leave*, or *give up*, *the contest.*
cum . . . tum.	*not only . . . but especially.*
vectīgālia aguntur.	*the revenues are at stake.*
vectīgālia exercēre.	*to farm revenues.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 2

9. 1. Mithradates and Tigranes, two very powerful kings, are making war upon our allies. 2. All the allies demand Pompey as commander-in-chief for this war. 3. [1]Since Lucullus has given up the contest, another commander must be chosen. 4. Cappadocia, the kingdom of Ariobarzanes, is entirely[2] in the power of the enemy. 5. The glory of the Roman people was not only great in all other things, but it was especially supreme in the art of war. 6. Pompey ought to be chosen because he is the one man [3]who is feared by the enemy. 7. The revenues of the republic, [4](which furnish) the embellishments of peace and the sinews for war, are at stake. 8. You should take thought for the property of many citizens. 9. The knights farmed the revenues of Asia. 10. Cicero defended their cause in view of the relationship which he sustained towards them.

1. See Ref. **34**. 2. **tōtum** or **tōta**? 3. See Ref. **36**. 4. Express by apposition.

LESSON III

10. Agreement of Adjectives. — Ref. **27.**

11. When an attributive adjective is used with two or more substantives, it agrees with the nearest, and may be placed *before* or *after* the first substantive or *after* the last: —

Multi fīliī et fīliae
Fīliī multī et fīliae
Fīliī et fīliae multae } *many sons and daughters.*

But not before the last —

Fīliī et multae fīliae —

for in that case **multae** would be understood as belonging to **fīliae** alone.

When especially emphatic the adjective is repeated with each substantive: —

Multī fīliī et multae fīliae.

12. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

praeter cēterās gentīs.	*beyond other nations.*
dē aliquō triumphāre.	*to triumph* (for a victory) *over some one.*
aliquid alicui dētrahere.	*to deprive some one of something.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 3 AND 4

13. 1. Pompey was of remarkable wisdom and valor. 2. He waged wars on all lands and seas. 3. Cicero says that the Romans were always eager beyond other nations for praise. 4. That king by a single order massacred all the Romans in all Asia. 5. Since that time he has already reigned twenty-three years. 6. Sulla, when he was proconsul, triumphed (for a victory) over Mithradates. 7. The king is devoting all the time that is left [1] to preparing great fleets and armies. 8. Ambassadors and letters were sent even to Spain. 9. Pompey had more good fortune than Sertorius. 10. I shall so speak about Lucullus that my speech will not deprive him of true praise. 11. Pompey's wisdom and valor were remarkable.

1. **ad** with the gerundive.

LESSON IV

14. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

lībertātem imminūtam neglegere.	*to be indifferent to the infringement of liberties.*
iūs lēgātiōnis.	*the right of ambassadors.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 5

N.B. Before writing this exercise, review thoroughly the rules for word-order given in the first four lessons of Part I.

15. [1]Can you not, fellow-citizens, defend the great[2] reputation of your sovereignty handed down to you by your ancestors, who were not indifferent to the infringement of their liberties, but, when[3] the right of ambassadors was violated merely by an (insolent) word, desired to destroy Corinth, the ornament of entire Greece? [4]How long will you permit this king to go[5] unpunished, who has slaughtered thousands of our citizens and allies and has punished an ambassador of the Roman people with every kind of torture? Now all the states in all Asia and Greece [6]cherish this same desire: (namely,) [7]that you dispatch the one man by whom the attacks of the enemy can be stayed.

1. Question introduced by **nōnne**. 2. Latin, "so great." 3. Latin "because" or "since." 4. **quam diū**. 5. Latin "be." 6. Latin, "wish this same thing." 7. An appositive clause of purpose, see Ref. **118**.

LESSON V

Agreement of Adjectives — *Continued*

16. Latin often uses an adjective agreeing with the subject or object, where our idiom requires an adverb modifying the verb: e.g.

I heard him gladly / or / *I was glad to hear him* } becomes { **laetus eum audīvī.** (*I, glad, heard him.*)

This adverbial use is exemplified especially with —

a. Adjectives of feeling or emotion, as **laetus, libēns, timidus, maestus, invītus,** etc.

b. Adjectives of manner or description, as **sciēns, īnsciēns, prūdēns,** etc.

c. Adjectives of place, time, or number, as **īnferior, superior, summus, prīmus, ultimus, ūnus, sōlus,** etc.

17. When a difference in meaning exists between the use of the adverb and the adjective, the Latin always makes the distinction clear, while the English is often ambiguous.*

18. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

prīmus (-a, -um).	*first.*
prīmō.	*at first, at the beginning.*
prīmum.	*for the first time, in the first place.*
antecellere omnibus terrīs.	*to excel all lands.*
vectīgālibus fruī.	*to enjoy revenues.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 6

19. 1. The allies were glad to see Pompey (*or* saw Pompey gladly). 2. We are not the first to carry on war for the sake of allies. 3. The revenues of Asia for the first time hardly sufficed for the defense of that province. 4. Asia should be protected from fear of loss, because in revenues she excels all lands. 5. First fear of loss, then loss itself, caused disaster. 6. We are not the first to defend the safety of allies. 7. Our ancestors waged war with the Carthaginians for[1] the same reason. 8. When the forces of the enemy were not far away, they prudently[2] deserted

* Compare the ambiguity of the English *I read this letter first* with the clearness of the following Latin versions: —

a. *I read this letter first* (*I was the first to read this letter*), **ego prīmus hanc epistulam lēgī.**

b. *I read this letter first* (*this is the first letter which I read*), **hanc prīmam epistulam lēgī.**

c. *I read this letter first* (*for the first time*), **hanc epistulam prīmum lēgī.**

d. *I read this letter first* (*then I copied it*), **hanc epistulam prīmum lēgī (deinde trānscrīpsī).**

e. *I read this letter first* (*at first*), **hanc epistulam prīmō lēgī.**

the fields. 9. Stock-raising, agriculture, and commerce[3] are [4]of great profit[5] to a province. 10. If you wish to enjoy greater revenues, you must free the revenue-collectors from the fear of disaster.

1. dē. 2. prūdēns. 3. Latin, "sailing of traders." 4. Two datives. 5. frūctus.

LESSON VI

20. Agreement of Verb with Subject. — Ref. **30, 31.**

21. A collective noun, like **pars, multitūdō, exercitus,** etc., regularly takes a singular verb. The so-called *construction according to sense*, by which a plural verb is used in such cases, is so rare in the best prose that it is better avoided.

22. With two or more singular subjects referring to *persons* the verb is regularly plural, but if the subjects are *things* the verb usually agrees with the nearest subject. This is especially the case when the subjects are words of related meaning constituting a unity of thought: —

Rēgī prīncipātus atque imperium trāditum est, *the chief command and sovereignty were surrendered to the king.*

a. The phrase **senātus populusque Rōmānus** regularly takes a singular verb, as these subjects taken together form a single unit.

23. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

bona conlocāta habēre.	*to have property invested.*
alicui cōnsulere.	*to look out for some one's interests.*
aliquem cōnsulere.	*to ask some one's advice.*
māgnī rēfert.	*it is of great importance.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 7

24. 1. A great number of the citizens have property invested in that province. 2. First I intend to speak about

the revenue-collectors, whose affairs and fortunes ought to [1]receive your careful attention. 3. The revenue-collectors are honorable and rich; [2]a point not to be overlooked by you. 4. You ought to look out for the interests of these active and industrious men in their absence. 5. For, in the first place, this (fact) is of great importance, that the revenues are the sinews of the commonwealth. 6. In the next place, [3]when many lose great fortunes in Asia, payment becomes difficult at Rome. 7. Disaster and loss[4] of the citizens cannot be separated from disaster and loss to the state. 8. We ought to remember [5]what that same Asia and that same Mithradates taught us at the beginning of the war. 9. The glory of your name and the safety of the allies are involved in this war.

1. Latin, "be for a care to you." 2. Latin, "which thing ought not to be, etc." See sec. **27**. *b*. 3. A general condition. See Ref. **43**. 4. **dētrīmentum**. 5. Indir. quest.

LESSON VII

25. Agreement of Pronouns. — Ref. **29**, and Part I sec. **41**, **42**.

26. When a relative has for its antecedent a noun accompanied by an appositive, the relative may agree with either: —

Flūmen Rhēnus { **quī** or **quod** } **agrum Helvētiōrum ā Germānīs dīvidit.**

The river Rhine which separates the territory of the Helvetians from the Germans.

27. The antecedent of a relative is put in the relative clause —

a. When the relative clause stands first: —

Quae pars cīvitātis calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit, *that part of the state which had brought disaster upon the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.*

b. When the antecedent is in apposition with the main clause or some word in it: —

Gallia quae terra **vīnō abundat**, *Gaul, the land that abounds in wine.*

28. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

classem dēprimere.	*to sink a fleet.*
lēgī obtrectāre.	*to object to a law* or *measure.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 8

29. 1. Asia, the province which we [1]are to defend, is rich and fertile. 2. Cyzicus, a city of Asia which was very famous, was rescued by the valor of Lucullus. 3. Lucullus and Mithradates were great generals. 4. The persistence and wisdom of Lucullus were [2] so great that he [1]deserved to be feared. 5. A great fleet, [3]which was being hurried to Italy, was sunk by the same general. 6. The town Sinope, in which was a residence of the king, was captured. 7. A town which was called Amisus was thrown open to our legions for the first time. 8. The king, stripped of his ancestral realm, fled as a suppliant to other kings. 9. All the allies and subject states were safe. 10. You who oppose this law have not bestowed as much praise on Lucullus as you ought.

1. Second periphrastic. 2. See sec. **22**. 3. Place the rel. clause first.

LESSON VIII

30. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

vīs aurī.	*a quantity of gold.*
ē manibus effugere.	*to escape.*
praeter spem.	*beyond expectation.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 9

31. When Mithradates[1] fled from Pontus, a land which had hitherto been closed to the Roman people, he left behind a very great quantity of gold and silver and all sorts of beautiful things which he had [2]taken as plunder from all Asia, in order that while the Romans [3]were collecting these he might escape to Armenia, which was[4] the realm of his son-in-law.[5] [6]After retreating thither, he was assisted beyond his expectation by the resources of many kings and nations who had been aroused by the alarming[7] report that the Romans had led an army into those regions to plunder a very rich and sacred shrine.

1. See Part I, sec. **18**. 2. dīripere. 3. Attracted into the subjv. 4. Not attracted, because parenthetic in character. 5. gener. 6. Latin, "whither (quō) when he had betaken himself." 7. gravis, -e.

II. THE SYNTAX OF NOUNS

LESSON IX

The Nominative and Vocative Cases (cf. below)

32. The vocative rarely stands first, but is inserted after the first word or words, preferably after a verb or pronoun of the second person. The interjection *O* is usually omitted : —

Vincere scīs, Hannibal ; victoriā ūtī nescīs, *Hannibal, you know how to conquer, but do not know how to use your victory.*

33. The Latin equivalent for English *dear* in address (as in *Dear Sir*) is cārissimus, or optimus, as optime or cārissime Mārce, *my dear Marcus!*

34. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

restat ut dīcam.	*it remains for me to speak.*
scientia reī mīlitāris.	*knowledge of the science of war.*
hominēs quī nunc sunt.	*the men of our day.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 10

35. 1. It remains for me to speak of choosing a general for this war. 2. Who above all others, fellow-citizens, ought to be placed in control of such important interests[1]? 3. You are the only one, Pompey,[2] in whom are (found) the four qualities[1] of a supreme commander. 4. Great knowledge of the science of war, high character, prestige, and good fortune are especially necessary in this war. 5. Pompey went from school to the army of his father, a distinguished general. 6. Has any one waged more wars than Pompey or fought with the enemy more frequently? 7. The fortune of the state trained him in all kinds of warfare. 8. There is nothing [3]pertaining to experience in war [4]which has escaped the knowledge of this man. 9. By your campaigns, Pompey, you have not only waged wars, but also finished them. 10. [5]When you were prætor, my dear Marcus, you said that Pompey had surpassed in fame all the men of our day.

1. rēs. 2. See grammar for vocative case of proper nouns in -ius. 3. Latin "placed in." 4. See Ref. 36. 5. See sec. 3.

LESSON X

The Accusative Case

36. Direct Object, Cognate Accusative, Adverbial Accusative, Ref. 18, 19, 20, and Part I sec. 457, 467; Place to which, Ref. 105.

37. A cognate accusative is sometimes found after intransitive verbs which do not otherwise govern the accusative, e.g. **vīvere vītam, currere cursum, iter īre.** Such an accusative is regularly limited by an adjective or by a genitive: —

Vītam iucundam vīxit, *he lived a happy life.*

The cognate accusative is much more common in poetry than in prose.

38. The neuter of a pronoun or adjective is often used as adverbial or cognate accusative with verbs which would take a different construction of a substantive; e.g. **illud glōrior,** *I boast of that,* but **meā victōriā glōrior,** *I boast of my victory.*

39. Transitive compound verbs meaning to *transport* or *lead across* (**trānsdūcere, trāicere,** etc.) may take two accusatives or may repeat the preposition before the second accusative; hence, —

He led the army across the Rhine, { **exercitum Rhēnum trānsdūxit,** or **exercitum trāns Rhēnum trānsdūxit.**

40. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

celeritās in cōnficiendō.	*quickness of execution.*
ab aliquō victōriam reportāre.	*to win a victory over some one.*
mare refertum praedōnum.	*a sea full of pirates.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 11

41. 1. What words[1] are there which any one can find worthy of the virtue of Pompey? 2. Of what do you boast, Cicero? 3. I boast of the virtues of Pompey. 4. His quickness of execution was [2]greater than (that) of any other general that I have seen. 5. He performed famous deeds[3] and won great victories over his enemies in Italy, Sicily, and Africa. 6. He also lived a good life, a fact[4] of which all these lands are witnesses. 7. He led our legions across the Alps. 8. Then he crossed the mountains into Spain. 9. At the time of the Servile War aid was sought from him in his absence. 10. What harbor is safe, when all the seas are full of pirates? 11. Who would have thought that a single general could finish such a war in one year? 12. Fellow-citizens, [5]how many islands have you protected with your fleets during these years?

1. Latin, "speech." 2. Follow the idiom of the text. 3. **facinus, -oris,** N. 4. **rēs.** Latin, "of which fact." Why? 5. Two datives, as in the text.

LESSON XI

The Accusative Case — *Continued*

42. **Two Accusatives: Direct Object and Predicate Accusative,** Ref. **24, Accusative of the Person and of the Thing,** Ref. **25; Time and Space,** Ref. **138, 21; Greek Accusative or Accusative of Specification.**

43. Two accusatives of the same person or thing (direct object and predicate accusative) are used especially after —

appellāre, *to name, call.* **dīcere,** *to appoint, name, call.*
creāre, *to elect.* **facere,** *to make.*
reddere, *to render* (2d acc. an adjective).

For the passive of **reddere**, use **fierī**.

44. Two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing, are commonly found only after **docēre,** *to teach*, and **cēlāre,** *to conceal.* Other verbs of this class usually take the ablative with **ab**, **ex**, or **dē** instead of a second accusative. The proper construction in each case is best learned from the lexicon.

45. The Greek Accusative or Accusative of Specification is rare in the best prose. Its place is taken by the ablative.

46. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

senātus populusque Rōmānus. *the senate and the Roman people.*
bellum apparāre. *to prepare for war.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 12

47. 1. Formerly the protection of the sovereign power rendered the fortunes of the allies safe. 2. Shall I complain that Cnidos and Colophon have been captured? 3. You can see the enemy's fleet before the mouth of the Tiber. 4. Cicero calls the disaster at Ostia a disgrace to the republic. 5. If [1]the senate and the Roman people should elect Pompey commander-in-chief, he would soon crush the pirates. 6. Sicily and Africa have for many years been called the

life and breath of the republic. 7. Are you unaware that these lands are in the power of the pirates? 8. Pompey sailed with such speed that the pirates were unable to conceal themselves from him. 9. [2]He made this boast, that in forty-nine days all the pirates were either killed or captured. 10. A fleet of the enemy before the mouth of the Tiber showed[3] the Romans the danger of the republic. 11. Pompey prepared for war at the close of winter.

1. Cf. sec. **22.** *a.* 2. Latin, "he boasted this." Cf. sec. **38.** 3. Latin, "taught."

LESSON XII

48. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons I–XI.

49. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

ab aliquō victōriam reportāre.
ab bellō discēdere.
alicui cōnsulere.
aliquem cōnsulere.
aliquid alicui dētrahere.
antecellere omnibus terrīs.
bellum apparāre.
bona conlocāta habēre.
celeritās in cōnficiendō.
classem dēprimere.
cum . . . tum.
dē aliquō triumphāre.
hominēs quī nunc sunt.
iūs lēgātiōnis.
lēgī obtrectāre.
lībertātem imminūtam neglegere.
māgnī rēfert.
mare refertum praedōnum.
optimus quisque.
praeter cēterās gentīs.
prīmus — prīmō — prīmum.
restat ut dīcam.
scientia reī mīlitāris.
senātus populusque Rōmānus.
sub iugum mittere.
tantum . . . quantum.
tempus amīcōrum temporibus trānsmittere.
vectīgālia aguntur.
vectīgālia exercēre.
vectīgālibus fruī.

For Written Translation — Chapter 13

50. Pompey so excels other generals that we do not wonder that the peoples[1] of Asia among whom he [2]is passing

the winter call him divine. For it must be confessed that, in comparison with others, his good qualities are conspicuous, and that he restrains not only himself but his army as well. Recall what great disasters the avarice of commanders and of armies has brought upon the state. Money taken from the treasury for the conduct of the war has been left in Rome at interest, and the winter quarters of our legions during these years have destroyed more cities than the arms of the enemy. But this man's army has harmed no peaceful citizen, neither has it compelled any one to contribute money.

1. nātiō, -ōnis, F. 2. This is in a parenthetical clause not essential to the thought. Will the verb be in the indic. or in the subjv.? Cf. Ref. **127.**

LESSON XIII

The Dative Case

51. General Rule for the Dative, Ref. **44**; Indirect Object, Ref. **48**, Part I sec. **424–426**; with Special Verbs, Ref. **49**, Part I sec. **431**; with Passive Intransitive Verbs, Ref. **50**; with Compounds, Ref. **47**, Part I sec. **438.**

52. The commoner intransitive verbs taking the dative are —

cēdō, *yield.*	**minor**, *threaten.*
cōnfīdō, *trust.*	**noceō**, *injure.*
crēdō, *believe.*	**nūbō**, *marry.*
diffīdō, *distrust.*	**parcō**, *spare.*
faveō, *favor.*	**pāreō**, *obey.*
īgnōscō, *pardon.*	**persuādeō**, *persuade.*
imperō, *order.*	**placeō**, *please.*
invideō, *envy.*	**resistō**, *resist.*
īrāscor, *be angry with.*	**serviō**, *serve.*
medeor, *heal.*	**studeō**, *be eager for.*

53. The constructions after verbs (transitive and intransitive) compounded with prepositions are various and depend upon usage or the caprice of the language, rather than upon any clear grammatical distinction. Sometimes the same verb will govern the

dative or the accusative or take the accusative with a preposition with no apparent difference in meaning; for example, —

to swim to the ships, **adnāre** { **nāvīs.** / **ad nāvīs.** / **nāvibus.** }

The following practical suggestions are helpful: —

a. The compounds of **sum — dēsum, obsum, praesum, prōsum, subsum, supersum** — always take the dative.

b. Compounds expressing motion may take the dative when the motion is *figurative*. When the motion is *literal*, a preposition follows with its regular case, the preposition used being in most cases the same as that with which the verb is compounded: —

Fear fell upon the army (figurative motion), **terror exercituī incidit.**

He fell into the water (literal motion), **in aquam incidit.**

c. In cases of doubt consult the lexicon for the usage of the best writers.

54. Note carefully the two constructions **tibi librum dōnō**, *I give you a book*, and **tē librō dōnō**, *I present you with a book;* **urbī moenia circumdō**, *I build walls around the city*, and **urbem moenibus circumdō**, *I surround the city with walls.*

55. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nōbīs persuādet.	*he persuades us.*
nōbīs persuādētur.	*we are persuaded.*
cōpia dīcendī.	*fluency in speaking.*
difficile dictū.	*difficult to say.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 14

56. 1. [1]We are convinced that Pompey was of great self-control in all matters. 2. He was able to resist the temptations[2] that were wont to delay others. 3. [3]We all know that [4]love of pleasure did not call him from his determined course. 4. Conquering generals used to present their friends

at Rome with Greek statues (*write in two ways*). 5. I do not doubt that all look at Pompey as if (he were) some one sent down from heaven. 6. Formerly, believe me, the magistrates were of such self-control that foreign nations preferred to serve the Roman people rather than rule over others. 7. Pompey lacked[5] neither dignity nor fluency in speaking. 8. It is difficult to say whether he excels the leading men more in dignity, or the lowest in affability. 9. Bring light to those nations, Pompey, that they may see the splendor of our power.

1. Perfect of **persuādeō**, the thought being *we have been persuaded* (and hence are convinced). 2. Latin, "things." 3. **inter omnīs cōnstat,** with acc. and infin. 4. Translate "love of pleasure" by one word. 5. **dēsum**. In Latin the subject is "neither dignity nor fluency."

LESSON XIV

The Dative Case — *Continued*

57. The Dative of Possession, Ref. **51**; **Agent,** Ref. **46**; **Reference or Interest,** Ref. **53.**

58. In Latin there are four ways of expressing possession:—

a. **Patris est domus,** *the house is father's.*

b. **Mea est domus,** *the house is mine.*

The genitive is used (as in *a*) to answer the question *whose is it?* A possessive pronoun is used (as in *b*) for the genitive of a personal pronoun.

c. **Patrī est domus,**
d. **Pater domum habet,** } *father has a house.*

These answer the question *what has he?*

59. The possession of mental, moral, or physical characteristics is best expressed by the verb **sum** followed by the ablative with **in** or by the ablative or genitive of description:—

Father has great talent, { **in patre est māgnum ingenium.**
pater est māgnō ingeniō.
pater est māgnī ingenī.

60. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nēminī dubium est.	*no one doubts.*
orbis terrae, or **orbis terrārum.**	*the earth.*
vehementer pertinēre ad.	*to have much to do with, to appertain closely to.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 15

61. 1. Surely no one doubts that that commander has the highest prestige. 2. [1]As you think about his exploits, it must be acknowledged that no one on earth ever had a more illustrious name. 3. It has much to do with the conduct of a war what opinion the enemy have of the general. 4. The Forum was crowded on the day that he was appointed commander over the maritime war. 5. If the Roman people had not [2]demanded him as commander, [3]such a sudden fall in the price of grain would not have followed. 6. The allies feared because the province did not have a sufficiently strong garrison. 7. Whose arrival checked Mithradates and Tigranes, (who were) threatening Asia with great forces? Pompey's. 8. The Romans suffered a defeat in the kingdom (of) Pontus, which[4] belonged to Mithradates. 9. We must preserve the allies and tributaries. 10. Is any one ignorant of what Pompey's name and fame will accomplish?

1. The dative of reference expressed by the dative plural of the present participle. 2. Latin, "demanded him *for itself*," dat. of ref. 3. Follow the text. 4. Cf. sec. **26.**

LESSON XV

The Dative Case — *Continued*

62. The Dative of Purpose or End, Ref. **52** ; **with Adjectives,** Ref. **45.**

63. In the dative of purpose, or end for which, observe, —

a. That the *end for which* is expressed by an abstract noun in the *singular*, never in the plural : —

Arma erant puerīs dōnō (not **dōnīs**), *the arms were (for) gifts to the boys.*

b. That this noun is never modified by an adjective, excepting one expressing degree like **māgnus, maximus, minor,** etc. : —

Haec rēs mihi māgnae cūrae est, *this matter is a great anxiety to me.*

c. That this noun is never modified by a genitive.

Therefore, do not translate *the laws are for the benefit of all the citizens* by **lēgēs ūtilitātī omnium cīvium sunt,** but rather **lēgēs ūtilitātī omnibus cīvibus sunt.**

64. Adjectives ordinarily followed by the dative occasionally take other constructions, especially the accusative with **ad** or **in. Propior** and **proximus** may take the accusative without a preposition.

65. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

reliquum est ut dīcāmus (cf. also sec. **34**).	*it remains for us to say.*
rēs bene gerere.	*to conduct affairs successfully.*
domī mīlitiaeque.	*at home and in the field.*
hōc tantum bonī.	*this great blessing.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 16

66. 1. Crete is an island near to Greece. 2. Pompey's prestige was of great advantage to the Romans. 3. Did not all the states of Crete wish to surrender to him? 4. It was annoying to those that envied[1] Pompey [2]that an ambassador

was sent to him. 5. You can estimate, fellow-citizens, how much influence this prestige has. 6. It remains for us to say a few words about good fortune. 7. We ought to speak about good fortune with [3]fear and trembling. 8. Scipio, Marius, and the other great commanders [4]had not only valor but also good fortune. 9. For the successful conduct of great affairs there was no one like Pompey. 10. At home and in the field, on land and sea, all things seemed to follow his wishes. 11. No one has ever ventured to ask so much for himself or for the commonwealth. 12. The gods have bestowed on us this great blessing.

1. Cf. sec. **52**. 2. A quod-clause with the indic. 3. Translate by one word. 4. Cf. sec. **59**.

LESSON XVI

67. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

amāns patriae or **reī pūblicae.**	*patriotic.*
plūrimum in rē pūblicā valēre.	*to have very great influence in public affairs.*
grātissimum populō esse.	*to be very popular.*
facultās dīcendī.	*eloquence.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 17

68. Although Cicero was persuaded that this great and dangerous war should be intrusted to Pompey, yet Catulus and Hortensius, very distinguished and patriotic men who had very great influence in public affairs, differed with that opinion. They conceded that Pompey alone [1]possessed all the highest qualities, but declared that [2]too much power ought not to be given to one man; and Hortensius especially, who was very popular and, as[3] an orator, excelled in eloquence all the Romans [4]except Cicero, spoke at length against that measure. But [5]even they had to confess that

the Romans [6] would not have retained the sovereignty of the world, had Pompey not been appointed commander against the pirates.

1. Cf. sec. **59**. 2. Latin, "that all things ought not, etc." 3. **ut**. 4. Express by abl. abs., "Cicero being excepted (**excipere**)." 5. **ipse**. 6. As **teneō** has no future infinitive we must use **futūrum fuisse ut** with the subjv.

LESSON XVII

The Genitive Case

69. **General Rules for the Genitive**, Ref. **56**, Part I sec. **404**; **Possessive Genitive**, Ref. **62**; **Genitive of Material**, Ref. **59**; **Genitive of Quality**, Ref. **64**; **Subjective Genitive**, Ref. **65**; **Objective Genitive**, Ref. **60**; **Partitive Genitive**, Ref. **61**.

70. A preposition with its object often takes the place of an objective genitive, especially when the governing noun is modified by a possessive pronoun or by a genitive, hence — *my love for you*, **meus in tē amor** rather than **meus tuī amor**; *the consul's services to the country*, **cōnsulis in patriam beneficia** rather than **cōnsulis patriae beneficia**.

71. The subjective genitive of the personal pronouns (**meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī**) is not used. Instead of these we should use the corresponding possessives. For example, *a friend of mine* should never be rendered **amīcus meī**, but **amīcus meus**.

72. With reference to the genitive and the ablative of quality or description the following statements may be made: —

a. Designations of *measure*, *number*, *time*, *weight*, *space*, *age*, and *rank* are regularly in the genitive: —

Fossa pedum trium, *a ditch of three feet.*
Puer decem annōrum, *a boy of ten years.*

b. Descriptions of the body and personal appearance are regularly in the ablative: —

Homō humilī statūrā, *a man of small stature.*

c. Qualities that lack permanence are expressed by the ablative. This applies especially to the description of passing emotions and feelings: —

Bonō animō est, *he is of good courage.*

d. Permanent and essential qualities may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative: —

Catō singulārī prūdentiā (or **singulāris prūdentiae**) **erat,** *Cato was of remarkable sagacity.*

Finally, it should be noted that neither the genitive nor the ablative may stand without an attributive adjective of degree like **māgnus, parvus, summus,** etc.

73. The partitive genitive denotes the *whole* of which a *part* is taken. Hence it is obvious that if not merely a part but the whole is taken there can be no partitive genitive. While then we say **māgna pars hōrum,** *a great part of these,* using the partitive genitive, we cannot say **omnēs hōrum** for ALL *of these,* but rather **omnēs hī.**

74. It is important to remember that the partitive genitive is not usual after cardinal numerals or **quīdam,** but that **ex** or **dē** with the ablative is used instead.

75. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Pompēiō duce.	*under the leadership of Pompey.*
amor in patriam.	*love of country.*
pudet mē.	*I am ashamed.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 18

76. 1. Both Catulus and Hortensius were very patriotic. 2. How much authority do you think should be given to one (man)? 3. Under the leadership of Pompey, we shall again[1] adorn this place with the spoils of fleets. 4. Pompey's love of country and knowledge of war were extraordinary. 5. Cicero's friendship for Pompey [2]led him to say

that the latter possessed [8]all the noblest qualities. 6. Was Gabinius a friend of yours? 7. Of all these states the Carthaginians were the most powerful on the sea. 8. What island is so small that it does not defend some part of its coast region? 9. At the time when our ancestors were conquering Antiochus, they were not ashamed to ascend to this place. 10. Was the island Delos of great size? 11. [4]By no means. Of all the islands lying[5] in the Ægean Sea it was almost[6] the smallest. 12. For several years the Romans had not been a match for the pirates.

1. **rūrsus.** 2. **addūcere** with **ut** and the subjv. 3. Latin, "all things in the highest degree." 4. **minimē.** 5. Latin, "placed." 6. **prope.**

LESSON XVIII

The Genitive Case — *Continued*

77. The Predicate Genitive, Ref. 63; The Genitive with Adjectives, Ref. 57; The Genitive with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting, Ref. 70.

78. Note the two possible ways of rendering expressions like the following: —

It is foolish, **est stultum** or **est stultī.**
It is folly, **est stultitia** or **est stultitiae.**

N.B. *Of these forms of expression the predicate genitive is the more common, and is the only form admissible with adjectives of the third declension.* Hence —

It is wise, **est sapientis**, never **est sapiēns.**

79. Among the more common adjectives with the genitive are –

cupidus, } *desirous.*
avidus, }
cōnscius, *conscious.*
īgnārus, *ignorant.*
perītus, *skilled.*
imperītus, *unskilled.*
memor, *mindful.*
immemor, *unmindful.*
particeps, *sharing in.*
expers, *without a share in.*

plēnus, *full.*
inops, *destitute.*
egēns, *in want of.*
potēns, *ruling, controlling.*
impotēns, *weak.*
similis, *like.*
dissimilis, *unlike.*

80. There are many exceptions to the rule that verbs of remembering and forgetting take the genitive. Note the following: —

a. Neuter pronouns and adjectives after such verbs are always in the accusative.

b. After **recordor** the *thing* remembered is in the accusative, the *person* in the ablative with **dē**.

81. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ars dīcendī.	*the art of speaking.*
auctōritātī obtemperāre.	*to submit to authority.*
terrā marīque.	*on land and sea.*
rēs gestae.	*exploits.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 19

82. 1. No one was more skilled in the art of speaking than Hortensius. 2. Do you recall the things which he said? 3. Gabinius was desirous of appointing Pompey commander-in-chief. 4. The Roman people did not think it wise to submit to his authority. 5. We seem at last to be ruling over all peoples and tribes on land and sea. 6. Pompey did not forget Gabinius. 7. He asked that Gabinius serve as his lieutenant. 8. He thought that Gabinius ought to share in the glory of the general. 9. [1]Certain ones [2]said that Gabinius could not be lieutenant the next year after he had been tribune. 10. I hope that the senate will be mindful of Pompey's exploits. 11. I ought not to be without a share in this war which [3]belongs to me by peculiar right. 12. Nothing but a veto will prevent Cicero from defending the rights[4] of the people.

1. **quīdam.** 2. *said . . . not*, **negāre.** 3. Cf. sec. **58.** 4. Sing. in Latin.

LESSON XIX

The Genitive Case — *Continued*

83. **The Genitive with Verbs of Feeling,** Ref. **66**; **with *rēfert* and *interest*,** Ref. **67**; **with Verbs of Judicial Action,** Ref. **68**; **with Verbs of Plenty and Want,** Ref. **69.**

84. The neuter of a pronoun with **miseret, paenitet,** etc., is not in the genitive, but in the nominative as subject.

Hōc pudet mē, *I am ashamed of this* (lit. *this shames me*).

85. The genitive with **rēfert** seems best explained as dependent on some form of **rēs** bound up in the verb. On that theory **rēfert Caesaris** is perhaps equivalent to **rem fert Caesaris.** The ablative singular feminine of the possessive (**meā, tuā, suā,** etc.), used instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, seems to have agreed originally with the form of **rēs** in the verb. The construction after **interest** follows that of **rēfert** because of the similarity in meaning of the two verbs.

86. With verbs of judicial action the penalty is usually in the ablative, less frequently in the genitive. We may, therefore, say either **capite** or **capitis damnāre,** *to condemn to death.* Beware of using **morte, mortis,** in this sense.

87. Most verbs of plenty and want take the ablative. Only **indigeō,** *want,* prefers the genitive.

88. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

alicūius interesse vidērī.	*to seem to concern some one.*
sī quid Pompēiō factum erit.	*if anything happens to Pompey.*
quid novī.	*something new, anything new.*
quō minus . . . hōc magis.	*the less . . . the more.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 20

89. 1. It seemed to concern Catulus greatly [1]that all things should not be placed in (the hands of) Pompey alone. 2. If anything happens to Pompey, the citizens will remember the wisdom and incorruptibility of Catulus. 3. The orator

was very desirous of [2]expressing his sentiments concerning the opinion of Catulus. 4. The citizens were never weary[3] of [4]bestowing on him their richest favors. 5. If you should do anything new, you would be accused of treason.[5] 6. Catulus was such a man that he lacked neither wisdom nor valor. 7. The less certain human life is, the more the commonwealth ought to derive benefit from the lives[6] of its greatest men. 8. In war [7]it is the part of wisdom to follow expediency. 9. Recall[8] our two greatest wars. 10. Were they not brought to a close by a single commander-in-chief? 11. It remains to speak of the two cities which at one time threatened the Roman supremacy. 12. It seemed to concern you and your fathers greatly that Marius should be appointed general.

1. Infin. clause. 2. Latin, "speaking." 3. **taedet**. 4. Cf. text, § 51. 5. **prōditiō, -ōnis**, F. 6. Latin, "life." The plural, **vītae**, would mean *biographies*. 7. Latin, "it is wise." Cf. sec. **78**. 8. Cf. sec. **80**. *b*.

LESSON XX

90. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XIII–XIX.

91. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

alicūius interesse vidērī.
amāns patriae or **reī pūblicae.**
amor in patriam.
ars dīcendī.
auctōritātī obtemperāre.
cōpia dīcendī.
difficile dictū.
domī mīlitiaeque.
facultās dīcendī.
grātissimum populō esse.
hōc tantum bonī.
nēminī dubium est.
nōbīs persuādet.
nōbīs persuādētur.
orbis terrae or **orbis terrārum.**
plūrimum in rē pūblicā valēre.
Pompēiō duce.
pudet mē.
quid novī.
quō minus . . . hōc magis.
reliquum est ut dīcāmus.
rēs bene gerere.
rēs gestae.
sī quid Pompēiō factum erit.
terrā marīque.
vehementer pertinēre ad.

For Written Translation — Chapter 21

92. [1]It is said that Q. Catulus said that it greatly concerned the state that in Pompey's case [2]no new precedent be established; but he seems to have forgotten the many [3]new and important precedents which had already been established in the case of this man with his own hearty approval and [4]that of other influential men of the same rank. [5]For when a mere youth and of an age much below the senatorial grade, [6]military authority and an army [7]were entrusted to him. And though there were some in the senate who said that a [8]man who had held no office ought not to be sent as proconsul, he was sent and finally was made consul before he could legally have held any other office.

1. Latin, "Q. Catulus is said, etc." The Latin prefers the personal to the impersonal construction. 2. Latin, "nothing new." 3. Latin, "so great and so new." 4. The redundant "that" in the phrase "that of" is not expressed in Latin. 5. Latin, "for to him a mere youth." 6. "Military authority," one word in Latin. 7. Cf. sec. **22**. 8. I.e. **homō prīvātus**.

LESSON XXI

The Ablative Case

93. **General Consideration**, Ref. 1; **The Ablative of Separation**, Ref. **14**; **Source, Origin, Material**, Ref. **15**; **Degree of Difference**, Ref. **7**; **Comparison**, Ref. **6**; **Time**, Ref. **139**.

94. The presence or absence of a preposition with the ablative of separation seems to be determined by arbitrary usage rather than by any obvious principle of language. In general, however, it may be said that literal and local separation requires the preposition, but that where the separation is figurative the preposition may be omitted; and, further, that if the ablative denotes persons a preposition is always used.

95. It should not be forgotten that some verbs, compounds of **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, take the dative (especially of a person) instead of the ablative of separation.

96. Verbs of plenty and want usually take the ablative (cf. sec. **87**). With verbs of plenty the ablative may be classified as means, with verbs of want as separation. The commoner verbs of plenty and want are —

abundāre, **redundāre**, *abound in.*
complēre, **explēre**, **implēre**, *fill with.*
prīvāre, **spoliāre**, **exuere**, *deprive of.*
carēre, *lack.*
vacāre, *be without.*
egēre, **indigēre**, *need.*

97. The ablative of degree of difference is especially common after the adverbs **ante**, **post**, **īnfrā**, **suprā**, and is often expressed by the neuter ablatives **multō**, **paulō**, **nihilō**, **tantō**, **quantō**, **eō**, **hōc**, **quō**.

98. The ablative after comparatives without **quam** comes under the head of the ablative of separation. Such a sentence as **nihil est melius virtūte** means literally, *from virtue* (as a standard) *nothing is better*. The construction is admissible only when the first of the objects compared is in the nominative or accusative.

a. A relative standing after a comparative is always in the ablative: **quam** is never used. Hence: —

Reason, than which nothing is more godlike, **ratiō, quā nihil est dīvīnius.**

Never **ratiō, quam quae nihil**, etc.

99. Latin uses the ablative of time in many expressions which according to our idiom seem locative; for example —

In the Punic war, **bellō Pūnicō.**
At the Roman games, **lūdīs Rōmānīs.**

100. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

reī pūblicae parum cōnsulere.	*to have too little regard for the welfare of the state.*
in rē pūblicā plūs vidēre.	*to have more political insight.*
nihil aliud nisi dē hoste cōgitāre.	*to think of nothing but the enemy.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 22

101. 1. These men have too little regard for the welfare of the state. 2. The more political insight they have, the less they will oppose your plans. 3. You chose the only one who could set the hearts[1] of the citizens free from anxiety.[2] 4. At the time of the war with the pirates Italy was in need of grain. 5. The expressed opinion of the whole Roman people must be obeyed. 6. [3]Those leaders will not be ashamed to confess this. 7. The cities of Asia abounded in wealth.[4] 8. They were stripped of their most precious possessions. 9. Those whom we send with military authority make war upon the rich cities of the allies. 10. If our generals thought of nothing but the enemy, we should not [5]be hated by our allies. 11. Do you know [6]how much smaller Cilicia is than Asia? 12. It is not hard to say. 13. Who was general in the Mithradatic war? 14. They see that Pompey is of remarkable virtue. 15. He will abstain[7] from wanton deeds and injuries.

1. Latin, "minds." 2. **sollicitūdō, -inis,** F. 3. Cf. Ref. **66**. 4. **dīvitiae, -ārum,** F. 5. Latin, "be in hatred among." 6. I.e. "by how much." 7. **abstinēre.**

LESSON XXII

The Ablative Case — *Continued*

102. **The Ablative of Agent,** Ref. **4**; **Means,** Ref. **10**; **with** *ūtor, fruor,* **etc.,** Ref. **17**; **with** *opus* **and** *ūsus,* Ref. **11**; **of Accompaniment,** Ref. **3**; **Place,** Ref. **101, 102.**

103. The person *by* whom something is done as the agent is expressed by **ā, ab,** with the ablative.

The person *through* whom something is done as the instrument is expressed by **per** with the accusative.

Caesar was informed by Labienus (agent) *through messengers* (instrument), **Caesar certior factus est ā Labiēnō per nūntiōs.**

104. The ablative without a preposition to denote *the way by which* is of frequent occurrence in words like **via, iter, porta, flūmen, mare,** etc., and comes under the general head of means or instrument.

They set out by the Appian Way, **Appiā viā profectī sunt.**

105. The usual construction with **opus est** is impersonal, the *thing* needed being in the *ablative* and the *person* needing it in the *dative*: —

Librīs mihi opus est, *I need books.*

But when the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective the personal construction must be used: —

Multa nōbīs opus sunt, *we need many things* (lit. *many things are necessary to us*).

Note that **opus** and **ūsus** are never declined in this construction. **Ūsus** is much rarer than **opus.**

106. The rule that the ablative of accompaniment may omit **cum** in military expressions should be used with caution. Such omission is allowable only when the noun is modified by an adjective other than a numeral. We may therefore write **māgnīs cōpiīs profectus**

est, *he set out with great forces*, without **cum**; but must not omit it from **cum tribus legiōnibus profectus est**, *he set out with three legions*.

107. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

turpitūdine adficī.	*to be disgraced.*
perītus bellōrum.	*skilled in wars.*
nōbilī locō nāscī.	*to be born in high station.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 23

108. 1. Pompey was the only man who could keep [1]his hands from the money of the allies. 2. The allies rejoiced that Pompey with his army had come into their cities. 3. The Roman people need a man like Pompey in the provinces. 4. [2]To go to Asia [3]one must sail over the sea. 5. The men at home were of such avarice that they used the public funds themselves. 6. The larger fleets we have, the more we are disgraced. 7. They [4]hesitate to place all things in his hands. 8. They act[5] as if they were ignorant of our losses. 9. Servilius, than whom no one was more experienced in all kinds of war, [6]spoke as follows. 10. He said that the state [7]ought to have the benefit of Pompey's self-control and valor. 11. The Manilian law, by which the safety of[8] all nations was established,[9] was upheld by Cicero. 12. In choosing a general for this war there is need of the greatest wisdom. 13. Many of those that disagreed with[10] the opinions of Catulus were born in high station.

1. Latin, "himself." 2. Not infin. 3. Latin, "it must be sailed." 4. For constructions after **dubitāre** see Part I sec. **167**. 5. **sē gerere**. 6. Latin, "said these (things)." 7. Latin, "ought to enjoy." Cf. text § **59**. 8. Latin, "for." 9. **cōnstituere**. 10. **ā**.

LESSON XXIII

The Ablative Case — *Continued*

109. The Ablative of Price, Ref. **12**; **Manner**, Ref. **9**; **Quality or Characteristic**, Ref. **13**; **Cause**, Ref. **5**; **with** *dīgnus* **and** *indīgnus*, Ref. **8**; **Specification**, Ref. **16**. See also Part I sec. **499**.

110. Distinguish carefully between the construction used after verbs and expressions of estimation and value (**aestimāre, facere, dūcere, habēre,** etc.) and that used after verbs of buying and selling. The former take the *genitive*, the latter the *ablative:* —

Voluptātem virtūs minimī facit, *virtue considers pleasure of the very least account.*

Victōria multō sanguine stetit, *the victory cost much blood.*

N.B. The only important exception to this rule is that the four genitives **tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris,** are used after verbs of buying and selling to express relative value.

111. English *with* is by no means always translatable by the Latin **cum**. **Cum** is used only with the ablative of acccompaniment and the ablative of manner, and not always with them (cf. sec. **106** and **112**).

112. Note the four ways of expressing manner: —

1. **Celeriter currit** (adverb).
2. **Cum celeritāte currit** (ablative with **cum**).
3. **Summā celeritāte currit** (ablative with an adjective).
4. **Cum summā celeritāte currit** (ablative with an adjective and **cum**).

113. To express emphatic cause the Latin uses, instead of the bare ablative, the prepositions **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, **ex, dĕ,** or **ab** with the ablative; or **causā** or **grātiā** with a preceding genitive.

114. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ad hanc rem cōnficiendam.	*for the accomplishment of this purpose.*
quidquid est in mē ingenī.	*whatever talent I have.*
tantum abest ut.	*so far is it from the truth that.*
quid est quod.	*why is it that.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 24

115. 1. Evidently[1] Cicero did not consider the arguments[2] of Hortensius of much (value). 2. For the accomplishment of this purpose I urge you not to fear the threats of any one. 3. The Mithradatic wars cost the Romans much blood and treasure. 4. At whose request are you doing this? 5. Do you calculate to win the friendship of Pompey through this case[3]? 6. Whatever talent I have, I willingly[4] offer to you. 7. So far is it from the truth that I am seeking to shun dangers, that I have [5]brought on myself the hostility of many. 8. Clothed with this authority as prætor, I ought to prefer the safety of the provinces to my own advantage.[6] 9. Since such a great multitude is present with such enthusiasm, why is it that we hesitate? 10. I call to witness all the gods that preside over this place. 11. [7]Don't think that I undertook this case because of some advantage to myself. 12. Manilius defended his bill with great courage and perseverance.

1. **apertē.** 2. **sententia, -ae,** F. 3. **causa, -ae,** F. 4. Ablative of manner. **Voluntās** is peculiar in that it usually stands without **cum** or an adjective to express manner. 5. **suscipere.** 6. Plural in Latin. 7. See Part I sec. **99**.

CATILINE I

III. THE SYNTAX OF VERBS

LESSON XXIV

Questions

116. **Direct Questions**, Ref. **119**; **Indirect Questions**, Ref. **120**, Part I sec. **217–219**; **Rhetorical Questions**, Ref. **121**, Part I sec. **90**.

117. Common interrogatives are —

quis (substantive), *who?*
quid (substantive), *what?*
quī, quae, quod (adjective), *what? of what sort? what kind of?*
quō (of direction), *whither?*
ubi (of place), *where?*
quandō (of time), *when?*
quōmodo or **quō modō** (of manner), *in what way? how?*

118. Moods in questions:
- Direct questions are in the Indicative.
- Indirect questions are in the Subjunctive.
- Rhetorical questions are usually in the Subjunctive, less often in the Indicative.

119. When the object of a verb of saying or mental action is the antecedent of a relative pronoun, the Latin usually incorporates the antecedent into the relative clause and changes the relative clause into an indirect question. Hence the English *you see the speed with which this was done* becomes in Latin **quā celeritāte haec sint** gesta vidētis, i.e. *you see with what speed this was done.*

120. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

proximā nocte.	*last night.*
superiōre nocte.	*night before last.*
ūnus quisque nostrum.	*every single one of us.*
novīs rēbus studēre.	*to be eager for a revolution.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER I

121. 1. Did not Catiline abuse the patience of the senate? 2. [1]What shall we say of his unbridled audacity? 3. Every single one of us knows where you were last night. 4. What plan did you make night before last? 5. Who of us is ignorant that you are eager for a revolution? 6. Do we seem to be doing enough for the commonwealth or not? 7. The orator asks whether the consuls ought to endure the fury of Catiline. 8. [2]Did the state lack authority or the consul valor? 9. Have you heard [3]the decree of the senate which we have against you, Catiline? 10. A dangerous citizen ought to be restrained by more severe penalties than the bitterest foe. 11. [4]Catiline was not led to death, was he? 12. Who is ignorant why Ahala killed Mælius?

1. Rhetorical question. 2. Latin, "was authority lacking to, etc." 3. Cf. sec. **119**. 4. What answer does the question expect?

LESSON XXV

122. The Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive. — Ref. **75.**

123. Prohibitions. — Ref. **76**, Part I sec. **99**.

124. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

vidēre nē quid rēs pūblica dētrīmentī capiat.	*to see to it that the commonwealth suffers no harm.*
senātūs cōnsultum.	*a decree of the senate.*
in singulōs diēs crēscere.	*to increase day by day.*
certā dē causā.	*for a special reason.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 2

125. 1. Who will see to it that the commonwealth receives no harm? 2. When was C. Gracchus killed? 3. I don't know when he was killed. 4. Let us intrust the commonwealth to the consuls by a decree of the senate. 5. Do not allow the edge of our authority to grow dull. 6. Where is the decree of the senate? 7. It is shut up in tablets. 8. Catiline, you ought to have been put to death at once. 9. Did Catiline lay aside his effrontery or did he confirm it? 10. Let us not condemn the consul for remissness. 11. [1]What shall I say of the enemy's leader whom we see within the walls? 12. There is no one who does not confess that the number of the enemy is increasing daily. 13. What did Cicero fear that the patriots[2] would say? 14. Don't [3]make a move against the commonwealth.

1. Rhetorical question. 2. **bonī**. 3. Latin, "move yourself."

LESSON XXVI

126. **The Potential Subjunctive.** — Ref. **109**, Part I sec. **94, 95.**
127. **The Optative Subjunctive.** — Ref. **95**, Part I sec. **83, 84.**

128. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

suī conservandī causā.	*to save themselves.*
mihi crēde.	*take my advice.*
caedis oblīviscere.	*dismiss murder from your mind.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 3

129. 1. Catiline, I wish that you had changed your mind. 2. May he take my advice and dismiss murder from his mind. 3. Do you remember what I said about Manlius? 4. When did I say that he would be in arms? 5. Was it

not on the twenty-first of October? 6. I am inclined to think that you are not mistaken in the day. 7. [1]I hope that the chief men of the state will flee from Rome to save themselves. 8. May all your plans be checked. 9. Catiline would be satisfied with the slaughter of the optimates. 10. Let us seize Præneste on the first of November. 11. You might have known that that colony was protected by my guards. 12. I might say that you do nothing which I do not see. 13. Don't wonder at this attack. 14. Would that he had not asked [2]what I said.

1. Express "I hope that . . . will flee" by the opt. subjv. 2. Indir. question.

LESSON XXVII

130. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

priōre nocte.	*night before last.*
ubinam gentium sumus?	*where in the world are we?*
apud Laecam.	*at Læca's.*
id temporis.	*at that very time.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 4

131. [1]Can you deny, Catiline, that you and certain others whom I see here in the senate were at Læca's night before last? But where in the world are we, when I, the consul, ask the opinion on public affairs of men who at that very time are plotting the destruction of us all? I found out that very night, Catiline, how you had apportioned the parts of Italy; whom you had selected [2]to leave at Rome; whom to take with you. And when I heard that two Roman knights had been found who promised to kill me that very night, I fortified my house and shut them out when they came early in the morning to salute me.

1. Potential subjv. 2. Not infin.

LESSON XXVIII

132. Sequence of Tenses. — Ref. **135, 136,** Part I sec. **105–107, 111–114.**

133. The rules for tense-sequence do not apply to subordinate clauses with the indicative, but only to those with the subjunctive.

134. After **nōn dubitō quīn** and in *indirect questions* the English future active is regularly expressed by the subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation, present after primary tenses and imperfect after secondary.

I do not doubt that my father will think the same, **nōn dubitō quīn pater idem exīstimātūrus sit.**

I did not doubt that my father would think the same, **nōn dubitābam quīn pater idem exīstimātūrus esset.**

135. When a subjunctive depends on a subjunctive the sequence is as follows: —

a. The Present Subjunctive is followed by primary tenses.

b. The Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect subjunctive are followed by secondary tenses.

Nesciō quid causae sit cūr nūllās ad mē litterās dēs (dederis, datūrus sīs).

Nesciō quid causae fuerit cūr nūllās ad mē litterās darēs (dedissēs, datūrus essēs).

Nesciēbām quid causae { **esset** / **fuisset** } **cūr nūllās ad mē litterās darēs (dedissēs, datūrus essēs).**

136. When a subjunctive clause depends on an infinitive, supine, gerund, or participle, its tense is regulated by the tense of the verb in the principal clause: —

I had made up my mind to come to you to see you, **cōnstitueram ad tē venīre ut tē vidērem.**

a. But a perfect infinitive is usually followed by secondary tenses even when the verb in the principal clause is primary: —

I seem to have said enough (to show) why the war is necessary, satis multa verba videor fēcisse quārē esset hōc bellum necessārium.

137. Remember that conditions contrary to fact are not affected by the laws of tense-sequence.

138. Though the laws of tense-sequence are in general quite closely observed, it should be remembered that they are not inflexible and that many exceptions occur. In Latin, as in English and other languages, when writers wish to make the narration vivid they will speak of past events as present and so disregard tense-sequence. Sometimes, too, writers are careless and irregularities result.

139. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

quae cum ita sint.	*since this is so.*
grātiam habēre.	*to be grateful.*
cōnsul dēsīgnātus.	*the consul elect.*
aliquem petere.	*to attack some one.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 5

140. 1. There is no doubt that Catiline will go forth from the city. 2. He says that Catiline set out that the Manlian camp might not long for its general. 3. You know what the reason is why you can no longer associate with us. 4. Catiline knew what the reason was why he could no longer associate with them. 5. Since this is so, why did he hesitate[1] to go forth from the city? 6. The consul said that the citizens were grateful [2]because they had escaped. 7. Some thought that if Catiline had been killed, it would have been more advantageous for the common safety. 8. If you ask my advice, I urge you [3]not to attack the consul elect. 9. Cicero asks whether or not Catiline is about to go into exile. 10. Do not hazard the safety of the commonwealth. 11. Let us not

do that which is [4]too merciful. 12. I know why your competitors will plot against you.

1. See Part I sec. **167**. 2. See Ref. **35**. 3. Negative purpose clause. 4. Express by the comparative.

LESSON XXIX

141. The Subjunctive of Purpose. — Ref. **117, 118**, Part I sec. **129–131, 137.**

142. The conjunction **ut** may be omitted —

a. Often after **volō, nōlō, mālō, oportet, necesse est,** and **licet.**

b. Regularly after the imperatives **fac** and **dīc.**

c. After verbs of *permitting*, *urging*, *commanding*, and *warning*, especially in short sentences.

Examples: —

Volō amēs meam cōnstantiam, *I wish you to love my firmness.*

Fac cōgitēs, *take thought.*

Moneō tē dēsinās furere, *I advise you to cease your raging.*

143. Remember the use of **ut** in short parenthetical clauses depending on something to be supplied, as — **ut ita dīcam,** *so to speak;* **ut alia omittam,** *not to speak of other things*, etc.

144. After verbs of fearing **nē** is translated by *that* and **ut** by *that not;* **nē nōn** is sometimes used for **ut** and must be employed when the main verb is negatived: —

Nōn vereor nē tuus fīlius nōn respondeat, *I do not fear that your son will not reply.*

145. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

omnium nostrum vīta.	*the lives of us all.*
prīdiē Kalendās.	*the day before the Kalends.*
ut āiunt.	*as they say.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 6

146. 1. What was there which could please Catiline? 2. I do not fear that the citizens do not hate you. 3. Did Catiline kill his wife that he might make his home vacant for a new marriage? 4. He feared that the ruin of his fortunes was impending. 5. He stood in the comitium on the day before the Kalends to kill the chief men in the state. 6. There is no one who does not know how you attempted to kill the consul elect. 7. I pass over that [1]disgraceful deed [2]to speak of those things which pertain to the lives of us all. 8. May that dagger be wrested from your hands. 9. [3]I would like to pass this over in silence. 10. Cicero sent Catiline out of the city that he might more easily avoid his thrusts. 11. May the good fortune of the Roman people oppose your madness. 12. [4]Don't drive your dagger into the consul's body. 13. Not to speak of all those (matters), what shall I say concerning your private disgrace?

1. One word. 2. Not infin. 3. See sec. **126**. 4. Give in three ways.

LESSON XXX

147. **The Subjunctive of Characteristic.** — Ref. **36**, Part I sec. **144–146**.

148. **Pure and Relative Clauses of Result.** — Ref. **122**, **125**, Part I sec. **150**, **154**.

149. *Too*, followed by an adjective and infinitive, is rendered in Latin by a comparative followed by **quam ut** and the subjunctive: —

This is too high to climb, **hōc est altius quam ut id āscendāmus.**

150. The following are among the expressions followed by the subjunctive of characteristic: —

est quod, *there are grounds why.*

nihil est quod.
nihil est causae quod, } *there is no reason why.*

quid est quod,
quae causa est quod,
quid est causae quod, } *what is the reason that* or *why is it that.*

N.B. Instead of **quod**, **cūr** or **quā rē** may be used.

a. Distinguish between **quid est quod** with the subjunctive and **quid quod** (*what of the fact that*) with the indicative.

151. Relative adverbs, especially **ubi**, **unde**, **quō**, not infrequently introduce a clause of result; **ubi** (*where*) then equals **ut ibi** (*so that there*), **unde** (*whence*) equals **ut inde** (*so that from there*), and **quō** (*whither*) equals **ut eō** (*so that thither*): —

He built a bridge where they could cross, **fēcit pontem ubi trānsīre possent.**

The same adverbs are sometimes used to introduce a purpose clause.

152. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

paulō ante.	*a short time ago.*
post hominum memoriam.	*within the memory of man.*
quō animō.	*with what feelings.*
hunc mihi timōrem ēripe.	*free me from this terror* (lit. *take this terror from me*).

For Oral Translation — Chapter 7

153. 1. Cicero so talked with Catiline that he seemed to be moved by pity. 2. [1]He should have been moved by hatred. 3. There was no one that saluted him. 4. There was no one that did not fear[2] him. 5. [3]Why is it that all the men of consular rank left the benches empty a short time ago? 6. There were some who thought that Catiline ought to leave the city. 7. Catiline was not the man to reverence the authority of the state. 8. You are the only one within the

memory of man [8]who has murdered citizens with impunity. 9. You are too bold [4] to fear the power of the law. 10. What of the fact that the whole country is in fear on your account alone? 11. With what feelings ought this to be endured? 12. [5]I would prefer that [6] you depart somewhere out of my sight. 13. Free the fatherland from terror. 14. Did Catiline have a place [7]to go to?

1. A pluperfect subjunctive of an unfulfilled obligation. 2. See synonyms. 3. Follow the idiom of the text. 4. audāx. 5. Potential subjv., see sec. **126**. 6. Cf. sec. **142**, *a*. 7. Lat., "whither he might go."

LESSON XXXI

154. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

domī meae.	*at my house.*
referre ad senātum.	*to lay a matter before the senate.*
alicui vim et manūs īnferre.	*to lay violent hands on some one.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 8

155. The citizens knew that Catiline deserved death, and wished to lay violent hands on him. There were many, too, who felt that they were in great peril because they and Catiline were encompassed by the same city walls. [1]Knowing this, Catiline, to avoid suspicion, wished to give himself into custody and even dared to go to the consul and ask that he keep him at his own house. But Cicero [2]refused to receive him and tried to persuade him to go into exile [3]by making him perceive [4] what the senators thought of him; [5]for Catiline had previously said that he would lay the matter before the senate and obey the authority of that body.

1. Abl. abs. 2. Lat., "said he could not receive him." 3. **cum** with imperf. subjv. 4. Subjv. of result. 5. **nam Catilīna.**

LESSON XXXII

156. **Substantive Clauses of Result.** — Ref. **123**, Part I sec. **161–162**.

157. **Clauses introduced by *quīn* and *quō minus*.** — Ref. **124**, Part I sec. **166–167**.

158. The principal uses of **quīn** are as follows: —

quīn (quī, adv. *how* or *why*, and nē, *not*)

I. In a principal clause with the indicative.
- *a.* Interrogative, *why not*, introducing a rhetorical question with the *indicative*.
- *b.* Corroborative, *indeed*, *verily*, *surely*, *nay*, etc.

II. In a subordinate clause, as introductory conjunction to a subjunctive.
- *a.* For quī nōn, quae nōn, quod nōn, after **nēmō, nūllus, nihil, quis**.
- *b.* After negatived verbs of *hindering* and *opposing*.
- *c.* For English *that*, after the following expressions: —
  - **nōn dubitō, nōn est dubium, quis dubitat**, etc.
  - **nōn multum abest, nōn procul abest, paulum abest**, etc.

159. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

animum indūcere.	*to make up one's mind.*
est tantī.	*it is worth while.*
iussū cōnsulis.	*at the command of the consul.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 9

160. 1. Catiline was not the man to reform. 2. Would that you had made up your mind to go into exile. 3. There is no doubt that Catiline will go to Manlius. 4. The consul saw what a storm of unpopularity was threatening him. 5. There was no one who did not know that the eagle had been sent forward. 6. Who doubts that Catiline used to

worship that silver eagle? 7. Nay, he even had a shrine [1]for it at his house. 8. It is worth while to endure the burden of unpopularity for the sake of the commonwealth. 9. Cicero caused Catiline to set out for Manlius. 10. It is necessary that you separate yourself from the good. 11. What caused him to make war upon his country? 12. It remains for us [2]to speak of praise and glory. 13. There is nothing which I will not do at the command of the consul.

1. **prō**, with the abl. 2. Not infin.

LESSON XXXIII

161. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*. — Ref. **35**; Part I sec. **176**.

162. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum* and *quī*. — Ref. **34**, Part I sec. **180, 181**.

163. **Quod** and **quia** give a reason founded on *fact*. When the subjunctive is used the speaker does not assign the reason as his own, but as another's; and the mood depends on the principle of implied indirect discourse.

164. **Cum** gives the *logical* reason based on the view of the speaker or springing from the attendant circumstances. The cause being thus viewed as a mere probability, the mood must be subjunctive.

165. **Quoniam** and **quandō** introduce as a reason a self-evident or admitted fact, and naturally take the indicative. **Quandō** is really a temporal conjunction and is not often used to introduce a causal clause.

166. Cause is not infrequently expressed by a participial clause: —

The legate kept his soldiers in camp because he feared the enemy. **lēgātus metuēns hostīs mīlitēs castrīs continuit.**

167. A relative clause has either the indicative or the subjunctive mood. A relative clause with the indicative simply states a fact. The subjunctive in a relative clause shows the following varieties: —

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive.
- Cause.
- Concession.
- Purpose.
- Result.
- Characteristic.
- Implied indirect discourse.
- Clauses of limitation.
- Clauses dependent on an infinitive or subjv. (subjv. by attraction).
- Formal indirect discourse.

a. By clauses of limitation are meant such expressions as **quod sciam**, *so far as I know;* **quod audierim**, *so far as I have heard*, etc.

168. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

iacēre humī.	*to lie on the ground.*
lēgem rogāre.	*to propose a law.*
grātiam referre.	*to return a favor, make a requital.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 10, 11

169. 1. [1]Would that he had gone whither his mad desire has long been hurrying him. 2. Catiline desired war because it brought him a sort of incredible delight. 3. Since he lies on the ground and endures all sorts of hardships, he will soon be worn out. 4. He had an [2]opportunity of showing his endurance of cold. 5. I drove you from the consulship because you wished to harass the state. 6. What hindered Cicero from throwing[3] Catiline into chains? 7. He feared the laws which had been proposed concerning the punishment of a Roman citizen. 8. Since you have been raised

so quickly to the highest power, you ought to make a requital to the Roman people. 9. You [4]who are a man known only through yourself ought not to be neglectful of the safety of your (fellow-)citizens. 10. So far as I know, dangerous citizens are always punished with death.

1. Cf. sec. **127**. 2. Cf. sec. **151**. 3. Latin, "leading." 4. Relative clause of cause.

LESSON XXXIV

170. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quod*. — Ref. **128**; Part I sec. **208, 209**.

171. The **quod**-clause of fact with the indicative is used in the following cases:—

1. After a demonstrative pronoun or adverb (**hōc, illud, id, inde, ex eō, propterea, ideō**, etc.) to define, or to call emphatic attention to, something stated in the main clause.

2. After adverbs like **bene** or **male** with verbs like **facere, fierī, accidere, ēvenīre**, when the fact stated in the **quod**-clause is the fortunate or unfortunate occurrence.

3. In the sense of *as to, as for, as to the fact that*, to introduce a statement to which a reply is to be made.

Examples are —

1. *We are wise in this, that we follow nature*, **in hōc sumus sapientēs quod nātūram sequimur.**
2. *It had happened very opportunely that ambassadors had come*, **opportūnē acciderat quod lēgātī vēnerant.**
3. *As to your congratulating me, I am sensible of your kindness*, **quod mihi grātulāris, āgnōscō hūmānitātem tuam.**

172. Substantive clauses with **quod**, substantive clauses with **ut** or **nē**, and infinitive clauses with subject accusative are constructions at times so nearly equivalent in Latin and in their English translation that it becomes difficult to determine which construction should be used. Sometimes more than one construction is

possible with relatively little difference in meaning. The following distinctions are of some practical value: —

1. Verbs of happening are regularly followed by the subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn**; but if modified by **bene** or **male** or an adverb of similar meaning, a substantive clause with **quod** follows (cf. sec. **171.** 2), or rarely an infinitive with subject accusative: —

It happened that Caesar was present, **accidit ut Caesar adesset.**

It happened fortunately that Caesar was present } **opportūnē accidit** { **quod Caesar aderat.** / **Caesarem adesse.**

2. The demonstratives **hōc, illud, id,** are followed —

a. By a **quod**-clause of fact with the indicative (see sec. **171.** 1).

b. By an **ut-** or **nē**-clause with the subjunctive.

c. By an infinitive clause.

As for the choice between *b* and *c*, observe that the construction to be used is determined by the nature of the principal verb. The presence of the demonstratives has no effect upon the construction. For example, in *I urge this upon you, that you do not lose courage*, the principal verb **hortor** shows that the subjunctive is to follow (**hortor tē hōc, nē animum dēmittās**). On the other hand in *I perceive this, that you are losing courage*, the principal verb **intellegō** shows that the infinitive is to follow (**hōc intellegō, tē animum dēmittere**).

3. **accēdit**, *it is added*, is followed by either a **quod**-clause or an **ut**-clause, with the general distinction that the **quod**-clause adds a fact already known, while the **ut**-clause adds a new proposition which may or may not be a fact. Practically **accēdit ut** is the more common.

4. **quid quod**, *what of the fact that*, is followed by the indicative (cf. sec. **150.** *a*).

173. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

idem sentīre.	*to have the same sentiments.*
optimum factū.	*best to do.*
in aliquem animadvertere.	*to punish some one.*
in perpetuum.	*forever.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 12

174. 1. This one thing[1] cannot be doubted, [2]that all good citizens have the same sentiments. 2. As to the fact that I have not punished that gladiator with death, I do not judge it the best thing[1] to do. 3. It is added that illustrious citizens honored themselves by killing Saturninus. 4. So far as I know, the conspiracy of Catiline was suppressed by Cicero. 5. It unfortunately happened that there were some who did not see the things[1] which threatened. 6. I fear this, that if you punish him, you will win unpopularity. 7. There was no one who did not confess that a conspiracy had been formed. 8. In this one respect[3] Catiline is to be feared, (namely) that some in this body are [4]giving their support to his conspiracy. 9. I fear that it[5] will not be suppressed forever. 10. It happened that he had gathered the others into the same place.

1. This word need not be expressed. 2. A **quod**-clause. 3. **rēs**. 4. **corrōborāre**. 5. Feminine as referring to the conspiracy.

LESSON XXXV

175. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XXIV–XXXIV.

176. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

ad hanc rem cōnficiendam.	**apud Laecam.**
alicui vim et manūs īnferre.	**caedis oblīvīscere.**
aliquem petere.	**certā dē causā.**

cōnsul dēsīgnātus.
domī meae.
grātiam habēre.
grātiam referre.
hunc mihi timōrem ēripe.
iacēre humī.
id temporis.
idem sentīre.
in aliquem animadvertere.
in perpetuum.
in singulōs diēs crēscere.
lēgem rogāre.
mihi crēde.
novīs rēbus studēre.
optimum factū.
paulō ante.
post hominum memoriam.
priōre nocte.
proximā nocte.
quae cum ita sint.
quid est quod.
quidquid est in mē ingenī.
quō animō.
referre ad senātum.
reī pūblicae parum cōnsulere.
senātūs cōnsultum.
suī cōnservandī causā.
superiōre nocte.
tantum abest ut.
turpitūdine adficī.
ubinam gentium sumus?
ūnus quisque nostrum.
vidēre nē quid rēs pūblica dētrīmentī capiat.

For Written Translation — Chapter 13

177. [1]Although the consul knew that [2]wicked citizens had banded themselves together to destroy the city, yet he did not think best to kill Catiline, because he feared that [3]if Catiline alone should be removed, the disease of the commonwealth, relieved for a short time by his punishment, would become worse, the remainder being alive. He therefore [4]strongly urged this, that Catiline depart from the city with all his followers and separate himself from the [2]loyal citizens. He promised further that on Catiline's departure there would be such courage in all, that all things would be brought to light and punished.

[1] See Ref. **37**. 2. Translate by one word. 3. See Ref. **39**. 4. **vehementer hortārī**. Cf. sec. **172**. 2. *b*.

CATILINE II

LESSON XXXVI

178. **Temporal Clauses** with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *simul ac*, etc. — Ref. **134**, Part I sec. **184, 185.**

179. Observe that in these temporal clauses an English pluperfect is usually translated by a Latin perfect.

180. When **postquam** is used after an accusative or ablative of time, the pluperfect is used and the word is usually divided (**post . . . quam**) : —

The battle was fought four days after he arrived, **pūgnātum est post quārtum diem quam pervēnerat.**

181. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

urbī ferrō flammāque minitārī.	*to threaten the city with fire and sword.*
alicui ferrum ē manibus extorquēre.	*to wrest a sword from some one's hands.*
locō movērī.	*to lose one's vantage-ground* (lit. *to be moved from one's place*).

For Oral Translation — Chapter I

182. 1. When Catiline went forth, the city rejoiced. 2. He was cast out because he threatened the city with fire and sword. 3. After the sword had been wrested from his hands, he grieved. 4. Since this is so, let us rejoice. 5. The man was conquered as soon as he had been driven into open brigandage. 6. Catiline left the city [1]only a few

hours after the first oration was delivered. 7. It happened very fortunately that he left the city standing. 8. [2]Shall I grieve because he did not carry out a blood-stained sword? 9. He felt that he was overthrown, as soon as he had lost his vantage-ground. 10. When the citizens understood[3] that there was no danger, they no longer feared. 11. What of the fact that we can now wage a regular war? 12. It happened that Catiline's dagger was busy not only in the Forum but even within private houses.

1. **paucī**. 2. Ref. **121**. 3. **intellegere**.

LESSON XXXVII

183. **Temporal Clauses with *cum*.** — Ref. **132**; Part I sec. **192, 193**.

184. The conjunction **cum** is one of the most frequent in Latin. In three of its uses it is followed by the indicative and in three by the subjunctive.

A. Indicative uses of **cum**.

1. Defining the time of the principal verb; purely temporal, not descriptive; especially in the combinations **eō tempore cum, eō diē cum, nunc cum, ōlim cum, nūper cum, tum cum, diū est cum**, and the like.

2. **Cum** = *when suddenly*. The preceding clause then begins with **vix** (*hardly*), **iam** (*already*), or **nōn dum** (*not yet*), or an adverb of similar value, the effect of the whole being the emphatic statement of a sudden and surprising occurrence. This construction is called by grammarians **cum inversum**, because the logical relation of the clauses is inverted, the principal thought being expressed by the *subordinate* clause: *hardly had I begun to speak, when suddenly he entered*, **vix loquī incēperam cum (subitō) ingressus est**.

3. To express action exactly coincident with that of the main verb. The principal and subordinate verb are then in the same tense.

B. Subjunctive uses of **cum**.

1. **Cum** causal, *since*.
2. **Cum** concessive, *though*.
3. **Cum** descriptive, with the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive, describing the circumstances accompanying or preceding the action of the main verb.

185. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

tālis quālis.	*such as.*
vītae perīculō.	*at the risk of life.*
molestē ferō.	*I take it ill.*
aes aliēnum contrahere.	*to incur debts.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 2

186. 1. There were some who accused Cicero, after he had let Catiline go. 2. Catiline was so dangerous a foe that he ought to have been killed. 3. Hardly had I said this, when suddenly many defended him. 4. I shall remove him, as soon as I judge that all peril has been driven away from you. 5. When[1] you saw the enemy openly, you could fight openly. 6. So far as I know, he went forth with few companions. 7. Would that all men were such as they ought to be! 8. It happened that many did not believe what[2] I said. 9. The consul took it ill because Catiline did not lead out all his forces with him. 10. How great debts he had incurred at the time when he left the city! 11. When I saw what men remained[3] at Rome, I was overwhelmed with fear. 12. You may perceive from this how powerful they are.

1. Latin, "then when." 2. **ea quae**. 3. **manēre**.

LESSON XXXVIII

187. **Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*.** — Ref. **131**, Part I sec. **197, 198.**

188. **Temporal Clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*.** — Ref. **133**, Part I sec. **202.**

189. The perfect indicative with **antequam** and **priusquam** is especially common when the main clause is negative and the main verb in the historical perfect: **hostēs nōn prius pūgnā excessērunt quam ducem concidere vīdērunt**, *the enemy did not cease from battle before they saw their leader fall.*

190. The indicative in a clause with **antequam** and **priusquam** states an actual occurrence; a subjunctive, on the other hand, shows that the event was assumed or purposed, but did not actually take place at all. The sentence above (sec. **189**) is a good example of the force of the indicative; but compare the following: **ante pāx est facta quam tēlum conicerētur**, *peace was made before a weapon was thrown.* Here the implication is that the weapon *was not thrown*, and the subjunctive is used.

191. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

vadimōnium dēserere.	*to forfeit one's bail.*
dīlēctum habēre.	*to make a levy.*
hesternō diē.	*yesterday.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 3

192. 1. I did not despise that army, before Metellus had made a levy. 2. What of the fact that some have forfeited their bail? 3. They collapsed before I showed them the edict of the prætor. 4. They flit about in the Forum until they incur great debts. 5. As long as you remain here, remember that those who have deserted the army are not to be feared. 6. What are you thinking about? 7. I know what you are thinking about. 8. I stood near the Curia

until I saw who had Etruria. 9. Catiline fled before he had led forth his soldiers from the city. 10. Catiline did not flee before he had led forth his soldiers from the city. 11. Yesterday, while I was standing near the Curia, he came into the senate. 12. They waited until he made known all his plans.

LESSON XXXIX

193. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nōn iam.	*no longer.*
cum aliquō familiārissimē vīvere.	*to live on intimate terms with some one.*
oppressus aere aliēnō.	*overwhelmed with debt.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 4

194. After all the citizens saw that a conspiracy had been openly made, and when there was no one at Rome, overwhelmed with debt, who had not joined[1] this incredible league of crime, the consul thought that there was no longer room for mildness and that all corrupt and infamous characters must be cast out. Catiline had already set out; but as long as the other assassins who lived on intimate terms with him remained, the commonwealth could not be [2]restored to health. The consul, therefore, pointed out the way, and commanded all to depart. "If you are willing to hasten," [3]said he, "you will overtake Catiline before he reaches[4] the camp of Manlius."

1. Latin, "added himself to." 2. levāre. 3. inquit. 4. pervenīre.

LESSON XL

Conditional Sentences

195. General Statements. — Part I sec. **225–229.**

196. Conditional Sentences with the Indicative. — Ref. **38.**

197. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

adsuēfactus frīgore perferendō.	*trained to endure cold.*
in eādem mente permanēre.	*to continue of the same mind.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 5

198. 1. [1]It was added that no one was bolder than he. 2. If you wish to look into his different pursuits, let me tell you what I know. 3. There was no one in that army who was not trained to endure cold. 4. If he can endure hunger and thirst, they will proclaim him a brave man. 5. If his companions follow[2] him, the commonwealth will be fortunate. 6. If these bands of desperate men leave[2] the city, we shall be happy. 7. If the desires of men are moderate, they should be endured. 8. What of the fact that these scoundrels think of nothing but robbery? 9. If they seek nothing but revels, [3]who can endure it? 10. If my consulship shall have removed them, it will have added many ages to the republic. 11. There was no king whom the Romans feared. 12. If all things on land and sea have been subdued, what remains? 13. If they continue[2] of the same mind, I will not suffer them to remain.

1. Cf. sec. **172.** 3. 2. Do not forget that the English present often refers to future or even future perfect time and should be translated accordingly. 3. A rhetorical question.

LESSON XLI

Conditional Sentences — *Continued*

199. **Conditional Sentences with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive.** — Ref. **39**.

200. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

aliquid ad aliquem dēferre.	*to report something to some one.*
castra pōnere.	*to pitch camp.*
bellum alicui indīcere.	*to declare war upon some one.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 6

201. 1. There were some who said that Catiline was exceeding shy. 2. If I should be able to accomplish this, I would order them to go into exile. 3. I reported the matter to the senate [1]on the day that I called them together. 4. [2]Hardly had Catiline entered when the senators left their seats empty. 5. If Catiline should come, who would salute him? 6. It happened that the chief men of that body regarded him as a very cruel enemy. 7. If I should cast citizens into exile by a (mere) word, I should be called a violent consul. 8. If Catiline comes, who will salute him? 9. [3]There was the added fact that he had been at Læca's (house) that night. 10. [4]I fear this, that Catiline has not declared war upon the Roman people in his own name. 11. Where has Manlius pitched his camp? 12. Don't wait until I go to Massilia.

1. Cf. sec. **184**. A. 1. 2. Cf. sec. **184**. A. 2. 3. **hūc accēdēbat.** Cf. sec. **172**. 3. 4. Cf. **172**. 2.

LESSON XLII

Conditional Sentences — *Continued*

202. **Conditional Sentences with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.** — Ref. **40.**

203. **Conditions Contrary to Fact with the Indicative in the Apodosis.** — Ref. **41.**

204. The uses of a past indicative in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact may be summarized as follows: —

1. With the verbs **oportet, decet, dēbeō, possum, necesse est, opus est.**

2. With verbs in the first or second periphrastic conjugation.

3. The past of **sum** with **longum, aequum, aequius, difficile, melius,** etc., in such expressions as **longum erat,** *it would be tedious;* **difficile erat,** *it would be difficult;* **melius fuerat,** *it would have been better.*

N.B. In this construction the imperfect indicative regularly refers to present time and the perfect or pluperfect to past time.

205. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

vī et minīs.	*with threats of violence.*
est mihi tantī.	*it is worth my while.*
praeter ipsīus voluntātem.	*contrary to his own desire.*
potius quam.	*rather than.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 7

206. 1. If Catiline had changed his mind, he would have changed his course to flight and exile. 2. If he had given up his plan of making war, he would have been called innocent by many. 3. If I were to cast him out with threats of violence, I should be considered a very cruel consul. 4. If it were worth while, I would not hesitate to bear the storm of unpopularity. 5. If you had driven him out, you could have averted from us the danger of war. 6. It would have been

better if you had set out for Rome. 7. If you let Catiline out, I fear this, [1] that he will go to Manlius. 8. If he has set out from Rome, let us pray that he be not about to lead an army against us. 9. If they should hear that he has gone to Massilia, they would complain of this more than fear it. 10. If you were innocent, it would not be necessary for me to use [2] threats of violence. 11. If something had happened contrary to your desire, it would be difficult to go.

1. Cf. sec. **172**. 2. 2. What case after ūtor?

LESSON XLIII

207. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

omnibus rēbus ōrnātus.	*supplied with everything.*
adquīrere ad fidem.	*to add to one's credit.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 8

208. We all know [1] the man who was most to be feared by us; but now [2] it fortunately happens that a wall is between us and him and we no longer fear him. But what about the others? Why is it that they remain at Rome? These are composed of many classes of men who could [3] have been saved if they had been willing to listen to me. Of these classes there is none which is more shameless than that of the rich who are in debt. They are supplied with everything, and if they were willing to take from their possessions and add to their credit, we should find them better citizens. If they expect new accounts from Catiline, they are greatly mistaken.

1. Cf. sec. **119**. 2. Cf. sec. **171**. 2. 3. Present infinitive in the Latin idiom after a past tense of **possum**.

LESSON XLIV

209. **General Conditions.** — Ref. **43**, Part I sec. **240**.

210. **Conditional Clauses of Comparison with** *ac sī, ut sī, quasi,* **etc.** — Ref. **42**, Part I sec. **243**.

211. A few important facts: —

a. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time, as, *if Cæsar is present, he will conquer.*

b. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time, as, *if* (or *whenever*) *Cæsar is present, he always conquers.*

c. There is often no distinction in form between the particular and the general condition, and the types of conditions commonly known as Simple, Future, and Contrary to Fact may be either particular or general in character according to the meaning conveyed. Often, however, a general condition appears in some one of the forms described in the references above (**209**), and these should be thoroughly mastered.

d. General conditions are often introduced by **cum** or **ubi** in the sense of *whenever, if at any time.*

212. Comparisons are often made by two indicative clauses the first of which is introduced by **ut** (or **sīcut, quem ad modum, tamquam**), *as*, and the second by **ita** (or **sīc, item**), *so:* —

As you sow, so will you reap, **ut sementem fēceris, ita metēs.**

213. **ut . . . ita** (or **sīc**) are often used in the sense of *though . . . yet* and are followed by the indicative.

214. *The same as* is expressed by **īdem** { **quī.** / **ac.** / **atque.**

Cicero felt the same as we, **Cicerō idem sēnsit** { **quod** / **ac** / **atque** } **nōs.**

215. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

rērum potīrī.	*to get control of affairs.*
aetāte adfectus.	*well along in years* (lit. *affected by age*).
eōs hōc moneō.	*I give them this advice.*
sūmptuōsius sē iactāre.	*to make a display of extravagance.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 9

216. 1. [1]Whenever they are overwhelmed with debt, they despair. 2. [1]If you should be overwhelmed with debt, you would despair. 3. They wish to get control of affairs just as if the commonwealth [2]were in a disturbed condition. 4. Whenever they attempted to accomplish this, I (always) gave the same advice to them as to the rest. 5. If you [3]pray to the immortal gods, they give aid. 6. If they obtain[4] that which they desire, it will have to be given up to some gladiator. 7. They desired the blood of the citizens just as if they hoped to be kings. 8. Though Manlius was well along in years, yet he was strong on account of his training. 9. As the second class wished for power, so the third class thought of proscriptions. 10. If the soldiers of Sulla had not made a display of extravagance, they would not have fallen into debt. 11. If you desire to be saved, I give you this advice.

1. Examine sentences 1 and 2 carefully. How do the conditions differ? 2. Translate by one word. 3. **ōrāre.** 4. Fut. perf.

LESSON XLV

217. Clauses with *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, denoting a Wish or Proviso. — Ref. **55**, Part I sec. **255**.

218. Remember that the negative in the clause of proviso is **nē**, not **nōn**.

219. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

negōtium male gerere.	*to manage business matters unsuccessfully.*
quō modō.	*in what way, how.*
quem ad modum.	
quā ratiōne.	
quō pactō.	

For Oral Translation — Chapter 10

220. 1. Though they have now for a long time been overwhelmed by debt, they never emerge. 2. Provided they go from the city, let them betake themselves to that camp. 3. There is no doubt that the fourth class was of a mixed character. 4. [1]So far as I have heard, these soldiers [2]are apt to be slow debtors. 5. I do not understand how they can live honorably, if they are willing to die basely. 6. [3]If you perish with many, you perish with less pain. 7. Let them perish, provided that their neighbors do not know of it. 8. The assassins were so numerous that the prison could not hold them. 9. If they had not managed this business unsuccessfully, they would not have been in debt. 10. How will those wretches learn how to brandish the dagger, if Catiline perishes[4]? 11. I do not fear you, Catiline, provided there is a wall between you and me.

1. Cf. sec. **167**. *a*. 2. First periphrastic of **sum**. 3. A general condition. 4. What tense in Latin?

LESSON XLVI

221. **Concessive Clauses.** — Ref. **37**, Part I sec. **247, 248.**

222. Distinguish between **quamquam**, *although*, introducing a subordinate clause of concession, and **quamquam**, *and yet*, introducing a new proposition, as in **quamquam quid loquor** (*in Cat.* I § 22), *and yet, why do I speak?* (See also *in Cat.* I §§ 24 and 30.)

223. **Quamvīs** is regularly used only in expressions involving comparison or degree. It is therefore often found with adjectives and adverbs, as **quamvīs malī**, *however wicked*, **quamvīs dīves**, *however rich*, **quamvīs multum**, *however much*.

224. **Licet** (*it is granted*) is properly a verb in the present tense. Hence, by sequence of tenses, it is used only with the present or perfect subjunctive.

225. **Tamen** (*nevertheless*) is often expressed in Latin after a concessive clause when its equivalent does not appear in English.

226. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

respondēre alicui.	*to be a match for some one* or *something.*
aliquā rē egēre.	*to lack something.*
valdē iacēre.	*to be completely overthrown.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 11

227. 1. Even if Catiline should have this body-guard, he would not be a match for our forces. 2. However much this war is to be feared, our zeal ought not to fail. 3. Oppose to that gladiator, although he is worn out and wounded, the flower of all Italy. 4. [1] It may be conceded that he lacks everything with which we are supplied, nevertheless he will draw up his forces against us. 5. And yet I do not fear that such vices will conquer so many virtues. 6. Even if

we [2]had said nothing about these matters, we could have compared the causes themselves. 7. Whenever the vices fight on one side and the virtues on the other, the gods always give the victory to the virtues. 8. However low that robber lies, he will oppose to us his army of outcasts. 9. Since Catiline is in the wooded heights of Etruria, I do not think he is greatly to be feared. 10. You will conquer in a contest of this kind provided your zeal does not fail.

1. licet. 2. omittere.

LESSON XLVII

228. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XXXVI–XLVI.

229. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

adquīrere ad fidem.
adsuēfactus frīgore perferendō.
aes aliēnum contrahere.
aetāte adfectus.
alicui ferrum ē manibus extorquēre.
aliquā rē egēre.
aliquid ad aliquem dēferre.
bellum alicui indīcere.
castra pōnere.
cum aliquō familiārissimē vīvere.
dīlēctum habēre.
eōs hōc moneō.
est mihi tantī.
hesternō diē.
in eādem mente permanēre.
molestē ferō.
negōtium male gerere.
nōn iam.
omnibus rēbus ōrnātus.
oppressus aere aliēnō.
potius quam.
praeter ipsīus voluntātem.
quā ratiōne, quem ad modum, quō modō, quō pactō.
rērum potīrī.
respondēre alicui.
sūmptuōsius sē iactāre.
tālis quālis.
urbī ferrō flammāque minitārī.
vadimōnium dēserere.
valdē iacēre.
vī et minīs.
vītae perīculō.

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 12 AND 13

230. While provision was being made for affairs in the city by the brave consul, Metellus had been sent into the Gallic territory to check Catiline's every movement and attempt. Although the danger threatening the fatherland was the greatest in the memory of man, Cicero desired so to conduct matters, if in any way it could be done, that without any excitement all the wicked should suffer punishment and all the good should be preserved. Although this seemed hardly to be hoped for, yet Cicero promised it to the citizens, relying not on human wisdom but on the help of the immortal gods. For the gods, as if they wished to protect their temples, showed[1] by unmistakable signs that they were not far away.

1. dēmōnstrāre.

CATILINE III

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

231. The following Table shows the changes made in moods and tenses when passing from Direct to Indirect Discourse, and should be thoroughly mastered.

I. PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

A. Declaratory Sentences

DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
Present Indicative	becomes Present Infinitive.
Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect Indicative	" Perfect Infinitive.
Future Active Indicative	" Future Active Infinitive.
Future Passive Indicative	" **fore (futūrum esse) ut** with the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.
Future Perfect Indicative	" **fore (futūrum esse) ut** with the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive (*rare*).
Active Subjv. Present in the apodosis (conclusion) of a condition	" Future Infinitive.
Passive Subjv. Present in the apodosis (conclusion) of a condition	" **fore (futūrum esse) ut** with the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.
Active Subjv. Imperfect or Pluperfect, in the apodosis (conclusion) of a condition	" Future Participle with **fuisse**.
Passive Subjv. Imperfect or Pluperfect, in the apodosis (conclusion) of a condition	" **futūrum fuisse ut** with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

N.B. The present infinitive **posse** often has a future force:—**tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant**, *they hope that they shall be able to get possession of entire Gaul.*

B. Interrogative Sentences

Direct Discourse		Indirect Discourse
Indicative	becomes	Infinitive if the question is rhetorical. Subjunctive if the question is real.
Subjunctive	remains	Subjunctive.

N.B. Questions either real or rhetorical, used immediately after a verb of *asking*, are treated as indirect questions and take the subjunctive.

C. Commands, Prayers, Wishes, Prohibitions

Direct Discourse		Indirect Discourse
Imperative	becomes	Present Subjunctive after a primary tense. Imperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense. The negative is **nē**.
Subjunctive, Hortatory or Optative,	remains	Subjunctive, though tense may be changed by law of tense-sequence.

N.B. A prohibition with **nōlī** and the infinitive becomes the hortatory subjunctive with **nē**.

II. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

Subordinate clauses of all kinds have the verb in the subjunctive. The tense is determined by the following rules: —

Direct Discourse		Indirect Discourse
Present Future } Indicative	becomes	Present Subjunctive after a primary tense. Imperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense.
Perfect Future Perfect } Indicative	"	Perfect Subjunctive after a primary tense. Pluperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense.
Imperfect Indicative	"	Perfect Subjunctive after a primary tense. Imperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense.
Pluperfect Indicative	"	Perfect Subjunctive after a primary tense. Pluperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense.

Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive — remain the same.

N.B. Remember that the Perfect Infinitive is usually followed by secondary tenses even when the verb in the principal clause is primary. Cf. sec. **136** *a*.

232. The usual verbs of *saying* introducing a direct or an indirect quotation are **dīcō**, **āiō**, and **inquam**. These verbs are used as follows: —

dīcō regularly stands before its expression, and is followed by either direct or indirect discourse. When the dependent clause is negative **negō** should be used, not **dīcō nōn**.

āiō is usually followed by indirect discourse, and may stand before or after or be inserted in the expression. The subject of **āiō** regularly stands immediately before it, and should not be separated from it.

Sometimes **āiō** introduces direct discourse, especially in the proverbial **ut āit**, *as he says;* **ut āiunt**, *as they say*. (Cf. Cic. *in Cat.* I § 15.)

inquam (which has the force of the perfect as well as of the present) is used only with direct discourse and is always inserted in the quotation. The subject of **inquam** usually stands directly after it. "**Ubi,**" **inquit Caesar,** "**sunt mīlitēs?**" "*where are my soldiers?*" *said Cæsar.*

LESSON XLVIII

233. **Declaratory Sentences in Indirect Discourse.** — Ref. **87**, Part I sec. **259–262**. See also Table, sec. **231**.

234. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

vīta omnium vestrum.	*the lives of you all* or *the lives of all of you.*
paucīs ante diēbus.	*a few days ago.*
urbem condere.	*to found a city.*

235. The circumlocution **fore ut** with the subjv. is used not only for the future *passive* indicative of direct discourse, but also for the future *active* when the verb has no future active participle.

For Oral Translation — Chapter I

236. 1. You see to-day, fellow-citizens, that the lives of you all have been snatched almost from the jaws of fate.

2. Because of the supreme love of the immortal gods for you, I know that your children will be saved from fire and sword. 3. We know that Romulus founded this city. 4. I think we ought to raise him to the immortal gods. 5. I promise you that he will be [1]honored by our posterity. 6. I hear that fires were being placed under the temples and shrines of the city. 7. He said that he had warded off the swords drawn against the commonwealth. 8. Cicero said that he would briefly set forth these matters to the citizens. 9. [2]He was informed that these matters would be investigated by the senate. 10. The most active leaders of this war have been left at Rome. 11. You know, fellow-citizens, that I was always looking out for your safety. 12. These things had been disclosed in the senate a few days ago.

1. Latin, "in honor among." 2. **certior fierī.**

LESSON XLIX

237. **Interrogative Sentences in Indirect Discourse.** — Ref. **89**, Part I sec. **266.** See also Table, sec. **231.**

238. **Commands, Prayers, Wishes, Prohibitions, in Indirect Discourse.** — Ref. **82**, Part I sec. **267.** See also Table, sec. **231.**

239. Distinguish between an Indirect Question and a question in Indirect Discourse. The former is the subject or (more usually) the object of a verb of *asking*, and is regularly expressed in the subjunctive mood. (Cf. sec. **116.**) The latter is a question transferred from direct to indirect discourse after a verb of *saying* or *thinking*. For example, the rhetorical question, *can I forget!* **num oblīvīscī possum!** becomes in indirect discourse, *he says, can he forget?* **dīcit num oblīvīscī sē posse.** As an indirect question this would be *he asks whether he can forget*, **quaerit num oblīvīscī possit.**

240. A question in direct discourse is either real or rhetorical. If the mood used be subjunctive, the question is rhetorical and the subjunctive is retained in indirect discourse. If the mood in

the direct be the indicative, it is sometimes difficult to determine whether the question is real and to be expressed in indirect discourse by the subjunctive, or rhetorical and to be expressed by the infinitive. Often it depends merely on the writer's point of view.

241. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

fidem facere.	*gain credence.*
alicui litterās ad aliquem dare.	*to give some one a letter for some one.*
amāns reī pūblicae.	*patriotic*, or *a patriot.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 2

The first five sentences are given in direct discourse. Translate them first as they are, then after **dīcit**, then after **dīxit**, making such changes in the persons of the verbs and pronouns as may be necessary.

242. 1. Don't cast Catiline out of the city. 2. [1]Why should I fear the remaining band of conspirators? 3. [2]Do you think that they will be helpless without him? 4. May my words gain greater credence in your ears. 5. [3]Can I send men to the Mulvian bridge without any one's suspicion? 6. He asked whether an attack was made on them. 7. He told them not to draw their swords. 8. I saw what they [4]were going to do. 9. I thought the opportunity was offered me [5]to give him a letter for Catiline. 10. They said that the prætors knew about the affair; why was it [6]kept from the others? 11. I told these patriotic youths [7]to undertake the business.

1. A rhetorical question with the subjunctive. 2. A real question. 3. A rhetorical question with the indicative. 4. First periphrastic. 5. Not infinitive. 6. Latin, "unknown by." 7. A command in indirect discourse.

LESSON L

243. **Declaratory Sentences — Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse.** — Ref. **87.** See also Table, sec. **231.**

244. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

integrīs sīgnīs.	*with seals unbroken.*
praeter cōnsuētūdinem.	*contrary to custom.*
ad senātum dēferre.	*to lay before the senate.*
tumultum cīvitātī inicere.	*to cause an uproar in the state.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 3

Give the first five sentences first as they are, then after **dīcit**, then after **dīxit.**

245. 1. Whatsoever letters there are in that company will be surrendered with their seals unbroken. 2. Although I summoned Gabinius he suspected nothing. 3. Lentulus came after Cethegus had been summoned. 4. He was very tardy because he had been up late the night before, contrary to his custom. 5. While the senate was coming together, I sent a courageous man to the house of Cethegus. 6. He said that he would not open the letters before he had laid the matter before the senate. 7. He told him [1]to carry out the swords and daggers. 8. Too much diligence ought not to be feared. 9. He said, [2]should he rashly cause such an uproar in the state?

1. A command in indirect discourse. 2. A rhetorical question in indirect discourse.

LESSON LI

246. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

ex omnibus partibus.	*on all sides.*
fidēs pūblica.	*the protection of the state.*
quam prīmum.	*as soon as possible.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 4

247. Volturcius, who had a letter for Catiline, at first, because of fear, refused to tell what he knew. Then, when I had given him the protection of the state, he said that the orders of Lentulus were for Catiline to approach the city with an army as soon as possible so as to unite with the leaders in the city. The Gauls, too, had letters, not only from Lentulus but also from the others, [1]urging them to send cavalry into Italy; Lentulus moreover had assured them that, according to the Sibylline fates, this was the year fated for the destruction of the city; and that he was that third Cornelius to whom the sovereignty must of necessity come.

1. A relative clause.

LESSON LII

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

248. **Conditional Sentences with the Indicative, or of the First Class, in Indirect Discourse.** — Ref. **83**, Part I sec. **273–275**. See also Table, sec. **231**.

249. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

nē longum sit.	*not to make a long story of it.*
abiectus cōnscientiā.	*convicted by conscience.*
in eandem sententiam.	*to the same purport.*
ad extrēmum.	*at last.*
facere potestātem.	*to give an opportunity.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 5

Translate the first three sentences first as they are, then after **dīcit**, then after **dīxit**.

250. 1. If I show[1] the tablets to Cethegus, he will recognize the seal. 2. If this is the letter to the senate of the

Allobroges, let us cut the string and read (it). 3. If this is the portrait of your grandfather, it ought to call you back from so great a crime. 4. If the letter of Statilius is to the same purport, [2]he will have to confess. 5. If, contrary to the general[3] expectation, he confessed, he was convicted by his conscience. 6. You know that if he asks the Gauls why they came to his house, they [4]will give consistent replies. 7. What will you reply, if I shall ask about the Sibylline fates? 8. Not to make a long story of it, he said that he would accept the aid of all, if it should be necessary. 9. I think that, even if he begins to reply impudently, he will at last deny nothing. 10. If he wishes to say anything about these matters, I will give him an opportunity.

1. Not present. 2. Second periphrastic impersonal. 3. Latin, "of all." 4. Latin, "will reply consistently."

LESSON LIII

251. Conditional Sentences with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or of the Second Class, in Indirect Discourse. — Ref. **84**. See also Table, sec. **231**.

252. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

summa rēs pūblica.	*the supreme welfare of the state.*
grātiās agere.	*to thank.*
post urbem conditam.	*since the founding of the city.*
magistrātū sē abdicāre.	*to resign an office.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 6

Translate the first three sentences first as they are, then after **dīcit**, then after **dīxit**.

253. 1. If the chief men should give their opinions, the senate would adopt them without any change. 2. If I should save the citizens from slaughter, the senate would

thank me[1] in most generous terms. 3. If Lentulus should ask the advice of the senate, they would urge him [2]to resign the prætorship. 4. If I avail myself of the faithful service of the prætors, I shall be praised. 5. If nine men out of this great number are placed in custody, the remainder can be restored. 6. Cicero says that if Lentulus resigns his office the state will have no scruples [3]in punishing him. 7. If [4]the affairs of the state are well conducted, a day of thanks will be decreed in your name. 8. Cicero says that he was the first civilian[5] to whom this had happened since the founding of the city. 9. I know that if Ceparius incites the shepherds of Apulia the supreme welfare of the state will be in the greatest danger.

1. ipsī in indir. disc. 2. Not infin. 3. **quō minus**, etc. 4. **rēs pūblica**. 5. **togātus**. Observe that the Latin and English idioms in this sentence are not at all alike.

LESSON LIV

254. **Conditional Sentences with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or of the Third Class, in Indirect Discourse.** — Ref. **85**, Part I sec. **282, 283**. See also Table, sec. **231**.

255. Remember that the regular change of the imperfect subjunctive in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact is to the future participle in **-ūrus** with **fuisse**. The change to the future infinitive, mentioned by some grammarians, is very rare.

256. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

moenibus continēre.	*to shut within the walls.*
cōnsiliō occurrere.	*to oppose a plan.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 7

Translate the first three sentences first as they are, then after **dīcit**, then after **dīxit**.

257. 1. If we had captured the leaders of the war, all Catiline's hopes would have been dashed to the ground.

2. If Catiline were removed, I should not fear the furious rashness of Cethegus. 3. If he were not shut within the walls of the city, he would not [1]need to be feared by us. 4. If his hand or his tongue had failed him, he would not have dared to make such[2] a conspiracy against the state. 5. If this crafty man [3]had been present, he would not have selected the Saturnalia for our destruction. 6. Cicero says that if Catiline had remained in the city he would have opposed his (Catiline's) plans. 7. I know that if that enemy had not been found out, we should have had to fight with him. 8. He said that if these matters had not been carried on [4]in this way, we could never have freed the commonwealth from such perils.

1. What mood might be used? Cf. sec. **204**. 2. Latin, "so great." 3. **adesse**. 4. **sīc**.

LESSON LV

258. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ut illa omittam.	*to omit the following.*
memoriā tenēre.	*to remember.*
sīgnum collocandum locāre.	*to let a contract for setting up a statue.*

For Written Translation — Chapter 8

259. You surely remember that at the time when the gilded statue of Romulus was struck by lightning the soothsayers, who had assembled from all Etruria, said that unless the gods should be appeased in every way, civil war and the downfall of the city were impending. And so, to omit [1]all the other things which were done at that time to appease the gods, you remember that the consuls of that year let a contract for setting up a larger statue of Jove; for the soothsayers had said that they hoped that if that statue

should be made and should [2]face the east, the immortal gods would by their [3]divine power move the very fates.

1. **cētera.** 2. Latin, "look towards," **spectāre ad.** 3. One word in Latin.

LESSON LVI

260. Passive Apodoses in Indirect Discourse. — Ref. **86**, Part I sec. **289**. See also Table, sec. **231**.

261. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

mente captus.	*demented, insane.*
aliquid alicui crēdere.	*to intrust something to some one.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 9

Translate the first three sentences first as they are, then after **dīcit**, then after **dīxit**.

262. 1. If any one should deny that this city is governed by the power of the immortal gods, he would be insane. 2. If Roman citizens had planned the destruction of the commonwealth, it would have seemed incredible to some. 3. If the statue should be set up to-day, it would seem to have been done by the will of Jupiter. 4. If I were to say that I (successfully) opposed these men, I should take too much upon myself. 5. Lentulus will not intrust such important matters to Gauls. 6. I think that if prudence had not been taken away from their audacity, the letters would never have been intrusted to those barbarians. 7. If the conspirators had not been led through the Forum that day, the statue would not have been set up. 8. He said that if the Gauls should prefer the safety of the Romans to their own advantage, it would seem [1]an act of providence.

1. **dīvīnitus factum.**

LESSON LVII

263. Implied or Informal Indirect Discourse. — Ref. 88, Part I sec. 293.
264. Subjunctive of Integral Part or Attraction. — Ref. 127.

265. The constructions of Informal Indirect Discourse and Integral Part are so similar that it is often difficult to discriminate between them.

266. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nē dīcere quidem opus est.	*it is unnecessary even to mention.*
in hostium numerō dūcī.	*to be counted among the enemy.*

For Oral Translation — Chapters 10–11

267. 1. The consul commanded the citizens to celebrate those days which had been appointed [1]for thanksgiving. 2. A thanksgiving was decreed [2]because Cicero had saved the city and the citizens from most cruel destruction. 3. Cicero wished the citizens to recall all the civil disturbances which they had heard about or seen. 4. Lentulus threatened[3] death to all who could be safe while the city was safe. 5. The conspirators passed a law concerning all who wished this city to flourish. 6. Marius in part killed, and in part drove from the city, those [4]who disagreed with[5] him. 7. The conspirators [6]hoped for such a war as no barbarous land had ever waged with its own people. 8. Do you know who it was that counted all of us among the enemy? 9. Those chiefs did not desire to destroy the commonwealth, but to change the one that then was. 10. It is unnecessary even to mention the disturbances which were settled by the slaughter of citizens.

1. Use **causā** with the genitive. 2. The language of the decree. It is to be noted that the subjunctive in a causal clause with **quod** depends

on the principle of implied indirect discourse. Cf. sec. **163**. 3. Here the indirect discourse is implied in the phrase *threatened death*, which is equivalent to *said that he would kill*. 4. As a statement of fact, indicative; but if it means *who* (*as he suspected*), subjunctive. 5. Latin, "from." 6. **spērāre**.

LESSON LVIII

268. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XLVIII–LVII.

269. Review the following idioms and phrases:—

abiectus cōnscientiā.
ad extrēmum.
ad senātum dēferre.
alicui litterās ad aliquem dare.
aliquid alicui crēdere.
amāns reī pūblicae.
cōnsiliō occurrere.
ex omnibus partibus.
facere potestātem.
fidem facere.
fidēs pūblica.
grātiās agere.
in eandem sententiam.
in hostium numerō dūcī.
integrīs sīgnīs.
magistrātū sē abdicāre.
memoriā tenēre.
mente captus.
moenibus continēre.
nē dīcere quidem opus est.
nē longum sit.
paucīs ante diēbus.
post urbem conditam.
praeter cōnsuētūdinem.
quam prīmum.
sīgnum collocandum locāre.
summa rēs pūblica.
urbem condere.
ut illa omittam.
vīta omnium vestrum.

For Written Translation — Chapter 12

270. Cicero in his third oration against Catiline, delivered before the people on the third of December, said that since he could not, [1]like a victorious general, leave behind those whom he had conquered, but must live with them and die with them, the citizens, for whose safety he had exposed himself to hatred and perils, ought to see to it that the wicked should have no power to do him harm. [2]He added

further that [3]there was nothing higher, either in office or in fame, [4]to which he would like to climb; but that as[5] a private citizen [6]it was his purpose so to live as to [7]add honor to the deeds which he had performed in his consulship.

1. Latin "in the manner of," **mōre** with gen. 2. **etiam addidit.** 3. Latin, "neither in office nor in fame was there anything higher." 4. Latin, "whither." 5. Cf. sec. 7. 6. Latin, "it was to him in mind." 7. **ōrnāre.**

CATILINE IV

IV. ENGLISH AUXILIARY VERBS

271. The proper translation of the English auxiliary verbs *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, presents many difficulties. These arise mainly from the fact that in English these verbs sometimes have their original and literal value, when they must be rendered by independent verbs, and sometimes the force of potential auxiliaries which may be expressed by the Latin subjunctive. The ambiguity of the English often leaves the interpretation open to the individual judgment of the translator. The six lessons based on this oration will be devoted to a practical consideration of some of the most important phases of this subject.

LESSON LIX

may **might**

272. *May* and *might* are common auxiliaries in the translation of some of the subordinate subjunctive constructions,* as, for example, in purpose clauses: —

Catiline remained that he might kill the consul, **Catilīna mānsit ut cōnsulem interficeret.**

273. When *may* and *might* express mere possibility they are translated by the Latin potential subjunctive: —

You may sooner find fortune than keep it, **fortūnam citius reperiās quam retineās.**

You might have seen them fighting, **vidērēs eōs pūgnantīs.**

* The beginner is apt to make the mistake of supposing that a modal auxiliary must *always* be used in translating a subjunctive; but see Part I sec. **77.**

a. Occasionally *might* conveys a stronger idea of capability or power and is to be translated by a past tense of **possum** : —

They might have come, **potuērunt venīre.**

274. When *may* expresses a wish, it is rendered by the optative subjunctive : —

May the citizens be secure from harm, **cīvēs sint incolumēs.**

275. When *may* and *might* express permission they should be translated by a form of **licet**,* *it is permitted.*

The constructions with **licet** are as follows : —

I may go {
- **licet eam** (lit. *it is permitted* (*that*) *I go*), subjunctive with **ut** omitted (cf. sec. **142**. *a*).
- **licet mē īre** (lit. *it is permitted me to go*), infinitive with subject accusative.
- **licet īre** (lit. *it is permitted to go*), infinitive without subject accusative.
- **licet mihi īre** (lit. *to go is permitted to me*), infinitive as subject, dative indirect object.

276. English expressions of obligation or possibility like *I ought to have done*, *I could have done*, *I might have done*, etc. are regularly expressed in Latin by a past tense of the auxiliary and the present infinitive : —

He could (or *might*) *have done this*, **hōc facere potuit** (lit. *he was able to do this*).

I might have done this, **hōc facere mē licuit** (lit. *it was permitted me to do this*).

277. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

per deōs immortālīs.	*by the immortal gods, in heaven's name.*
vestra omnium caedēs.	*the slaughter of all of you.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 1 AND 2

278. 1. You might have seen the eyes of all turned towards the consul. 2. I may be forgetful of my own

* Do not forget the use of **licet** as a concessive conjunction, cf. sec. **221**, **224**.

safety, but I will never forget[1] the honor and safety of the Roman people. 3. The orator said that the eyes of all were turned upon him. 4. May your house always be free from the danger of death. 5. Lentulus may think that his name is [2]destined by fate for the slaughter of all of you, but the gods are taking counsel for you. 6. Why, in heaven's name, do you wish to spare me, and why are you anxious about me? 7. May the gods save Italy from war and devastation. 8. May we not even lament the calamity of so great a city? 9. Catiline remained at Rome in order that we all might perish. 10. Gracchus was not permitted to be tribune of the people a second time. 11. [3]Some one may ask why Cicero was not moved by the tears of his friends.

1. See Ref. **70**. 2. "destined by fate," one word in Latin. 3. **quispiam**.

LESSON LX

can **could**

279. When *can* and *could* express mere possibility and have the force of weak auxiliaries, they may be translated by the potential subjunctive: —

I can establish this without any doubt, **hōc sine ūllā dubitātiōne cōnfīrmem.**

280. More usually *can* and *could*, even when unemphatic, are expressed by the forms of **possum.**

Cicero could have killed Catiline, **Cicerō Catilīnam interficere potuit.**

281. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

nūllō pactō. / **nūllō modō.**	*in no way.*
pūnctum temporis fruī vītā.	*to enjoy life for a moment.*
apud īnferōs.	*in the lower world.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 3 AND 4

282. 1. Lentulus may resign his prætorship, but the senate can in no way compel him to confess. 2. The senate thanked the consul in unusual terms. 3. [1]You might have seen long since that new evils are rife in the commonwealth. 4. Do you see what you must decide before night? 5. There were some who thought[2] that the conspirators should be punished with death. 6. "There has been [3]no civilian before me," said Cicero, "in whose name a thanksgiving [2]has been decreed." 7. There are some who think that wicked citizens ought not to enjoy life for a moment. 8. If they can[4] blot out the name of the Roman people, they will. 9. Cicero says that if the punishments in the lower world are removed, the wicked [5]will not fear even death itself. 10. He could have taken away not only hope, but also life. 11. What alone can comfort a man in sorrow? Is it not hope?

1. Observe the ambiguity of *you might have seen.* If it is a mere potential idea, we use the potential subjunctive (vidērēs); if *might* expresses a stronger idea of power, we use a past tense of **possum**; if *permission* is intended, we use a past tense of **licet**. Let each interpret according to his own judgment (cf. sec. **271**). 2. See Ref. **36**. 3. Latin, "no one a civilian." 4. Future. 5. Use **fore ut**. See sec. **235**.

LESSON LXI

283. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

meā videō quid intersit.	*I see what is to my advantage.*
amplius negōtī.	*more trouble.*
nōn nēmō.	*one or two, somebody.*
nūdius tertius.	*day before yesterday.*
aliquem sententiam rogāre.	*to ask some one his opinion.*
sententiam ferre. }	*to express one's opinion, to vote,*
sententiam dīcere. }	*pass judgment.*
supplicium dē aliquō sūmere.	*to inflict punishment on some one.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 5 AND 6

284. When Cicero was asked his opinion he saw what was to his advantage and that more trouble would be in store for him if he should not follow the opinion of Cæsar. However, when he [1]saw in imagination the city, the light of the whole world, falling in ruins, the unburied heaps of dead, the distress of the women and children, and Lentulus and Catiline holding sway, he showed himself stern and severe against those who wished to accomplish these things and said that no one could be truly regarded as a friend of the people who was unwilling to inflict the severest punishment on a public enemy. Some one may say that he was cruel, but I think that he expressed this opinion in order that he might not seem remiss to the fatherland.

1. Latin, "placed before himself."

LESSON LXII

should **would**

285. *Should* and *would* are generally potential auxiliaries and as such are adequately expressed by the Latin subjunctive. They appear very frequently in the English for the Latin potential subjunctive and in conditions: —

Dīcam haec esse vēra, *I should say that this is true.*

Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat, *if your country should thus speak with you, ought she not to prevail?*

Quod sī quis petat, recūsem, *if any one should ask for this, I would refuse.*

a. Less frequently *should* and *would* are to be expressed by a past tense of the first periphrastic: —

What would have been (i.e. *was about to be*) *the result?* **quid futūrum fuit?**

286. *Should* sometimes expresses obligation or duty, as in *a good citizen should love his country*. It is then rendered in some one of the ways mentioned in sec. **291.**

287. When *would* expresses a wish it is rendered by the optative subjunctive: —

Would that Clodius were now alive, **utinam Clōdius vīveret.**

288. *Would* is the past of *will* or *wish*. It sometimes has this literal sense and must then be translated by a past tense of **volō**: —

He would do it (i.e. *he wished to do it*) *in spite of me*, **hōc facere voluit, mē invītō.**

I would if I could, **vellem sī possem** (lit. *I would wish, if I were able*).

289. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

hodiernus diēs.	*this day.*
dē amōre reī pūblicae certāre.	*to vie in patriotism.*

For Oral Translation — Chapter 7

290. 1. There were some who feared that Cicero could not carry out the decrees of the senate. 2. [1]You might have known that all things were ready. 3. May these measures be carried out to-day? 4. These men should be regarded in the number of the enemy. 5. If all should think one and the same thing, the commonwealth would be preserved. 6. Why should I mention here the zeal of the common people? 7. May they vie with you in patriotism. 8. This day, for the first time since the founding of the city, men of all ranks have come together. 9. No civil strife[2] can hereafter come to any part of the commonwealth. 10. Would that they had been willing to perish alone rather than with many. 11. Who is there to whom the soil of his fatherland is not dear? 12. What other cause [3]could have recalled you from the dissensions of former[4] years?

1. Cf. sec. **282**, N. 1. 2. Latin, "evil." 3. See sec. **276**. 4. **prior.**

LESSON LXIII

must **ought**

291. The ideas represented by *must*, *ought*, *there is need*, *it is necessary*, and the like, may all be expressed in a general way by the Latin second periphrastic conjugation, as —

Cæsar had to do everything at the same time, **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda.**

When, however, the writer wishes to discriminate between these ideas, he may use one of the following: —

a. **oportet**, to lay stress upon the fitness, justice, and wisdom of the action.

I { *must* / *ought to* } *obey my father*, **oportet** { **mē patrī pārēre.** / **patrī pāream** (cf. sec. **142.** *a*). }

b. **necesse est**, to express what is inevitable.

Man must die, **necesse est** { **hominem morī.** / **hominī morī.** / **homō moriātur** (cf. sec. **142.** *a*). }

c. **opus est**,* to express a lack or a need of some kind.

This wound ought to be washed with water, **opus est hōc volnus aquā lavārī.**

d. **dēbēre**, to express a moral obligation or duty.

Citizens ought to fight for the fatherland, **cīvēs prō patriā pūgnāre dēbent.**

292. **IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

operae pretium est.	*it is worth while.*
summō locō nātī.	*born in the highest station.*
officiō cōnsulārī fungī.	*to perform the duty of consul.*

For Oral Translation — Chapters 8 and 9

293. 1. Those, indeed, who were born here in the highest station ought to judge this to be their fatherland. 2. What,

* For the construction of **opus est** with nouns, see sec. **105.**

pray, [1]would have happened if the shops had been burned? 3. It is worth while to hear what that tool of Lentulus is attempting. 4. This must be said, that there is no slave who does not desire the city to stand. 5. The Roman people ought to see to it that armed forces be not lacking. 6. All ranks should agree in preserving the commonwealth. 7. You must decide to-day concerning the fortunes of all. 8. The fatherland ought not to be beset by the weapons of a wicked conspiracy. 9. Catiline, you must not destroy the temples and shrines of the gods. 10. This thing ought not even to be thought about by citizens. 11. No one could excel Cicero in zeal: he would[2] perform his consular duty. 12. The senate [3]ought to have been aroused by the consul's voice.

1. See sec. **204**. 2; **285**. *a*. 2. See sec. **288**. 3. See sec. **276**.

LESSON LXIV

294. Review the Grammatical Notes, Lessons LIX–LXIII.

295. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

aliquem sententiam rogāre.
amplius negōtī.
apud īnferōs.
dē amōre reī pūblicae certāre.
hodiernus diēs.
meā videō quid intersit.
nōn nēmō.
nūdius tertius.
nūllō pactō — nūllō modō.
officiō cōnsulārī fungī.
operae pretium est.
per deōs immortālīs.
pūnctum temporis fruī vītā.
sententiam ferre — sententiam dīcere.
summō locō nātī.
supplicium dē aliquō sūmere.
vestra omnium caedēs.

For Written Translation — Chapters 10 and 11

296. Although Cicero saw that he had undertaken a never-ending conflict with wicked citizens, yet he said that he would never repent of his deeds and designs. And in lieu of the

triumph and the other marks of praise which he might have had, he demanded [1]no other reward than the everlasting memory of his consulship. Since this is so, we ought to give some place to this illustrious Roman among the praises of distinguished men. Some one may mention [2] Scipio, Paulus, and Marius; but we can not deny that Cicero saved the commonwealth at a time of great peril, and he who opens new territories [3] ought not to be praised more than he who sees to it that those who are absent may have a place whither they can return.

1. Latin, "nothing except." 2. **commemorāre**. 3. Latin, "provinces."

THE ARCHIAS

V. PREPOSITIONS

NOTE. — The following six lessons are devoted to the rendering of some of the more troublesome English prepositions. The Latin and English idioms differ nowhere, perhaps, so much as here; and nowhere is greater care necessary.

LESSON LXV

about **after** **against** **among**

297. about in the sense of *concerning* is rendered by **dē** and the ablative: —

The ambassadors spoke about peace, **lēgātī dē pāce dīxērunt.**

about referring to *time* is rendered as follows: —

about meaning *in the neighborhood of* (but somewhat removed) by **circā** or **circiter** with the accusative.

about meaning *towards, getting close to*, by **sub** (sometimes **ad**) with the accusative.

about meaning *during, taking out a part, before the end of*, by **dē** with the ablative.

Compare the three expressions **circā secundam hōram — sub noctem — dē tertiā vigiliā**.

298. after is generally rendered by **post** with the accusative.

after of *immediate* succession is rendered by **ē** or **ex** with the ablative: —

Immediately after his consulship he set out, **ex cōnsulātū profectus est.**

after meaning *coming close to, near to*, is rendered by **ad** with the accusative: —

After the manner of beasts, **ad modum bēstiārum.**

299. against, when preceded by a verb of motion, is usually rendered by **in** and the accusative, and emphasizes the direction taken by the action: —

Cæsar set out against the Gauls, **Caesar in Gallōs est profectus.**

against meaning *contrary to, in opposition to*, is rendered by **contrā** with the accusative and emphasizes the idea of hostility.

Before names of persons we find either **in** or **contrā** according to the idea to be conveyed. With **in** the person is the object of a feeling or act that may be either friendly or unfriendly, but **contrā** is used only of the latter.

300. among of nations and large companies is rendered by **apud** with the accusative, as **apud Helvētiōs**, *among the Helvetians*.

among after words like *conspicuous, famous*, and the like, is rendered by **inter** with the accusative: —

Who was the most famous among the Roman orators?
Quis erat inter ōrātōrēs Rōmānōs clārissimus?

among meaning *in the number of* is rendered by **in** with the ablative: —

I reckon him among my friends, **in meīs amīcīs eum habeō.**

among after verbs of motion is often rendered by **in** or **inter** and the accusative: —

He divided the army among the states, **exercitum in cīvitātīs dīvīsit.**

301. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

exercitātiō dīcendī.	*practice in speaking.*
optimārum artium studia.	*the pursuit of the liberal arts.*
in prīmīs.	*among the first.*
ratiō studiōrum.	*a course of study.*

rem agere.	*to conduct a case.*
ūtī prope novō quōdam genere dīcendī.	*to use an almost new manner of pleading.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 1 AND 2

302. 1. In his oration for the poet Archias, Cicero says many things about the pursuit of the liberal arts. 2. He conducted the case before the prætor. 3. Many among the Romans devoted themselves to the pursuit of culture. 4. Among Roman orators Cicero was the most distinguished. 5. In this oration the orator did not speak after the custom of the courts, but used an almost new manner of pleading. 6. I ask you whether we among the first ought not to bring aid to Archias. 7. When Archias came to Rome, Cicero was about four years old.[1] 8. [2]Why should I not speak a little more freely before this concourse of educated men? 9. It seems wonderful that [3]any one was willing to speak against the poet. 10. After the Punic wars the Romans became[4] desirous of entering upon these courses of study. 11. If Archias were not a citizen, he ought to be added. 12. All the arts are of this nature, that they are bound together by a kind of relationship.

1. Remember the idiomatic use of **nātus**. 2. Rhetorical question. 3. **quisquam**. 4. **fierī**.

LESSON LXVI

before **by** **for** **from**

303. before is generally rendered by **ante** with the accusative after verbs of both rest and motion. Finer shades of meaning are expressed as follows: —

prae with the ablative is used after verbs of motion in the sense of *directly in front of*, so especially in the phrase **prae sē**: —

He carried a dagger before him, **sīcam prae sē tulit.**

prō with the ablative is used to denote *rest in front of*: —

They were on guard before the gate, **prō portīs in statiōne erant.**

ob with the accusative is used to denote motion *to meet, to the face of*: —

Death presents itself before our eyes, **mors ob oculōs versātur.**

apud (more rarely **ad**) with the accusative denotes *in the presence of* a large body of people, as **apud senātum**, *before the senate.*

cōram with the ablative denotes *in the presence of* an individual, as **cōram Ariovistō**, *before Ariovistus.* **apud**, however, is often used of presence before an official, as **apud praetōrem**, *before the prætor.*

304. **by** denoting *agency* is expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the ablative.

by denoting *means* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

by denoting the *route* or the *way by which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

by denoting the *medium through which* is expressed by **per** with the accusative (cf. sec. **103**): —

Cæsar was informed by letter and by scouts, **Caesar per litterās et explōrātōrēs certior factus est.**

by denoting *nearness* to a *person* is expressed by **apud** with the accusative, to a *place* by **ad** or **prope** with the accusative: —

I was sitting by Cicero, **apud Cicerōnem sedēbam.**
I have a villa by the Tiber, **vīllam ad Tiberim habeō.**

by in oaths and adjurations is expressed by **per** with the accusative, as *by the gods*, **per deōs.**

305. **for** is often expressed in Latin by the case-constructions without a preposition: —

Case-constructions often translated by *for*:
- Objective Genitive with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.
- Dative of Purpose or End.
- Dative with Adjectives.
- Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space.
- Ablative or Genitive of Price or Value.
- Ablative of Cause.

for meaning *instead of*, *in behalf of*, or *for the sake of*, is expressed by **prō** with the ablative.

for denoting *motion towards* is expressed by the accusative with or without a preposition: —

He set out for Rome, **Rōmam profectus est**.
He set out for the province, **ad prōvinciam profectus est.**

for of a preventing cause is expressed by **prae** with the ablative: —

I can not speak for tears, **prae lacrimīs dīcere nōn possum.**

for denoting *emphatic cause* may be expressed by **ob, propter,** or **dē** with their respective cases.

for sometimes introduces a purpose construction.

306. from is often rendered in Latin by the bare ablative, much more rarely by the dative (see Ref. 54). Prepositions are employed as follows: —

from meaning *away from*, of literal and emphatic separation, is expressed by **ā** or **ab** and the ablative.

from meaning *down from* is expressed by **dē** with the ablative.

from meaning *out of* is expressed by the ablative with **ē** or **ex.**

307. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ut prīmum.	*as soon as.*
omnibus antecellere.	*to excel all.*
cōgnitiōne dignus.	*worthy of acquaintance.*
rēs ad scrībendum.	*subjects for writing.*
aequissimō iūre ac foedere cīvitās.	*a state with most favorable treaty rights.*

For Oral Translation — Chapters 3 and 4

308. 1. Cicero says that Archias devoted himself to the pursuit of writing as soon as he emerged from boyhood. 2. At Antioch, once a famous city, he quickly excelled all. 3. The report of his talent was [1]noised abroad before his arrival in Latium. 4. I think that he set out for Italy from Asia by sea. 5. After his arrival all who were worthy of acquaintance were anxious to hear him. 6. One of the consuls was Marius, of whom it is truly said that he could furnish subjects for writing. 7. Heraclea is a Greek city by the sea. 8. After citizenship at Heraclea was given (to him) he wished to be enrolled at Rome. 9. For this reason he made public profession before his good friend Quintus Metellus. 10. I think that Lucullus had great influence among the Heracleans. 11. I hear that ambassadors have come with evidence for Archias. 12. By these ambassadors the Heracleans showed[2] that he had been enrolled. 13. I do not deny that that state enjoyed the most favorable treaty rights.

1. Translate by one word. 2. **dēmōnstrāre.**

LESSON LXVII

309. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

tabulārum fidem resīgnāre.	*to destroy confidence in documents.*
iūs cīvitātis.	*the right of citizenship.*
sē gerere prō cīve.	*to deport one's self as a citizen.*
ōrātiō et facultās.	*power of eloquence.*
mē quid pudeat?	*why should I be ashamed?*
parvī dūcere.	*to consider of small value.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 5 AND 6

310. What is there that can destroy confidence in the tablets of Metellus, by which the poet's right of citizenship has been established? Of course you will ask for our [1]census rolls, [2]just as if you did not know that Archias went to Asia with Lucullus; but since Archias was already then deporting himself as a citizen, there is no doubt that he would have been enrolled had he been in Italy at that time. But, Grattius, perchance[3] you consider this poet of small importance and you wonder because I am so delighted with him. Yet why should I be ashamed to confess that I devote as much of my leisure as I can to the pursuit of the very[4] arts which Archias cultivates? For from these my power of eloquence springs, and from this fountain I have drawn the precepts of the wise from my youth up.

1. Translate by one word. 2. See Ref. **42**. 3. **forte**. 4. **ipse**.

LESSON LXVIII

in **of** **on**

311. in is generally rendered by Latin **in**. It is often not expressed — as with the ablative of specification, before locatives and names of towns, before **locō, modō, silentiō, aestāte, hieme**, and before nouns modified by **tōtus**.

in denoting manner, if expressed at all, is translated by **cum** (see sec. **112**).

in with the added notion of *taking a part of, before the completion of*, is expressed by **dē** with the ablative, as *late in the night*, **multā dē nocte**.

in referring to an author's works is expressed by **apud** with the accusative, as *we read in Cicero*, **apud Cicerōnem legimus**.

For **in** in the sense of *in the presence of*, see sec. **303**.

312. **of** is usually the sign of the genitive case.

of denoting *source* or *origin* is expressed by the ablative with **or** without **ē** (**ex**) or **ā** (**ab**). See Ref. **15**.

of denoting *material* is expressed by the ablative, usually with **ē** (**ex**) or **dē**. See Ref. **15**.

of denoting *characteristic* or *quality* is expressed by the genitive or ablative. See Ref. **13**.

of denoting *cause* is expressed by the ablative (see Ref. **5**), as *he died of hunger*, **famē periit.**

of often represents the partitive genitive, but see sec. **73, 74**.

of meaning *selected from among* is rendered by **ē** (**ex**) with the ablative: —

Of this number was Africanus, **ex hōc numerō erat Āfricānus.**

of is often used in English where Latin uses an appositive, as *the city of Rome*, **urbs Rōma.**

For **of** in the sense of *about*, *concerning*, see sec. **297**.

313. **on** after verbs of *motion* is generally rendered by **in** with the accusative, after verbs of *rest* by **in** with the ablative.

on in phrases of location like *on the right*, *on the rear*, etc. is rendered by **ā** (**ab**) with the ablative.

on denoting *time when* is usually expressed by the bare ablative, as *on the third day*, **tertiō diē.**

on in the sense of *upon* is usually expressed by **super**, with the accusative after verbs of motion and with the ablative after verbs of rest.

For **on** meaning *about*, *concerning*, see sec. **297**.

314. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

litterīs prōdere.	*to hand down in books.*
ut opīnor.	*as I think.*
arte cōnstāre.	*to depend upon art.*
omnī ratiōne.	*in every way.*
sē ad litterārum studium cōnferre.	*to devote one's self to the pursuit of learning.*

For Oral Translation — Chapters 7 and 8

315. 1. Not all of the most distinguished men have devoted themselves to the pursuit of learning. 2. There are some [1]who without education show themselves of excellent mind and character. 3. But there is no doubt that something remarkable appears when education has been added to unusual natural ability. 4. On this (subject) [2]one may read many things in Cicero. 5. In one passage[3] of the oration for Archias he says that the pursuit of letters ought to be cultivated in every way. 6. Cicero himself did not hesitate[4] to confess that poets were sacred. 7. "Some pursuits," [5]said he, "depend upon art, but poets are filled with a sort of divine inspiration." 8. The Romans thought that among the older writers Ennius was easily first in excellence. 9. His virtues have been handed down in books. 10. In those times Lælius and Cato were considered very learned. 11. No recreation of the mind, as I think, is more humanizing than the pursuit of letters. 12. One of the seven cities which claimed Homer as a citizen was Smyrna.

1. Ref. **36**. 2. Latin, "it is permitted to read." 3. I.e. "place." 4. **dubitāre**, cf. Part I sec. **167**. 5. See sec. **232**.

LESSON LXIX

over to with

316. over of *motion* or *rest above* is expressed by **super** with the accusative or ablative. In the latter sense **suprā** with the accusative may be used: —

The eagle flies over the clouds, **aquila super nūbīs volitat.**

over in the sense of *across* is expressed by **trāns** and the accusative, as *over the river*, **trāns flūmen.**

over meaning *more than* is best expressed by **amplius**, as *over twenty cities*, **amplius vīgintī urbēs.**

over meaning *throughout* or *during* is expressed by **per** and the accusative, as *over a period of ten years*, **per decem annōs.**

Where **over** denotes *superiority in authority*, it is generally represented by some compound verb; e.g. **praeficere**, *to appoint over.*

317. to is often a sign of the dative, of the infinitive, or of a purpose clause.

to meaning *motion to* or *into* is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative.

to meaning *extension of space to* is rendered by **usque ad** and the accusative or by **tenus*** and the ablative: —

He reigns to the mountains { **ūsque ad montīs rēgnat.** / **montibus tenus rēgnat.**

to meaning *extension of number to* is rendered by **ad** and the accusative: —

The enemy were killed to a man, **hostēs ad ūnum occīsī sunt.**

to meaning *extension of time to* is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative, as *to the second hour*, **ad secundam hōram.**

318. with is often a part of a compound verb and is not to be rendered by a Latin preposition, as **reprehendere**, *to find fault with;* **assentīrī**, *to agree with;* **īrāscī**, *to be angry with.*

with reference to, **with regard to**, **with respect to** } are translated by **ad** or by **quod attinet ad.**

With respect to Cæsar, I have this to say, **quod attinet ad Caesarem, haec dīcō.**

For further consideration of **with** see sec. **111**, and Part I sec. **499.**

* Tenus follows its case.

319. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in caelum tollere.	*to praise to the skies.*
āversus ā Mūsīs.	*indifferent to poetry.*
nostrī māiōrēs.	*our forefathers.*
dē vītā dīmicāre.	*to fight at the risk of life.*
scrīptor rērum.	*a historian.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 9 AND 10

320. 1. Homer had few friends (while) living, but after his death seven cities claimed him. 2. Even Marius, who might have seemed indifferent to poetry, praised him to the skies. 3. With regard to that famous Themistocles, they say that [1]he loved to hear his virtues praised by poets. 4. Pontus is over the sea far from Italy. 5. Lucullus with a Roman army routed the forces of the Armenians. 6. A statue of marble was set on the tomb of the Scipios by our forefathers. 7. To the times of Cicero Latin was hemmed in by narrow boundaries. 8. Do you know how many historians Alexander the Great had with him? 9. What did he say when[2] he stood by the tomb of Achilles? 10. Lucullus drove the king from Pontus even to the extreme[3] limits of Armenia. 11. Those who fight for glory at the risk of life [4]are eager to have their exploits written about. 12. Over twenty-five ships of the enemy were sunk in that naval battle.

1. Follow the idiom of the text. 2. Latin **tum cum**, see sec. **184**. A. 3. **ultimus, -a, -um.** 4. Latin, "desire that it be written concerning their affairs."

LESSON LXX

321. Review the Grammatical Notes on the use of Prepositions, Lessons LXV–LXIX.

322. Review the idioms and phrases on the following page: —

aequissimō iūre ac foedere.
arte cōnstāre.
āversus ā Mūsīs.
cōgnitiōne dīgnus.
dē vītā dīmicāre.
exercitātiō dīcendī.
in caelum tollere.
in prīmīs.
iūs cīvitātis.
litterīs prōdere.
mē quid pudeat?
nostrī māiōrēs.
omnī ratiōne.
omnibus antecellere.
optimārum artium studia.
ōrātiō et facultās.
parvī dūcere.
ratiō studiōrum.
rem agere.
rēs ad scrībendum.
scrīptor rērum.
sē ad litterārum studium cōnferre.
sē gerere prō cīve.
tabulārum fidem resīgnāre.
ut opīnor.
ut prīmum.
ūtī prope novō quōdam genere dīcendī.

For Written Translation — Chapters 11 and 12

323. We can not hide this (fact), that all the best men, even the very philosophers who write pamphlets on the [1]worthlessness of fame, are influenced by the desire for praise. Many of our generals almost with arms in their hands have sought to perpetuate[2] the memory of their names by monuments and statues. Surely, if the mind did not look forward to the future and if we thought that all things would perish with ourselves, we should not torture ourselves with such anxieties and labors up to the last moment [3]of our lives. [4]Since then we are all so desirous[5] of immortality, we ought to preserve this poet who promises that he will spread abroad to the everlasting memory of the world the glorious exploits of the Roman people.

1. Latin, "the despising of glory." 2. **prōdere.** 3. Latin, "of life." 4. Latin, "on which account since." 5. **cupidus, -a, -um.**

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL NOTES

Ablative Case. Accompaniment with **cum** omitted, 106; after comparatives, 98; degree of difference, 97; difference between the ablative and genitive of quality, 72; estimation or value and price distinguished in construction, 110; manner, 112; person *by* and person *through*, 103; separation with or without a preposition, 94; time, 99; the *way by which*, 104; with **opus** and **ūsus**, 105; with verbs of plenty and want, 96.

about, how rendered, 297.

Accusative Case. Cognate accusative with intransitive verbs, 37; cognate accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective, 38; Greek accusative, 45; two accusatives, 43, 44.

Adjectives and adverbs distinguished, 17.

Adjectives used for adverbs, 16.

Adjectives with the genitive, 79.

after, how rendered, 298.

against, how rendered, 299.

Agreement. Relative with an appositive, 26; verb with a collective noun, 21; verb with two singular subjects, 22.

āiō, use of, 232.

among, how rendered, 300.

Antecedent of relative incorporated, 27, 119.

antequam and **priusquam**, 189, 190.

Appositive, agreement of verb with, rather than with subject, 4.

Appositive used for a relative clause or for a clause of time or cause, 3.

as not expressed in Latin, 7.

Attributive adjective, position of with two or more nouns, 11.

before, how rendered, 303.

by, translation of, 304.

Can — could, translation of, 279, 280.

Causal conjunctions distinguished, 163–165.

Cause expressed by a participle, 166.

Characteristic, clauses of, 150.

Clauses of limitation, 167. *a*.

Collective nouns, agreement of verb with, 21.

Comparisons made by **ut . . . ita**, 212, 213.

Conditions. Contrary to fact in indirect discourse, 255; contrary to fact with the indicative in the apodosis, 204; particular and general, 211.

cum, constructions with, 184.

Dative Case. Intransitive verbs with, 52; purpose or end for which, 63; **tibi librum dōnō** or **tē librō dōnō**, 54; ways of expressing possession, 58, 59; with adjectives, 64; with compounds, 53; with verbs of separation, 95.
dear, translation of in "Dear Sir," 33.
dīcō, use of, 232.

Emphatic cause, 113.
English auxiliaries, how translated, 271.

First periphrastic conjugation after **nōn dubitō quīn** and in indirect questions, 134.
for, how rendered, 305.
fore ut, when used, 235.
from, how rendered, 306.

Genitive Case. Adjectives with, 79; distinction between genitive and ablative of quality, 72; partitive genitive, when not used, 73, 74; predicate genitive, 78; preposition with its object used for the objective genitive, 70; price with **tantī, quantī**, etc., 110; subjective genitive of pronouns, 71; with **miseret, paenitet**, etc., 84; with **rēfert** and **interest**, 85; with verbs of judicial action, 86; with verbs of plenty and want, 87; with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 80.

in, how rendered, 311.
Indirect Discourse. Table of constructions, 231; questions in, 239, 240; verbs of saying with, 232.
inquam, use of, 232.
Interrogatives, 116.

licet, constructions after, 275, 224.

Manner, how expressed, 112.
may — might, translation of, 272–276.
must — ought, translation of, 291.

necesse est, constructions after, 291. *b*.

of, how rendered, 312.
on, how rendered, 313.
oportet, constructions after, 291. *a*.
opus and **ūsus**, construction with, 105.
ought, translation of, 291.
over, how rendered, 316.

Position of attributive adjective with two or more nouns, 11.
Possession, ways of expressing, 58, 59.
postquam, use of, 180.
Prepositions, 297 ff.
Present infinitive with past verb of obligation or possibility, 276.
Price expressed by the genitive, 110.

quamquam, quamvīs, 222, 223.
Questions in indirect discourse, 239, 240.
Questions, moods in, 118.
quid est quod and **quid quod**, 150. *a*.
quīn, principal uses of, 158.
quod-clauses of fact, 171.

Relative adverbs with the subjunctive, 151.
Relative clauses, construction of, 167.
Relative pronoun agrees with an appositive, 26.
Relative pronoun, antecedent incorporated, 27.

Saying, verbs of, 232.
senātus populusque Rōmānus with a singular verb, 22. *c.*
should—would, translation of, 285–288.
Subjunctive of characteristic, 150.
Substantive clauses with **quod**, with **ut** or **nē**, and with the infinitive, 172.

tamen expressed in Latin when omitted in English, 225.
Temporal Clauses, 179; with **antequam** and **priusquam**, 189–190; with **postquam**, 180; with **cum**, 184.
Tense-sequence, 133, 135–138.
the same as, translation of, 214.
to, how rendered, 317.
too followed by an adjective and an infinitive, 149.
Transitive compound verbs, construction after, 39.

ut and **nē** after verbs of fearing, 144.
ut, omission of, 142; use of in short parenthetical clauses, 143.

Verbs of remembering and forgetting, constructions with, 80.
Verbs of saying — **dīcō, āiō, inquam**, 232.
Vocative, position of, 32.

with, how rendered, 318.
with not always rendered by **cum**, 111
would, translation of, 285–288.

PART III

EXERCISES FOR SENIOR REVIEW

Based on Cicero's Orations and Letters

CONTENTS

PAGE

Disconnected Sentences and Continuous Prose for Senior Review — Thirty-four Exercises 107–146

Vocabulary to Part III 147–171

Synonyms and Contrasted Words 173–180

GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY 181–190

EXERCISES FOR SENIOR REVIEW

N.B. The numerical references are to the Grammatical Summary, p. 181.

EXERCISE I

A. 1. [97] After the consuls had been elected, Cicero prayed to[a] the immortal gods [118] that this choice[b] might result favorably to the Roman people. 2. Murena and Silanus were declared consuls for[c] the next year. 3. It happened [128] that one of these consuls elect was accused of bribery.[68] 4. Cicero defended Murena's cause, [d] [37] although the accusers blamed him for undertaking the case. 5. There is no doubt [124] that the orator wished to repel [e] hostile attacks on the fame and fortunes of his friend. 6. Cicero, [28] while he was consul, had proposed a law concerning bribery, [f] and it had been enacted by the senate and ratified by the people. 7. [84] Since this was so, Cato and many others said [87] that it was not right for [93] Cicero to plead the cause. 8. This is that famous Cato who, [187] several years later, committed suicide [101] at Utica; and for this reason he is called Cato Uticensis. 9. It is [63] the duty of a good consul, not only to see [120] what is being done, but also to foresee [120] what is [g] likely to happen. 10. Cicero will say in defense that nothing has been done contrary to law.

a. Latin, "from." *b.* Latin, "thing." *c.* in with acc. *d.* Latin, "though the undertaking of the case was blamed by the accusers." *e.* Latin, "attacks of foes from." *f.* Latin, "which, enacted by the senate, the people had commanded to be ratified." *g.* The first periphrastic often has this force.

B. For many reasons, Cicero's orations against[a] Verres, in which he gives [b]a full account of the latter's shameful acts committed against the Sicilians, are [125]worth reading; for it must be confessed [c]that he was[93] the most corrupt proprætor that ever ruled over a province. These orations, moreover, show us not alone the evils by which the Roman state was affected at that time, but also the patriotism with which the distinguished orator was filled. And he took the part of prosecutor with [9]such zeal [122]that Verres[d] decided[136] to go into *(voluntary) exile.

a. in. *b.* Latin, "in many words." *c.* Latin, "that he among all proprætors who have ever ruled over a province was the most corrupt." *d.* ille.

EXERCISE II

A. 1. Sulpicius [79]was exceedingly vexed [85]because Cicero [97]had forgotten his friendship,[70] and was defending Murena against him.[115] 2. It is a [a]serious matter to be justly[b] accused in *(a case of) friendship; and [87]even if you are falsely accused, [99]it ought not to be regarded lightly. 3. Murena was born of a distinguished and honorable plebeian family,[15] at Lanuvium,[101] a Roman [c]municipal town. 4. [40]If [d]my intimacy with you had caused me to withdraw from this case, the consul elect would (now) have no defender in that state in which our ancestors intended that [c]no one,[47] however low, should ever want[92] an advocate. 5. I should consider myself arrogant, gentlemen of the jury, [40]if [f]the consul had found me wanting. 6. I will deal with you, Sulpicius, [g]as if my brother, who is very dear to me, were [42]in your[h] place. 7. One part of the accusation, which is concerned with the life of Murena and which ought [94]to have been the most serious, is the most trifling.

* Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

8. Something has been said concerning Asia, but this province was desired[i] by him not for self-gratification, but [117]that he might serve as a soldier [2]under his father as general.

a. grave. *b*. Latin, "truly." *c*. See Part I sec. **29**. *d*. Latin, "your intimacy had removed me from." *e*. Latin, "to no one, the lowest, an advocate should ever be wanting." *f*. Latin, "I had been wanting to the consul." *g*. Latin, "not otherwise than if." *h*. The demonstrative of the second person, see 110. *i*. Latin, "sought."

B. It will be easily perceived [120]what sort of a man you are, Verres, when you are found to have robbed not only [a]your enemies but even [a]your friends [9]in a most shameless manner. Most open and especially hospitable to you[45] was the house of Heius [b]of Messana, which, before your coming, was so splendidly furnished [122]that it was no more [c]of an ornament to its owner than to the city. There was in the house a very ancient chapel in which were four statues [13]of marvelous beauty, the work of Greek artists; [d]and all these statues you took away. "I bought them," you say. But I ask [12]at how much Heius valued[120] them, and why he sold[120] them.

a. Latin, "among enemies," "among friends." *b*. In Latin express by the adjective, "belonging to Messana." *c*. Latin, "for an ornament to the master." *d*. Latin, "which all," cf. Part II sec. **27**. *b*.

EXERCISE III

A. 1. The Romans thought that dancing was[87] the lowest of all vices. 2. For this reason Cicero took it ill [35]that Cato had accused Murena of dancing.[68] 3. He said that Cato ought not thus rashly to accuse a consul of the Roman people against[a] whose conduct[b] nothing could[87] be shown. 4. The consul elect is worthy of defense[8] because he is a virtuous and upright man. 5. In dignity[16] of birth, integrity, and industry, they were equals; [c]and, depending

on this honorable record, they sought the consulship. 6. At the time [132] when this case was tried, [d] scarcely any one of the common people knew [86] what [e] a difference there once was [120] between the patricians and plebeians. 7. The plebeians [79] had long since forgotten the dissension [70] which [137] many years before had driven them to the Aventine. 8. [f] On the other hand the Quirites always knew [120] whether or not [g] the candidates for the consulship [h] belonged to the nobility.[68] 9. There was no doubt [124] that both Sulpicius and Murena [h] belonged to this order.

a. in. *b.* Latin, "life." *c.* What case follows frētus? see Gram. The Latin says, "supported by which ornaments." *d.* Latin, "there was scarcely any one of the common people who." *e.* quantum. *f.* sed. *g.* Latin, "those seeking the consulship." *h.* Latin, "were of."

B. But [117] to return to those statues which Verres took from the chapel; [87] though they were all very beautiful, yet the one of Cupid, made of marble,[15] excelled all the others.[47] It was the work of Praxiteles, the same artist that made [110] that famous Cupid which was at Thespiae,[101] on account of which [a] people go to visit Thespiae, for there is no other reason [71] for going there. C. Claudius, the ædile, once used this Cupid [17] while he [78] was decorating the Forum; but he was careful afterwards [78] to send it back, and thanked the citizens of Messana for [b] their courtesy.

a. Latin, "Thespiae is visited, for there is no other cause for visiting (it)." *b.* ob.

EXERCISE IV

A. 1. The steps [a] towards the acquisition of the consulship would have been easier, [41] if your grandfather and father had been prætors.[28] 2. There are some [86] who are thought worthy of the highest dignity,[8] not because of [b] nobility of family, but because of their own virtue. 3. [119] Did not Pompey

hand down to posterity an honorable name which he did not receive from his ancestors? 4. Cicero says [85]that if want of nobility (of birth) [c]had been an objection, approach to the consulship would not have been open even [115]to himself. 5. He was the first new man [86]by whom[4] the barriers of the nobility were broken down. 6. [d]It was his fortune [123]to seek this office [3]together with two patricians, Catiline and Galba; but he surpassed [82]the one in worth and the other in popularity. 7. [75]Let us leave off talking about birth, and let us [e]look into the other points. 8. [43]If you enter upon a magistracy, [99]you must live at the will of others and not according to your own (desire). 9. [84]Since you have fought battles, routed the enemy, and taken several cities, [82]some by storm,[f] others by siege, [g]it must needs be [123]that you are skilled in military affairs.[57]

a. Singular in Latin, and followed by the genitive gerundive construction. *b*. Express "nobility of family" by one word. *c*. Latin, "had been objected." *d*. Latin, "it happened to him that." *e*. Latin, "see the other (things)." *f*. Latin, "force." *g*. necesse est.

B. [117]To show that Verres did not buy the statues [9]in an honorable manner, but by[a] injustice, Cicero said [87]that Heius, [b]who always had an abundance of ready money, [c]was in no way forced to sell anything; (and further that,) [85]even if he had been in debt, yet he would not have sold those statues which had been in his family and in the chapel of his ancestors for so many years; [d]and that [c]he[50] could not have been persuaded[118] [f]to take even a great sum of money for these monuments.[47] [75]"Let us see," he says, "how great that sum was[135] which could[127] lead Heius astray." It appears [98]that all these statues were sold to Verres [12]for six thousand five hundred sesterces.

a. per. *b*. *to have an abundance of ready money* = in suīs nummīs multīs esse. *c*. Latin, "was compelled by no force." *d*. *and . . . not*,

neque. *e.* Latin, "it could not have been persuaded to him." The passive of an intransitive verb is impersonal. *f.* Latin, "that he should place greatness of money before."

EXERCISE V

A. 1. [78]While Murena[a] was lieutenant to Lucullus, he so conducted himself in a most important war [122]that he performed[b] many glorious exploits[c] [d]in the absence of the commander-in-chief. 2. These things [109]I would not hesitate to say [2]in the presence of Lucullus himself, for they are all witnessed to [10]in the public dispatches. 3. Lucullus has given him as much praise[61] as an ambitious commander could [74]while sharing his glory with another. 4. [119]Do you know [120]how many years[138] Murena was with[e] the army? 5. [134]After he had returned to Rome,[105] some thought that he ought not to contend [f]for office with those who had remained[127] at home.[101] 6. Who can doubt [124]that, [73]for acquiring the consulship, the glory of military affairs contributes much more than [g]that of the civil law? 7. Lawyers[46] have to wake up before light [117]to give answers to their clients, soldiers[46] to draw up the line of battle. 8. [32]The one must take heed [118]lest his clients, the other lest his camp, be captured. 9. We all know [87]that valor [h]in war won eternal glory for the Romans and compelled the world to obey their commands.[49] 10. [134]As soon as a suspicion of a disturbance is heard, all other arts become still.

a. See Part I sec. **18**. *b.* See Part I sec. **114**. *c.* rēs. *d.* Latin, "without." *e.* apud. *f.* Latin, "concerning honors." *g.* The redundant *that* in *that of* is not expressed in Latin. *h.* Latin, "warlike," agreeing with "valor."

B. It appears further from the accounts of Heius [93]that Verres bought the Cupid of Praxiteles, [a]a statue [b]praised to the skies by those who are [c]judges of these things,[57] for

sixteen hundred sesterces.[12] Great heavens! [d]it is no wonder [123]that he preferred to buy (it) rather than to ask (for it). For who of you[61] is ignorant [64]at how great a price these things are valued,[120] and [64]for how much they are wont to be sold? I have seen a small statue [c]of bronze sold for forty thousand[12] sesterces, and, [40]if I wished, I could name men who have bought[86] them for even more.[64] Is it not manifest, therefore, [93]that Heius [f]could not have been induced[90] (to sell) by the greatness[10] of the sum?

a. Latin, "which statue was," etc. *b. to praise to the skies* = ad caelum ferre. *c.* Latin, "zealous for." *d.* Latin, "it is not wonderful." *e.* Use adjective. *f.* Latin, "not to have been able to be induced."

EXERCISE VI

A. 1. In his oration for[a] Murena the orator speaks wittily of the civil law. 2. Formerly only a few knew [120]whether a thing could be done legally or not. 3. [41]If I had advanced sufficiently [74]in speaking, I would speak more sparingly in[b] its praise. 4. Cicero places the orator before the lawyer,[47] [85]because (he says) the latter[110] needs to know only the law, but the former must also have skill in speaking. 5. He adds [87]that there are two arts which can place men in the highest rank of dignity: one, that[c] of general; the other, that[c] of a good orator. 6. For by the latter[4] the ornaments of peace are preserved, by the former[4] the dangers of war are repelled. 7. [87]Although the other virtues are of importance, [75]let that one be the first in the state because of which the state itself is the chief of all (states). 8. [95]Would that all men, O Servius,[d] were [c]as eminent as you are in good faith,[16] modesty, and temperance. 9. [87]Though Cato says that the tribes of Asia [99]are to be despised, I will show that our wars with them have

been the most grievous. 10. Tell me, [119]did not Lucius Scipio, [97]after subduing Asia, assume the cognomen Asiaticus?

a. I.e. "in behalf of." *b*. Latin, "concerning." *c*. See Exercise v. *A*, note *g*. *d*. See Part II sec. **32**. *e*. Latin, "eminent equally as you."

B. Cicero feared [118]that Heius, [84]since he was chief of the embassy that had been sent[127] by the Mamertini [73]to praise Verres, would be silent about his private wrongs. However, [84]since he hoped that this man, who was regarded[86] as the most noble in[a] all his city, [94]would at least confess that the statues were not [101]at his house, [b]he had the courage [90]to present him as a witness.[28] [c]And in this hope he was not disappointed, for, though Heius praised Verres officially, he told the truth about the statues.

a. Latin, "of." *b*. Latin, "he dared." *c*. Latin, "and from this hope he was not cast down."

EXERCISE VII

A. 1. [84]Since Cato was [a]of the same character as I see that you are, he would never have set out for that war, [40]if he thought it [99]was to be fought against[b] women. 2. There is no doubt [124]that [2]by the crushing of Carthage the republic was delivered from the greatest dangers.[14] 3. [134]After Scipio[c] had driven Hannibal out of Africa, he was persuaded by the senate [118]to set out as lieutenant to his brother. 4. [88]If you (will) consider [120]what sort of a man Mithradates was,[135] you will place him before all the kings[47] with whom the Roman people have waged war. 5. Sulla, no inexperienced general [d]to say the least, [2]made peace with him and let him go. 6. The king, [2]after taking several years [73]to strengthen his forces, [e]set out for Italy itself [10]with a fleet. 7. Two consuls were sent to Asia, [117]that the one might pursue the king and the other protect the province. 8. The

disastrous fortunes[f] of one of them by land and sea greatly increased the power and fame[g] of the king. 9. The king [h]attacked Cyzicus with all his forces, [85]because he thought that that city [94]would be the door of Asia. 10. Tell me, [119]do you think that naval battle, when the enemy's fleet [i]was hastening to Italy, was an ordinary struggle?

a. Latin, "such . . . as." *b*. Latin, "with." *c*. Place first. For the construction, see 50. *d*. ut minimē dīcam. *e*. Latin, "sought." *f*. rēs. *g*. Latin, "name." *h*. Latin, "made an attack against the Cyzicenes." *i*. Latin, "was seeking."

B. [40]The Mamertini would never have sent the embassy [104]from Messana to Rome [129]to assist Verres, [a]had he not shown them public favors; not, however, without great loss to the republic and the province of Sicily. For the grain which they were wont to give[90] to the Roman people yearly he remitted for three years,[138] and throughout those years he levied neither a ship nor a soldier, [b]though they were due according to the treaty.

a. Latin, "unless he had favored them publicly." *b*. Express by a relative clause of characteristic which here denotes concession.

EXERCISE VIII

A. 1. [134]After the king had been expelled from his kingdom,[14] he [a]combined his forces with those[48] of his son-in-law. 2. He says that [85]if he[46] had had to speak about the exploits of our army, [b]he could have mentioned many very great battles. 3. Nor would the senate have thought[40] [c]it necessary to undertake this war [9]with such care, [40]if that king [99]had deserved contempt. 4. [132]When Lucullus had waged war against the king [138]for many years, the business [71]of finishing it was assigned[d] to Pompey. 5. [119]Do you know [120]what the Bosporus is? It is a place[86] [e]to which an

army cannot approach. 6. Mithradates, [87] though he was in extreme peril, nevertheless retained the royal name. 7. [87] Even if the enemy should be driven out of all his coasts, yet [f] I should not regard the victory as mine [133] until I should drive him out of life [14] itself. 8. The life of the king was regarded (as) [64] of such importance that the war was not considered finished [97] [133] until his death was announced. 9. Is there any one [36] who doubts [124] that Murena, as lieutenant, was (a man) of the greatest courage [64]? 10. [78] To acquire the consulship there is need not only of industry [11] [g] in the forum but also of many other things.[11]

a. Latin, "joined his forces to." *b.* **futūrum fuisse ut**, etc., because **possum** has no fut. part. *c.* Latin, "that this war ought to be undertaken." *d.* Latin, "allotted." *e.* Latin, "whither." *f.* Latin, "I should not possess the victory." *g.* Express by an adjective.

B. Cicero truly says [87] that Verres [a] did at Messana [101] as pirates are wont to do, who, though they are common enemies of all, yet have [87] some friends, whom [49] they not only spare, [86] but even enrich [86] with booty [10]; and those especially who have [86] a town in a convenient place, [b] to which their ships [46] must often go.[127] Such [c] was Phaselis of Cilicia, [d] a town once inhabited [4] by the best men, but which [e] was in a place so situated that pirates sailing from Cilicia often [f] touched there, and which they finally bound to themselves [47] by an alliance.[10]

a. Latin, "did so . . . as." *b.* Latin, "whither it must often be approached by their ships." Impersonal passive second periphrastic. *c.* Latin, "of this kind." *d.* Latin, "which town was," etc. *e.* Latin, "was so placed." *f.* Latin, "came to land to it."

EXERCISE IX

A. 1. What sea [a] has agitations of its waves equal to the disturbances that move the comitia? 2. It often happens [123] that the smallest breath of rumor changes everything.

3. Sometimes things are done without any apparent cause, [122]so that, strange to say,[130] [b]the people themselves wonder [120]at what they themselves have done. 4. Nothing is more obscure than men's wishes[6] and nothing more uncertain than the common people.[6] 5. Who thought that Catulus,[22] (a man) [13]of the greatest talent, wealth, and influence, could be overcome [4]by Manlius? 6. Not even [132]when this had happened, could it be explained[c] [120]why it had so happened. 7. [76]Don't impose more labor[61] on the soldier[47] than you have taken upon yourself.[115] 8. [64]Of how much value do you think it is, for (gaining) a reputation, [93]to be considered[d] fortunate[28] and brave[28]? 9. [34]Since we ourselves are delighted with the games,[5] [121]why should we wonder at[e] the ignorant multitude?

a. Latin, "has such great . . . as." *b*. Latin, "even the people." *c*. Latin, "be perceived." *d*. Latin, "to be held." *e*. dē.

B. As the pirates of Cilicia used[a] Phaselis,[17] so Verres the pirate of Sicily used[a] Messana. Hither all the booty was brought and concealed, thence everything was secretly sent to Italy. And in that harbor he had[b] a very large ship built[98] to carry[117] the plunder. In return for these favors,[c] exemption was granted by him [d]from all expense, labor, and military service, and, [e]so far as I know, the Mamertini were the only ones not only in Sicily but in the whole world [86]who were exempt[f] from these burdens.

a. The verb needs to be expressed but once. *b*. Latin, "saw to," "cared for." *c*. Latin, "things." *d*. Latin, "of." *e*. Cf. Gram. § 535. *d* (320. *d*); B. 283. 5; H. 591. 3 (503. N. 1); H-B. 521. 1. *f*. *f*. Latin, "free."

EXERCISE X

A. 1. Cicero says [87]that games delight men, [87]though they sometimes pretend not. 2. You led the Roman people

[122]to fear [118]that Catiline would become consul.[28] 3. His countenance was full of rage,[57] his eyes of crime, his speech of arrogance. 4. Surrounded[97] by a band of assassins, he used to threaten the republic[49] and the lives[a] of all the citizens. 5. [5]In consequence of these things, [113]you yourselves remember [b]what fear he inspired[120] in all good men[47] and what great despair seized the state. 6. [c]He said that the wretched ought[d] not to believe the promises[49] of the fortunate. 7. [117]That we might be able to discuss [e]these matters in the senate, a resolution of the senate was passed, [2]on my motion, [82]that the comitia should not be held the next day.[139] 8. And so on the next day, [f]in a full meeting of the senate, I commanded Catiline to speak, [83]if he wished to say anything concerning the matters [127]which had been reported to me. 9. Catiline said that there were two bodies of the republic, the one[32] feeble [18]with a weak head, the other powerful without a head. 10. [g]"The latter,"[110] said Catiline, "shall never want a head [2]as long as I am alive."

a. Latin uses singular. *b.* The Latin uses only one verb for both clauses, "what fear was inspired in all the good and how great despair in the republic." *c. He said . . . not*, negāvit. *d.* oportēre. *e.* Latin, "concerning these matters." *f.* Latin, "the senate being crowded," abl. abs. *g.* Latin, "to the latter a head shall never be wanting."

B. [a]Is there [111]any state so barbarous or any king so powerful [122]that he would not invite a Roman senator to his home[108]? [b]An honor which is paid,[c] not to the man alone, but primarily[d] to the Roman people. Yet when I, a senator, was at Messana, I was not invited publicly by the citizens, but [40]would have spent the night [e]in the public streets had not the splendid house of Basiliscus been open to me; [f]with whom I would have lodged [37]even if I had been invited by the citizens. No other state has ever done this since[g] the founding[97] of the city.

a. A question expecting a negative answer is how introduced? *b*. quī honor. Why not honor quī? *c*. Use habeō. *d*. Latin, "first." *e*. in pūblicō. *f*. Latin, "whither I would have gone to lodge." *g*. Latin, "from."

EXERCISE XI

A. 1. The senators were not severe enough [a]in their action, in part because [b]they had no fear, in part because they had [c]a great deal. 2. [d]Catiline[48] ought not to have been allowed to go forth from the senate alive. 3. In that same body he had replied to Cato [187]a few days before with threatening words. 4. I descended to the Campus [3]with a very strong body-guard, [35]because I knew that armed men had been led there by Catiline. 5. I wore a breastplate, not [117]to protect me, but in order that all the good might perceive in what fear and danger the consul was. 6. [e]Ought we to wonder that Catiline's desire [71]for gaining[f] the consulship was [52]of great assistance to Murena? 7. Now, since Murena so wishes, it remains [123]for me to speak on the charges of bribery. 8. It often happened [123]that Roman magistrates were convicted of bribery.[63] 9. [121]Who does not judge those men fortunate, who, removed from the pursuits of ambition, [g]lead lives of ease and tranquillity? 10. [117]To omit other matters, [h]what of the fact that Murena's accuser is his father's friend?

a. Latin, "in decreeing." *b*. Latin, "they feared nothing." *c*. I.e. "much." *d*. An apodosis to a contrary-to-fact condition with omitted protasis. The construction is impersonal. *e*. Latin, "ought it to be wondered." *f*. I.e. "acquiring." *g*. Latin, "have followed ease," etc. *h*. quid quod.

B. [121]What shall I say about the cross which he [a]caused [93]to be erected near the harbor of the city, on which he dared to hang [b]a Roman citizen [2]in the sight of many, and which still stands in your territory as a monument of

cruelty? This you ought to have destroyed and cast down into the sea [131]before you came to Rome [129]to praise Verres. Your city is the only one where[c] travelers, when they arrive[d] from Italy, see the cross of a Roman citizen [131]before they see [c]any friend of the Roman people.

a. **cūrō** with the gerundive. *b.* Latin, "raise." *c.* **ad quam.** *d.* Perf. subjv. *e.* Latin, "any one a friend."

EXERCISE XII

A. 1. Cato is so violent a prosecutor [122]that I fear his [a]high standing more than I do his charge. 2. [75]Let not the high standing of the prosecutor injure Murena. 3. Publius Scipio had been twice consul and had destroyed those two terrors of this empire, Carthage and Numantia, when he prosecuted Cotta. 4. [b]He was a man of the greatest eloquence, good faith, and integrity. 5. Since this oration [99]is not to be delivered by me before an ignorant multitude, I will speak [c]somewhat boldly about the pursuits of culture. 6. The Stoics affirmed that a wise man never repented of anything,[66] was deceived in nothing, and never changed his opinion. 7. Do you think that you would be wicked, [84]if you should do [d]something from a feeling of mercy? 8. [88]If any one confesses that he has sinned and begs pardon for his wrong-doing,[60] he[50] ought to be forgiven. 9. [87]Even if certain philosophers declare that all offenses are equal, yet we know that there are different kinds of wrong-doing and unequal punishments. 10. We read in Cicero that if he had not distrusted his own abilities,[49e] he would not have sought the aid of learning.

a. **auctōritās.** *b.* Latin, "in him was the greatest," etc. *c.* **paulō audācius.** *d.* Latin, "anything induced by mercy." *e.* Singular.

B. In his robberies Verres [a]made much use of the assistance[17] of Tlepolemus and Hiero, brothers, of whom one

modeled in[b] wax, the other was a painter. These, [84]since [c]they were suspected by their fellow-citizens [d]of having plundered the temple of Apollo, fled[97] from home, and, because they knew that Verres was [e]devoted to their art, betook themselves to him. [f]This happened [133]while Verres was in Asia, but [g]from that time on [h]he kept them with him and later took[i] them to Sicily. [j]And after they arrived there they found out [9]in some way [120]where everything[k] was, and whatever pleased them [l]was sure to be lost.

a. Latin, "used much the assistance." *b.* Latin, "out of." *c.* Latin, "they had come into suspicion to their citizens." *d.* Infinitive. *e.* Latin, "desirous of." *f.* Use the plural. *g.* illō tempore. *h.* Latin, "he had them with himself." *i.* dūcō. *j.* Latin, "whither after they arrived." *k.* I.e. "each thing." *l.* Second periphrastic.

EXERCISE XIII

A. 1. Cato, [40]if you[51] had had other teachers, you would be a little more inclined to mercy. 2. [a]It is said that the famous[110] Scipio [b]used to keep a very learned man at his house [117]that he might become wiser himself. 3. Although those precepts were the same (as these) that[c] delight you, yet he was made more merciful rather than more cruel. 4. [d]Lælius did not repent of doing the same thing; and who, I pray, was wiser than he[6]? 5. Do you think that any one was more courteous than your grandfather[6]? 6. When you were speaking concerning his surpassing virtue, you said that you had him as a model [73]for imitation. 7. Therefore, [117]to return [e]to the point with which I began, I ask whether these things seem done[97] contrary to law. 8. [88]If they were done, no one can doubt [124]that they were done contrary to law. 9. Do you think it ridiculous to leave that uncertain [127]which is doubtful, and to pass judgment on that which can be doubtful to no one? 10. [88]If

you can[f] prove that those (acts) were committed by Murena, I will admit that they were illegal.[g]

a. Use the personal construction. *b*. Latin, "had." *c*. Relative. *d*. Latin, "it did not repent Lælius to do," etc. *e*. Latin, "to that which I began." *f*. Future tense. *g*. Latin, "committed against the law."

B. Pamphilus,[51] a friend of Cicero's, had two cups [13]of great weight which he was ordered to bring to the prætor's house.[105] [a]When he arrived there the prætor [79]was resting, but the brothers, [134]when they saw him, straightway asked him where the cups were. Pamphilus showed himself greatly disturbed[97] and began to complain [87]that [b]he would have nothing left [64]of any value, [84]if the cups should be taken away. Then they said, "What are you willing to give us that they may not be taken from you?" He replied that he would give a thousand sesterces. So [c]Pamphilus was allowed to keep the cups.

a. Latin, "whither when he had arrived." *b*. Latin, "he would have nothing which was of any value." *c*. Latin, "it was allowed to Pamphilus."

EXERCISE XIV

A. 1. Many went out to meet Murena[47] returning[100] from his province. 2. It was an ancient custom at Rome [123]that men [a]of the lower orders conducted candidates [b]for the consulship to the Campus Martius. 3. [76]Do not [c]deprive the lower class[54] of men of this enjoyment. 4. [76]Permit those who hope for all things from us, themselves also to have something [86]which they can bestow upon us. 5. Do you know why they opposed the decree[49] of the senate [88]which was passed [2]in the consulship of Cæsar? 6. There is no law which can prevent him [d]from inviting his friends to his house. 7. Although this was not done by Murena at all, yet [e]when was there a time, either within our own recollection[189]

or that[f] of our fathers, in which this has not occurred[86]? 8. But what is the need of words[11]? [119]The senate does not think it a crime to go out and meet some one, does it? 9. A youth [13]of the highest rank[g] does not hire men for pay [73]to attend him. 10. Cato [h]says that [74]in choosing magistrates the judgment of men ought not to be corrupted by gifts of food, by games, and by other pleasures.

a. Express by **tenuis, -e**. *b*. Express by adjective. *c*. Latin, "take this enjoyment from," etc. *d*. A **quīn**-clause after a verb of hindering. See Gram. *e*. Latin, "what time was there ever." *f*. See Exercise v. *A*, note *g*. *g*. Latin, "place." *h*. *says . . . not*, **negō**.

B. Although Verres[a] used the eyes[17] of those brothers in his robberies, yet [b]he was so desirous of being thought knowing in these matters himself, that recently, after he was already [c]as good as condemned, when he was at the house of Lucius Sisenna, he could not refrain [d]from handling the silver plate which was set out in the dining-room. The house was full of distinguished men, [61]of whom some wondered at his boldness and others at his folly. But the slaves of Sisenna, [84]who had heard the testimony, [e]never took their eyes off from him.

a. Place first. Why? *b*. Express by **cupiō** followed by the infinitive with subj. acc. *c*. **prō** with abl. of the perf. pass. part. *d*. See Exercise XIV. *A*, note *d*. *e*. Latin, "nowhere cast down their eyes from him."

EXERCISE XV

A. 1. [121]Shall I seek supreme authority [74]by tendering pleasures to men, and by soothing their minds? 2. Although the Spartans reclined on hard oak [139]at their daily meals, they retained their [a]public institutions no better than the Romans. 3. [b]One ought to set apart times for pleasure[60] as well as for labor. 4. Therefore, Cato, do not [10]in too severe language censure the usages of our ancestors, which

[c]experience itself has justified. 5. Maximus gave a banquet to the Roman people to honor the dead Africanus. 6. A certain man was asked by Maximus [118]to spread a dining-couch. 7. He spread it [42]as if some common man were dead, and not as if the death of that godlike man Africanus were being honored. 8. Maximus thanked the immortal gods because Scipio was born in this republic [d]rather than in any other. 9. For it was inevitable[e] [93]that the sovereignty of the world would be there where he was. 10. The Roman people hate private luxury, public magnificence they love.

a. **rēs pūblicās.** *b.* Latin, "times ought to be set apart both for . . . and for." *c.* **rēs ipsa.** *d.* Latin, "beyond all others." *e.* I.e. "necessary."

B. [2]During the prætorship of Verres all the silver plate was taken away from Sicily. [a]The prætor claimed that he had bought it; but when Cicero demanded the accounts, that he might know [b]from whom and [64]for how much the former[110] had bought each (piece), Verres said that he had no accounts of those years when he had acquired the most things. [c]And yet, [41]if he were innocent, he ought to have accounts of his purchases and ought to present them.

a. Connect by a relative, "which the prætor claimed, etc." *b.* **unde.** *c.* **quamquam.**

EXERCISE XVI

A. 1. [78]For choosing a magistrate, men's minds ought to be influenced[a] by nothing except worth. 2. [128]As to your saying that men [13]of the greatest worth observe this course of action: why, pray, do you yourself ask any one [118]to assist you in your canvass? 3. Do you ask [118]that I intrust myself to you? Ought I to be asked by you or you rather by me? 4. Candidates used to have a slave [117]from whom they might ask the names of the citizens. 5. Cicero says that it is shameful [b]that a slave should know the citizens better than

you do yourself. 6. Though the candidates were thus instructed, they saluted citizens [42]as if they knew them themselves. 7. After they had been elected, they saluted much[7] more carelessly. 8. The enjoyment of games, gladiators, and banquets ought not to be taken [54]from the Roman plebeians. 9. That which I do, gentlemen of the jury, I do not only because of friendship, but especially for the sake of peace and harmony, and finally for the lives of us all. 10. [95]Would that all consuls were like Cicero,[45] who spent whole days and nights planning[100] for[c] the republic.

a. Latin, "enticed." *b.* Latin, "that the citizens be better known to a slave than to yourself." *c.* Latin, "concerning."

B. Cicero blamed Verres because he took everything he wished from Cælius of Lilybæum, and did not hesitate [90]to take a very beautiful table from Diodorus, who was made a Roman citizen by Sulla. But he rejoiced because Verres had robbed Apollonius of Drepanum [14]of all his silver plate, and thought that nothing better had been done by him. For Apollonius was very similar in character[16] to Verres himself, and, [137]several months [131]before Verres came to Sicily, had taken a great sum of money from some children of whom he was the guardian.

EXERCISE XVII

A. 1. Lucius Catiline did not so despise the republic [a]as to think that he would subdue this city with those forces [127]which he led out with him. 2. Do you [25]ask me why I fear Catiline? I fear him because this contagion of crime extends more widely than any one thinks. 3. [2]While I am consul, you will never be caught sleeping.[100] 4. I have taken care [b]that no one should fear him; but his forces, which I see here, these, I say, [c]are to be feared. 5. Nor is

Catiline's army so much to be feared as those who are said to have deserted that army. 6. Those whose swords[a] I have often restrained [101]at my house now wish a good consul to be deposed by your decision.[c] 7. If you shall betray [f]one of your consuls to them, they will have gained much[7] more by your decision[e] than by their swords. 8. [67]It is of great concern [93]that there should be two consuls in this republic [189]on the first of January. 9. That which I accomplished [g]in spite of the opposition of many, could never [94]have been done in ordinary ways. 10. Don't think that I am speaking empty words! Plans have been formed [60]for destroying the city and for [h]wiping out the Roman name.

a. Latin, "that he thought." *b*. Latin, "lest any one." *c*. Infinitive of the second periphrastic. *d*. Singular. *e*. Latin, "opinions." *f*. Latin, "the one consul." *g*. Latin, "many opposing." *h*. Latin, "extinguishing."

B. There was a man, Diodorus by name,[16] of Malta, who had for many years been living[79] at Lilybæum. [a]Word was brought to Verres concerning this man, that he had (some) very beautiful drinking-cups, made with the greatest skill by the hand of Mentor. [b]When he heard this, [c]he summoned Diodorus to him and demanded the cups. The latter, [34]since he wished to save his (property), declared that the cups were not at Lilybæum but that he had left them at Malta at the house of a certain relative. Then Verres straightway sent trustworthy (men) to Malta [117]to search for them.

a. Latin, "it was announced to Verres." *b*. Use relative to make connection, "which when he had heard." *c*. Abl. abs.

EXERCISE XVIII

A. 1. Cicero doubts [120]if it is right to call those [127]who are planning these things with reference to their country citizens. 2. Authority is not wanting to the republic, but

[11] there is need of a brave consul [a] to meet the schemes[47] of these men and to resist crime.[49] 3. He desired to deliver the republic to Murena in a sound condition [b] and for him to defend it from great dangers. 4. Do you not see, gentlemen of the jury, what other evil is added to these evils? 5. Everything which has been plotted [c] during [d] the last three years you know to be breaking out at this time. 6. [121] What shall I write of the man who formed the design of murdering the senate? 7. What place is there, what time, what day, what night, that [e] I have not been delivered from their secret plots? 8. I confess that I escaped not by my own prudence, [f] but much more by the providence [f] of the gods. 9. It is clear [93] that they did not wish to kill me [g] as an individual, but to remove a watchful consul from the guardianship of the state. 10. [h] And they would be just as glad, Cato, to put you out of the way too, [40] if they could; [i] and, believe me,[49] that is what they are planning (to do).

a. A **quī**-clause of characteristic. *b*. Latin, "to be defended (by him) from," etc. Expressed by the gerundive of purpose agreeing with "republic." *c*. Latin, "agitated." *d*. Latin, "this period-of-three-years." *e*. Latin, "when." *f*. **cōnsilium**, express but once. *g*. **meō nōmine**. *h*. Latin, "nor would they wish less." *i*. Latin, "that which, believe me," etc.

B. Diodorus, [100] fearing this, wrote [a] to his relative and ordered him to reply to those who [127] had come from Verres, that he [115] had sent those cups to Lilybæum [105] a few days before. Meanwhile Diodorus went away, for he [b] preferred to be away from home for a little time rather than, being present, to lose his silver. When he heard this, [c] Verres was so disturbed that he seemed mad beyond a doubt. He threatened the absent Diodorus,[49] [d] and affirmed that the latter [110] had stolen some beautiful cups from him.

a. Not dative. *b*. *preferred . . . rather* is expressed by a form of **mālō**. *c*. A connecting relative in Latin. *d*. Express by pres. part.

EXERCISE XIX

A. 1. They see how much talent,[61] how much authority, there is in you. 2. But they did not think they could crush you, [131]before they had [a]stripped you of the assistance[14] of the consul. 3. They hope that [83]if you are without a consul, the republic will be without guardianship. 4. Catiline is not to be feared, [55]provided good citizens are mindful that they are born not [53]for themselves, but for the fatherland. 5. [b]It is your duty, Cato, to keep as your ally a consul experienced [57]in military matters. 6. Since all civil power [c]over this affair is vested in you, gentlemen of the jury, you, in this cause, hold (sway over) the entire republic. 7. [40]If Catiline could pass judgment in [d]this case, he would condemn Murena; he would kill him, if he could. 8. [e]It cannot be that most honorable men will [f]pass the same judgment as that gladiator would have passed. 9. Believe me,[49] in this case you are passing judgment not only about the safety of Murena, but also your own safety. 10. [g]We have no means [86]of recovering ourselves [133]until new forces are prepared.

a. Latin, "seen you stripped." *b.* Latin, "it is yours." *c.* Latin genitive. *d.* Latin, "concerning." *e.* **fierī nōn potest ut.** *f.* Latin, "judge the same as." *g.* Latin, "there is nothing now whence we may."

B. In order in some manner to recall Diodorus to Sicily, Verres does not hesitate[a] to instigate a certain man [b]to say that he wishes [c]to bring Diodorus to trial on a capital charge. At first this seemed surprising to all, since Diodorus was a very peaceable man and far removed from every suspicion; but soon it was apparent [93]that all this was done because of the silver. Meanwhile Diodorus had fled to Rome and had told the affair to his friends, who were so aroused that the father of Verres, [d]in great alarm, sent a letter to his son [82]that he should beware[e] what he did concerning Diodorus.

a. See Part I sec. **167**. *b*. Not infinitive. *c*. Latin, "to make Diodorus a defendant of." *d*. Latin, "greatly terrified." *e*. Latin, "see."

EXERCISE XX

A. 1. "The enemy," said Cicero, "is not on[a] the Anio, — which at[139] the time of the Punic war seemed a terrible thing, — but he is in the city." 2. [128]The fact that there are some enemies even in that sanctuary of the republic, the senate-house itself, can not be mentioned without a groan. 3. [95]May the gods [b]grant my colleague power to crush Catiline. 4. I, fellow citizens, [c]in the garb of peace, [2]with you and all good men as assistants, will avert the dangers which threaten. 5. [88]If this curse of the state escapes[d] from our hands, madness will run riot on the Rostra, fear in the senate-house, conspiracy in the forum. 6. Then fire and sword, which [78]have long been preparing, will burst forth [73]to lay waste the land. 7. Yet all these things will be easily suppressed by the counsels of the magistrates, if the republic is furnished with suitable[e] guards. 8. Since this is so, for the sake of the republic, [6]than which nothing ought to be dearer to any one, I urge you [f]to provide for your safety. 9. I pray and beseech you, gentlemen of the jury, do not overwhelm Murena with a new (cause for) sorrow. 10. Murena seemed fortunate because [g]he was the first to bring the consulship to his ancient family.

a. **apud**. *b*. Latin, "bring it about (faciō) that my colleague may be able." *c*. Latin, "dressed in the toga." *d*. See Part I sec. **71**. *e*. **suus**. *f*. Not infinitive. *g*. Latin, "he had first brought."

B. Now the father of Verres had written [a]as follows: "Beware what you do concerning Diodorus. He has [b]many powerful friends at Rome. The affair has become notorious and is very unpopular. You are mad. [c]If you are not careful

you will be ruined by this one charge." Moved by this [d] warning and by fear, but not by shame, Verres did not dare to condemn Diodorus in his absence. [e] But for nearly three years the latter was deprived of home and province; and all, both Sicilians and Romans, [f] were convinced that there was nothing [36] which any one could keep, [g] if the prætor took a fancy to it.

a. Latin, "these (things)." *b*. Latin, "many and powerful." *c*. See Part I sec. **71**. *d*. Use connecting relative. *e*. Place in emphatic position. *f*. Latin, "decided." *g*. Latin, "if it was pleasing to," etc.

EXERCISE XXI

A. 1. [121] Shall he, overcome with tears and grief, implore your mercy in vain? 2. By the immortal gods, do not deprive him of all dignity [14] and fortune. 3. There are some [36] who think that the [7] more offices they obtain the [7] more honorable they will be. 4. If Murena has injured no one, if, [117] to say the least, [a] he has given no one cause to hate him either at home or abroad, let there be a place of refuge among you for his [b] modest merit. 5. [c] One who has been robbed of the consulship deserves pity, for [43] if you take away the consulship [d] you take everything. 6. Yet in these times the consulship itself can scarcely excite envy, for it is exposed to the attacks [e] of Catiline. 7. "When I was consul," said Cicero, "I single-handed [f] stood opposed to every danger." 8. Therefore I do not see what there is in this office that one need grudge it to Murena [50] or any one of us. [61] 9. A few days ago Murena saw the image of his illustrious father crowned with laurel. [g] Shall he now behold it robbed of every dignity? 10. If I were Murena, I should not wish to return in disgrace to those regions [127] from which I had recently departed in honor.

a. Latin, "he has been for hatred to no one." *b*. Latin, "modesty." *c*. Latin, "one deprived of the consulship ought to have pity." *d*. Change to passive. *e*. Latin, "weapons." *f*. sōlus. *g*. Cf. first sentence.

B. Though Verres said that he had not taken silver plate from Calidius, a Roman knight, but had bought it [12]at a great price; [40]yet his guilt would not have been less, even if he had presented his accounts as evidence. For [a]why was it, if he sold him the silver [b]of his own will, that Calidius complained at Rome, that, though he had done business in Sicily for many years, Verres was the only one who had robbed him? [a]Why was it, if Verres had really bought it, that he declared he would demand it back?

a. *why was it that* = quid erat quod followed by the subjv. *b*. Abl. to express *in accordance with*.

EXERCISE XXII

A. 1. Cicero asked the jury[a] if they thought that Murena ought to go into exile. 2. If he should go into exile, he would not know where[b] to go. 3. If he goes into Cisalpine Gaul, with what feelings will he behold [114]his own brother, to whom, a few days ago, he sent a messenger (to announce) his election? 4. Murena's friends are said to have flocked to Rome [129]to congratulate (him). 5. It would be most foreign to[c] your merciful disposition, if you should convict Murena of bribery.[68] 6. At Lanuvium, [d]a Roman municipal town, there was an ancient temple of Juno, the foundations of which are still standing. 7. All the consuls must needs sacrifice to this goddess [131]before they enter on their magistracy. 8. [55]Provided you acquit Murena of this charge, I promise you that he will be most hostile to this conspiracy which is now weakening the state. 9. There is no one of those who are now seeking the consulship, who, [2]in my

judgment, will be a stronger candidate than yourself. 10. I see that you will be [52]of the greatest advantage to me [e]in winning their good will.

a. See Part I sec. **462**. *b*. **ubi** or **quō**? *c*. Latin, "from." *d*. See Part I sec. **29**. *e*. Gerundive of purpose with **ad**.

B. [a]At the time when Sicily [b]was at the height of its power[16] and opulence, it is incredible [120]how many and what beautiful works of art there were in that island. All of these[c] were of ancient workmanship and made with the greatest skill. There was[d] no house, a little richer (than usual), in which these could not be found. Even if there was nothing else, there were cups and bowls of silver, which the women used [e]for sacred purposes. [f]Though fortune had taken many (of them), still many remained [133]until Verres came to Sicily. Now there is not even one.

a. Latin, "then when." *b*. Latin, "was flourishing in." *c*. Why not genitive? *d*. Where placed? Cf. Part I sec. **28**. N. *e*. **ad rēs dīvīnās**. *f*. **quae multa cum**.

EXERCISE XXIII

A. 1. Now for a long time [78]I have received [a]no letter from you, although I have written you[b] daily concerning my plans. 2. [44]I very much [11]need your speedy presence[c] in Rome, for I see that you will be [52]of the greatest service to me [78]in winning Cæsar's good will. 3. See to it, therefore, that you are in Rome on the first of January as you agreed. 4. But [d]be assured of this, that your old enemies [e]will be much disturbed when you arrive. 5. [5]In nothing am I wont to rejoice so (much) as [5]in the consciousness [f]of doing my duty, even if at times [g]I receive no adequate return. 6. Be assured that Cæsar's letter was pleasing to me, though it contained but scanty indication of his good will towards me. 7. I do not doubt that, if my great zeal for[h] you [i]has failed

to bind you to me, public interest will [j]unite us. 8. That you may not be ignorant of what I desire, I will write frankly as both my nature and our friendship demands. 9. I think you have never read a [k]letter from me before, except written by my own hand. 10. From this you will be able to gather with what[l] cares I am distracted.

a. Latin, "nothing of letters." *b.* **ad tē.** *c.* Latin, "arrival." *d.* Latin, "know this," future imperative of **sciō.** *e.* What is the regular periphrasis for the future passive infinitive? *f.* **officium.** *g.* Latin, "it is not replied mutually to them." *h.* Latin, "towards." *i.* Latin, "has bound you to me too little." *j.* Latin, "bind us to each other." Use the first periphrastic. *k.* Latin, "my letter." *l.* Latin, "how great."

B. [48]Whenever Verres saw any [61]engraved silver, he could not keep his hands off. Once a certain (man named) Philo gave the prætor a dinner at[a] his villa, and, because he was a Roman citizen, he did that which the Sicilians did not dare (to do); he set before him a bowl on which were beautiful figures. [b]As soon as Verres saw it, he did not [c]hesitate, [2]in the sight of the other guests, to remove it from the table. Afterwards, [42]as if he wished to show himself to be without avarice, he returned the bowl, [2]but with the figures torn off.

a. **apud.** *b.* Latin, "he immediately, when he saw," etc. *c.* Cf. Part I sec. **167.**

EXERCISE XXIV

A. 1. [48]Whenever Cicero was absent from Rome, [79]he used to expect a letter from his friend Atticus every day. 2. Once when it had been announced that slaves had come from the city, Cicero [a]called them and asked whether there was any letter.[61] They said no. 3. "What do you say?" said he. "Nothing from Atticus?" Terrified by his words,[b] they confessed that they had received a letter but [c]had lost it on the way. 4. If there was anything [d]especially important in that letter which you dispatched[e] on the 16th of

April, write (again) as soon as possible, that I may not be ignorant of it. 5. I never saw the youth [131]before he came to my house [129]to pay his respects. 6. I shall set out on the first of May that I may be at Antium on the third; for [f]there will be games at Antium from the fourth of May till the sixth. 7. There was no day, when I was at Antium, that[g] I did not know what was being done at Rome even better than those who were there. 8. Your letters show not only what is happening, but also what [f]is going to be. 9. Give that slave, whom I have ordered to hurry back to me immediately, a [h]good long letter, and [i]be sure to let me know the day on which you [f]intend to set out from Rome. 10. Since Cicero had [j]no leisure time and had to walk [k]for exercise, [79]he used to dictate letters [97]while walking.

a. Latin, "asked them called." *b*. Latin, "voice." *c*. Latin, "that it was lost." *d*. Latin, "worthy of mention." *e*. Latin, "gave." *f*. Use first periphrastic. *g*. Latin, "on which day." *h*. Latin, "weighty." *i*. Latin, "see to it that I know." *j*. Latin, "nothing of leisure time." *k*. Use **causā** with genitive.

B. Cicero says that after Verres had collected a very great number of works of art, so that he had not left even one to any one, he set up a great workshop at Syracuse,[102] and commanded all the best artists to be called together; and that there for eight months no vessel was made except of gold. [a]Who of you has not heard[86] about this workshop, and the golden vessels which were made there out of the spoils (which he had) gathered out of all Sicily? I would not venture to present this, [40]did I not fear that you would say that you had heard more about it from others than from me.

a. Latin, "who is there of you that," etc.

EXERCISE XXV

A. 1. A certain friend of Cicero's had a slave, named[16] Licinius, who ran away. 2. At Athens he lived as a free man (and) [a]from there he went into Asia; [b]while he was living at Ephesus, he was arrested as a runaway. 3. When you are at Ephesus, [109]I would like [c]to have you hunt up the man with the greatest diligence. 4. Bring him along [3]with you and don't consider [64]how much the man is worth, for he is really[d] of little value. 5. Cicero's friend is [e]so grieved because of the slave's rascality, that you can do nothing [f]that would please him more. 6. I don't know what to write you,[g] but when you [h]have arrived, we will discuss the things which will have to be done. 7. [95]Would that I had been less desirous of life! Certainly I should have seen much less of evil. 8. Neither the gods, whom you have worshiped most piously, nor men, whom[49] I have always served, have requited us for the favor. 9. For thirteen days I was at Brundisium at the house of Laenius, an excellent man. 10. [i]And he was not prevented by the penalty of the law [j]from offering me the right of hospitality and friendship.

a. **inde**. *b.* Express by participle. *c.* Latin, "that you hunt up." *d.* Express this word by placing *little* in an emphatic position. *e.* Latin, "affected by so much grief." *f.* Latin, "more pleasing to him." *g.* Not dative. *h.* A future perfect in force and so to be expressed. *i. and . . . not*, **neque**. *j.* Cf. Part I sec. **166**.

B. [a]How different from Verres in nature was Piso, prætor of Spain! The former[110] did not [b]care for his reputation [55]provided he could steal, the latter wished all Spain to know how much gold[61] he used for[c] a ring. For, having broken his ring while he [78]was exercising in arms,[10] when he wished a new ring to be made[d] he called the goldsmith into the forum to his official[e] chair, and, [2]after giving him

gold, commanded the man to set his chair in the forum and to make the ring [2]in the presence of all.

a. Latin, "how much did Piso differ," etc. *b.* Latin, "spare." *c.* **prō.** *d.* Latin adds an ethical dative, or dative of advantage, "for himself." *e.* That is, *curule.*

EXERCISE XXVI

A. 1. [a]I expect to set out from Brundisium on the 30th of April and to [b]go through Macedonia to Cyzicus. 2. [121]Shall I ask you [c]to come, worn out in mind and body? 3. [d]Be assured of this one thing: if I have[e] you, I shall not seem to myself [f]utterly lost. 4. I would have waited for a letter at Brundisium, if I had been permitted by[g] the sailors, who were unwilling to lose[h] the favorable weather. 5. [123]As for what remains, consider that I am moved more by your misery than by my own. 6. My brother, did you fear that I sent slaves to you without a letter [c]because I was angry? 7. I could not be angry with you[49] if I would, and I would not if I could. 8. That lauded consulship of mine[114] has robbed me[54] of children, fatherland, and fortune; [j]I would not wish it to take anything from you. 9. I did not permit my faithful wife to accompany me, that there might be (some one) [86]to protect our children. 10. Since my enemies are very powerful and my friends have deserted me, I have nothing [c]to hope for.

a. First periphrastic. *b.* Latin, "seek Cyzicus through," etc. *c.* Not infinitive. *d.* Latin, "know." *e.* Not present. *f.* Latin, "to have plainly perished." *g.* **per.** *h.* Latin, "let pass." *i.* Express by a participial clause. *j.* Latin, "I would wish that it should not have taken." Use **ēripiō** in both clauses.

B. In the [a]year 74 B.C. the sons of Antiochus, king of Syria, came to Rome with their mother, [b]in the hope that by the aid of the Romans they might obtain the sovereignty of Egypt, which they thought [c]belonged to their mother,

When they (again) set out for their ancestral kingdom, one of them, who was called Antiochus, wished to make the journey through Sicily, and so he came to Syracuse [2]when Verres was prætor. [d]Verres receives him with great honor and invites him to dinner, but the king soon finds that it would have been better if he had never gone to Sicily or entered the prætor's house.

a. Give the date A.U.C. Consult grammar. *b.* Latin, "with this hope that." *c.* pertinēre ad. *d.* Latin, "him received with the highest honor Verres invites," etc.

EXERCISE XXVII

A. 1. I set out on the 4th of August, on the very day that[a] the law concerning me was proposed. 2. [b]As I journeyed, deputations came to me from every side with congratulations. 3. When I came to the city, there was no one who did not come to meet me, except those enemies who could not conceal [c]the fact [d]that they were enemies. 4. Within the walls the steps of the temples, the streets, and the forum were filled with a great multitude which greeted me with loud[e] applause. 5. Modesty has prevented me from saying [2]in your presence these same things which I will write more boldly [2]in your absence. 6. I greatly desire [f]to be praised [10]in your writings, and [109]I wish [g]you to pardon [h]this impatience of mine. 7. Your writings so surpassed my expectations[i] that I desired to enjoy the excellence[17] of your talent as soon as possible. 8. Would you prefer to separate the history of the conspiracy from external wars or not? 9. [67]It is of much importance to me that you do not wait until you come to my consulship. 10. I am not ignorant how shamelessly [j]I am acting in that I demand that you commend me.

a. I.e. "on which." *b.* Latin, "I so journeyed that." *c.* id ipsum. *d.* Infinitive clause of apposition. *e.* Latin, "the greatest." *f.* Latin,

"myself to be praised." *g.* Not infinitive clause. *h.* Latin, "this my impatience." *i.* Singular. *j.* **faciam quī.**

B. The silver and gold which[29] Verres saw on the table when he took dinner [a]at the house of Antiochus [b]made such an impression on him that he could think[c] of nothing else except how he might rob the king. He therefore sent (men) [129]to ask for the most beautiful vessels which he had seen at his house, that he might show them, as he said, to his engravers. The king, [84]since he did not know [d]the man, sent them without any suspicion. But when, some days later, he sent men to bring them back, they returned (to him) empty-handed.

a. **apud.** *b.* Latin, "moved him to such a degree." *c.* Latin, "plan." *d.* Latin, "him."

EXERCISE XXVIII

A. 1. Perhaps my exploits do not seem to you to be [a]worthy of honor, but I ask that you praise me none the less. 2. You would break[b] the laws of history, if you should be moved[c] by personal regard more than the truth allows. 3. If you[50] can be persuaded [118]to undertake this, I will thank you [d]most heartily. 4. Cicero thought the conspiracy ought to be treated [e]somewhat freely in writing, because nothing was better adapted to the delight of the reader. 5. It often happens that things not desirable in experience[74] are pleasant [f]to read [74]or tell about. 6. Although you may have passed through [17]no dangers of your own, yet the very pity [60]for the calamities of others is a source of pleasure. 7. If I do not obtain this request from you, that is, if something shall hinder you, I shall be compelled to write about myself. 8. There are some who criticise (this) and say that it ought not to be done. Yet I should be following the example of [g]many eminent men. 9. They [h]must needs write about themselves more modestly, if anything is to be praised, and

leave out [f]what is to be blamed. 10. There is the added fact also that there is less [j]confidence in what is said, and less authority.

a. What case follows **dignus**? *b*. Latin, "neglect." *c*. **flectō**. *d*. Latin, "greatest." *e*. Express by the comparative. *f*. Latin, "in reading or telling." *g*. Latin, "many and eminent." *h*. Use **necesse est**. *i*. Latin, "if anything is to be blamed." *j*. Latin, "faith."

B. Segesta is a very ancient town in Sicily, which, they affirm, was founded by Æneas [100] when he was fleeing from Troy and seeking a new city. Therefore the Segestans think that they are connected with the Roman people not only by friendship but also by relationship. [187] Many years ago, when this town was waging war [3]with the Carthaginians, it was captured by storm and destroyed, and all things that could be [52]an ornament to the city were deported from that place to Carthage. Among these was a statue of Diana, [15]made of bronze, and perfected with matchless skill.

EXERCISE XXIX

A. 1. When the heralds [a]at the games place the crowns upon the victors, [47] they proclaim their names in a loud [b]voice. 2. When, before the close of the games, they themselves are presented with a crown, they summon another herald that they may not announce themselves as victors with their own voice. 3. Concerning these matters, [109] I would like to have you reply [118] to me what you [c]intend to do. 4. If weakness of body prevented you from coming to the games, I attribute it more to fortune than to your wisdom. 5. You might [d]have enjoyed your leisure wonderfully if you had been left alone. 6. Pompey dedicated his splendid theater in the Campus Martius in the year [e]55 B.C. 7. [121] Why should I tell you the rest? For you know what games are, and I doubt

not [f]that you were well satisfied to be deprived of them. 8. Provided you were reading something better[g] than my orations, you had not a little more enjoyment[61] than any of us. 9. [66]I am weary of my art, when I am compelled to defend those [97]who have not deserved well of[h] me, at the request of those that have.[i] 10. I bear your absence with a more contented heart, because, if you were at Rome, I should not be permitted to enjoy your society on account of my troublesome occupations.

a. Latin, "of the games." *b*. Latin, "great." *c*. First periphrastic. *d*. Use licet. *e*. Express as a Roman date. *f*. Latin, "that you were deprived of them with a very contented mind". *g*. potius. *h*. dē. *i*. Add in Latin "deserved well."

B. After the [a]statue of Diana had been transferred from Segesta to Carthage, it retained its former sanctity; for, on account of its remarkable beauty, it seemed, even to the enemy, worthy of being worshiped. Many years later Scipio took Carthage; and, because he knew that Sicily had been most frequently ravaged by the Carthaginians, [b]he called the Sicilians together and promised them [c]that he would take great pains to restore to each state what had belonged to it. At that time this very Diana, concerning which we are speaking, was returned to the Segestans. It was carried back to Segesta and was replaced on its ancient site[d] to[e] the great joy of the citizens.

a. Place first. Why? *b*. Latin, "to the Sicilians called together he promised," etc. *c*. Latin, "that it would be for a great care to him that all things should be restored to the states, which had been of each." *d*. Plural in Latin. *e*. Latin, "with."

EXERCISE XXX

A. 1. If you will [a]come and see me, I will teach you[b] — who [78]have tried to do nothing else for many years — what

it is to live like a human being. 2. I have written you this with [c]more words than usual, not because of my abundance of leisure, but because of love for[d] you. 3. Don't you remember that you asked me [e]to write you something of this sort, [f]that you might have less regret for having missed the games? 4. When I was talking about this very thing at my house, your[g] letter was given to me. 5. Shall I make him[h] king of Gaul or do you recommend another? 6. When you asked me to send you some one whom you might honor, it seemed providential. 7. I therefore send you Trebatius, than whom[6] no better man can be found; and I hope that you will receive him[i] with your (usual) kindness, for he is worthy of friendship.[8] 8. While you are in Britain, Trebatius, beware lest you be captured by the wild charioteers. 9. I am wont to wonder at this: that I do not receive [j]letters from you as often as I do from my brother. 10. I hear that there is no[k] silver[61] or gold in Britain. If that is true, I advise you to hasten home as soon as possible.

a. I.e. "visit." *b*. Emphasize by adding ipse. *c*. Express "more than usual" by the comparative degree. *d*. ergā. *e*. Infinitive? *f*. Latin, "that it might repent you the less to have missed." *g*. Latin, "from you." *h*. Make emphatic by position. *i*. A connecting relative. *j*. Latin, "your letters, as often as they are brought." *k*. Latin, "nothing."

B. Cicero had himself perceived in what honor the statue of Diana was held, when, a few years before, he [a]had gone there as quæstor. Then, although the Segestans had many works of art which were an ornament to the city, yet [b]this was the first thing they showed him. It had been set on a very lofty base on which was cut in large letters the name of Publius Africanus, and that he had restored it after taking Carthage. It was a very large statue with a flowing robe; arrows hung from the shoulder of the goddess, in her left hand she held a bow and in her right a burning torch.

When Verres saw it,[c] he commanded the magistrates to take it down and give it to him.

a. Latin, "was there as quæstor." *b.* Latin, "nothing was shown to him by them sooner." *c.* A connecting relative.

EXERCISE XXXI

A. 1. Cæsar did not wish [a]to leave Britain before he reduced the island to a province. 2. I should like to know what you are doing and whether you [b]expect to come to Italy this winter. 3. There are some who say that you will be rich. I will see later whether [c]they speak the truth or not. 4. The philosophers say that all are rich who can enjoy the heaven and the earth. 5. They accuse [d]you of pride, because they say that you do not reply to them [e]when they make inquiries. 6. [f]All agree that no one at Rome is more skilled in the law[57] than yourself. 7. If you had gone to Britain too, surely no one in that great island would have been more skilled than yourself. 8. I envy you because you have been summoned by that man whom others cannot approach. 9. Trebatius was very fond of writing letters, and, while he was in Gaul with[g] Cæsar's army, [h]sent many to his friends at Rome. 10. After Cicero[i] had been in his province only a few months, great longing for the city[60] seized him.

a. Latin, "to set out from." *b.* First periphrastic. *c.* Latin, "it has been spoken truly." *d.* Latin, "your pride." *e.* Express by participle. *f.* Latin, "it is agreed among all." *g.* **apud**. *h.* The Latin for "to send a letter to some one" is **epistolam ad aliquem dare**. *i.* Place first. Why?

B. Verres could not persuade the magistrates to give him the statue; and later, when the matter was discussed in the senate, all expressed the opinion that it could not be done, that they were bound both by the highest religious scruples and by their laws. Then he imposed burdens on the citizens, more than they could bear, and threatened that he

[a]would ruin the whole state, until finally they were so overcome by misfortunes[b] and fears that they decided that the command[50] of the prætor must be obeyed; but no one was found among the Segestans, [c]either freeman or slave or citizen or foreigner, who dared to touch that statue.

a. Latin, "would be for ruin to." *b*. Latin, "evils." *c*. Latin, "neither . . . nor."

EXERCISE XXXII

A. 1. I should like to have you write me as carefully [a]as possible about the whole state of public affairs, for I shall consider those things which I learn[b] from you as most certain. 2. Although[67] it is of great importance to our honor that I go to the city as soon as possible, yet I seem to have done wrong[34] in that I departed from you. 3. I approved of your plan not to sail before you recovered. 4. If, however, after you have taken food, you seem to yourself able to follow me, come quickly. 5. I sent you a slave [c]with orders either to come with you to me as soon as possible, or, if you delayed, to return to me immediately. 6. If you perceive that it is necessary to delay at Athens for the sake of recovering your health, do not follow me. 7. If you do that which will most benefit your health, you will most nearly obey my wish. 8. When all had been asked their opinion, I, being asked mine, thanked Cæsar with many words. 9. If you will see to restoring[98] my slave who has run away, I cannot tell you [d]how grateful I shall be. 10. He stole [e]a number of books before he ran away, and now I hear that the fellow is in your province.

a. Express by quam with the superlative. *b*. Fut. perf. *c*. Participle, "ordered." *d*. Latin, "how pleasing it will be to me." How is future time expressed in an indirect question? *e*. I.e. "many."

B. Since [60]no one among the Segestans could be persuaded to touch the statue, certain barbarians, ignorant of

the whole matter, were brought from Lilybæum, and these took it down. After the statue was removed, Verres thought that [a]the people would forget the whole business, if he should remove the empty base also, (which stood) as[b] a witness of his crime. And so, by his command, the base was taken away; [c]but by this act it seemed to all that Verres [d]had done violence not only to religion, but also to the memory of Scipio, whose exploits and valor were commemorated by this monument.

a. Latin, "men would come into forgetfulness of." *b.* **tamquam**. *c.* **quō quidem factō**. *d.* I.e. "had violated."

EXERCISE XXXIII

A. 1. After [a]word had been brought to me concerning the death of your daughter Tullia, I took it much to heart. 2. If I had been present, I would not have failed you and I would have expressed my grief to you in person. 3. Your friends, who are themselves affected with equal sorrow, seem more [b]in need of consolation than able to offer it to others. 4. These things I write you, not because I think you ignorant (of them), but because, perhaps, you perceive them less (clearly) [c]on account of grief. 5. Consider after what manner fortune has dealt[d] with us up to this time. 6. The things which have been taken away from us ought to be no less dear to men than their children. 7. What was there at this time that could greatly [c]attract her to life? 8. Returning from Asia, when I was sailing [f]from Ægina to Megara, I saw the ruins of many cities, which, a few years before, had been most flourishing. 9. [41]If your daughter had not [g]met her death at this time, she[46] would nevertheless have had to die a few years later, since she was born mortal.[h] 10. There is no grief which length of time does not lessen and soften.

a. Latin, "it was announced to me." *b*. Latin, "to need." *c*. Latin, "hindered by." *d*. Latin, "done." *e*. Latin, "invite her for living." *f*. Construe "Aegina" as the name of a country, "Megara" as the name of a town. *g*. Latin says "to meet her day," obīre suum diem. *h*. homō.

B. While he was at Rome Cicero [a]had been informed that the Syracusans were friendly to Verres, and so, when he came to Syracuse, he expected no aid[61] from them either publicly or privately, and [b]spent his time with the Roman citizens at that place. But unexpectedly Heraclius, a distinguished man, came to him, and said that he had come, at the command of the senate, to ask him and his brother to come to the senate-house. At first [c]they were in doubt what to do; but they quickly decided that that meeting and place ought not to be avoided by them. When they entered the senate-house, the senators rose to salute them.

a. Latin, "had been made more certain." *b*. Latin, "was with." *c*. Latin, "it was doubtful to them."

EXERCISE XXXIV

A. 1. Don't forget that you are Cicero, and that you are a man who [a]is wont to give advice to others. 2. Do not imitate poor doctors, who, [b]when others are sick, profess to have a knowledge of medicine, but cannot cure themselves. 3. I am ashamed to write more to you on this subject, therefore I will [c]close. 4. On the 23d of May I met Marcellus of Athens, and spent that day there that I might be with him. 5. [d]Two days after, when I had it in mind to set out from Athens, a friend of his came to me about the tenth hour of the night. 6. He announced to me that Marcellus had received two wounds, one in the body, the other in the head; yet, that he hoped he could live. 7. He said that he had been sent to me by Marcellus to announce this and to ask that I send him[68] doctors. 8. I set out with doctors [c]at

daybreak, but when I was not far away a boy met me with a letter in which [f]it was stated that Marcellus had [g]met his fate a little before light. 9. The slaves had fled, greatly terrified because their master had been killed. 10. I saw to giving him a respectable[h] funeral before I departed from the city.

a. In Latin the verb will be in the second person, as the relative agrees in person with "you." *b*. Latin, "in the diseases of others." *c*. Latin, "make an end of writing." *d*. Latin, "after the third day of that day." *e*. Latin, "at the first light." *f*. Latin, "it had been written." *g*. See Exercise XXXIII. *A*, note *g*. *h*. Latin, "sufficiently large."

B. After Cicero and his brother were seated, one of the senators, who seemed to surpass the others in age and authority, said that the senate and people of Syracuse took it ill [35]that Cicero, when he had used letters and testimony from all the other states of Sicily, had done nothing [a]of the kind in that state. Cicero replied that ambassadors from the Syracusans were not present at Rome, in that meeting of the Sicilians when his[b] assistance was asked, and that he could not demand that [c]any decree should be passed against Verres in that senate-house where he saw (standing) a statue of Verres.

a. ēius modī. *b*. Latin, "from him." *c*. Latin, "anything should be decreed against."

VOCABULARY TO PART III

NOTE. — When more than one Latin equivalent is given, consult the list of synonyms (p. 173). If the words are not listed there, the differences in meaning are of minor importance.

A

a (an), generally not translated.
ability, talent, *ingenium, -ī*, N.
able, see **can**.
about, adv. *circiter*.
about, prep. see **concerning**.
abroad, in military service, *mīlitiae*, loc. case.
absence, *absentia, -ae*, F.
absent, a. *absēns, -entis*.
absent: be —, *absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus*.
abundance, *abundantia, -ae*, F.
accompany, *prōsequor*, 3, *-secūtus*.
accomplish, *perficiō*, 3, *-fēcī, -fectus*.
according to, *ē, ex*, prep. with the abl.
account, n. *tabula, -ae*, F.
account: give an —, *explicō*, 1.
accusation, *accūsātiō, -nis*, F.
accuse, *accūsō*, 1.
accuser, *accūsātor, -ōris*, M.
acquire, *adipīscor*, 3, *adeptus; parō*, 1.
acquit, *līberō*, 1.
act, deed, *factum, -ī*, N.
adapted, see **suited**.
add, *addō*, 3, *-didī, -ditus;* **be added**, *accēdō*, 3, *-cessī, -cessus*.
admit, concede, *concēdō*, 3, *-cessī, -cessus*.
advance, *prōficiō*, 3, *-fēcī, -fectus*.
advantage, *ūsus, -ūs*, M.
advice: give —, *praecipiō*, 3, *-cēpī, -ceptus*.
advocate, n. *patrōnus, -ī*, M.
aedile, *aedīlis, -is*, M.
Aegina, *Aegīna, -ae*, F.
Aeneas, *Aenēās, -ae*, M.
affect, *afficiō*, 3, *-fēcī, -fectus*.
affirm, *adfīrmō*, 1.
Africa, *Āfrica, -ae*, F.
Africanus, *Āfricānus, -ī*, M.
after, *post*, prep. (with the acc.) and adv.; conj. *postquam*.
after what manner, *quem ad modum*.
afterwards, *posteā, post*.
against, *contrā, in*, preps. with the acc.
age, *aetās, -tātis*, F.
agitate, *agitō*, 1.
agitation, *agitātiō, -nis*, F.
ago, adv. *abhinc*.

agree, fix, decide, *cōnstituō*, 3, *-stituī, -stitūtus.*
agreed: be —, be established, *cōnstat*, 1, *cōnstitit, cōnstātūrum.*
aid, n. *adiūmentum, -ī*, N.; *auxilium, -ī*, N.
alarmed: greatly —, *perterritus, -a, -um.*
alive, living, *vīvus, -a, -um.*
all, *omnis, -e ; tōtus, -a, -um.*
alliance, *societās, -tātis*, F.
allot, *dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.*
allow, see admit.
allowed: be —, *licet*, 2, *licuit, licitum est.*
ally, n. *socius, -ī*, M.
alone, *sōlus, -a, -um ;* adv. *sōlum.*
already, *iam.*
also, *etiam, quoque.*
although, *cum, quamquam, licet*, etc. Often expressed by a participle.
always, *semper, numquam nōn.*
ambassador, *lēgātus, -ī*, M.
ambition, *ambitiō, -nis*, F.
ambitious, *ambitiōsus, -a, -um.*
among, *inter, apud*, preps. with the acc.; *in*, prep. with the abl.
ancestors, *māiōrēs, -um*, M.
ancestral, *patrius, -a, -um.*
ancient, *antīquus, -a, -um ; vetus, -eris ;* very ancient, *perantīquus, -a, -um ; pervetus, -eris.*
and, *atque* or *ac ; et ; que.*
and so, *itaque.*
anger, *īrācundia, -ae*, F.
angry: be —, *īrāscor*, 3, *īrātus.*
Anio, *Aniō, -ēnis*, M.
announce, *nūntiō*, 1; *praedicō*, 1.
Antiochus, *Antiochus, -ī*, M.
Antium, *Antium, -ī*, N.
any, *ūllus, -a, -um.*
any one, *quisquam ;* anything, *quidquam.* Also *quis, quid.*
Apollonius, *Apollōnius, -ī*, M.
apparent, *apertus, -a, -um ; perspicuus, -a, -um.*
appear, *appāreō*, 2, *-uī, -itūrus.*
applause, *plausus, -ūs*, M.
approach, n. *aditus, -ūs*, M.
approach, v. *adeō*, 4, *-īī, -itus.*
approve, *approbō*, 1.
armed men, *armātī, -ōrum*, M.
arms, *arma, -ōrum*, N.
army, *exercitus, -ūs*, M.
aroused, *commōtus, -a, -um.*
arrest, *comprehendō*, 3, *-hendī, -hēnsus.*
arrival, *adventus, -ūs*, M.
arrive, *perveniō*, 4, *-vēnī, -ventus.*
arrogance, *adrogantia, -ae*, F.
arrogant, *superbus, -a, -um.*
arrow, *sagitta, -ae*, F.
art, *ars, -tis*, F.; work of art, *artificium, -ī*, N.
artist, *artifex, -icis*, M. and F.
as, *prō*, prep. with the abl.; adv. *ut ;* as possible, *quam* with the superl.
as if, *ac sī, quasi, quam sī*, etc.; sometimes *nōn secus ac sī*, not otherwise than if.
as much as, *tantum . . . quantum.*
as often as, *totiēns . . . quotiēns.*
as soon as, *simul atque.*
as soon as possible, *quam prīmum.*
ashamed: be —, *pudet*, 2, *puduit* or *puditum est.*
Asia, *Asia, -ae*, F.
Asiatic, *Asiāticus, -a, -um.*

Asiaticus, *Asiāticus*, *-ī*, M.
ask, *rogō*, 1 ; *quaerō*, 3, *-sīvī*, *-sītus* ; *petō*, 3, *-īvī* (*-iī*), *-ītus* ; *ōrō*, 1.
assassin, *sīcārius*, *-ī*, M.
assist, *adiuvō*, 1, *-iūvī*, *-iūtus*.
assistance, *adiūmentum*, *-ī*, N. ; *auxilium*, *-ī*, N.
assistant, *adiūtor*, *-ōris*, M.
assume, *adsūmō*, 3, *-sūmpsī*, *-sūmptus*.
at, usually expressed by the locative or the abl. ; **at the house of**, *apud*, prep. with the acc.
at all, *omnīnō*.
at the least, *saltem*.
at the time, *tum*.
at times, **sometimes**, *quandō*.
Athenians, *Athēniēnsēs*, *-ium*, M. or F.
Athens, *Athēnae*, *-ārum*, F.
attack, n. *impetus*, *-ūs*, M.
attack, v. *impetum facere*.
attend upon, **escort**, *sector*, 1.
attract, *invītō*, 1.
attribute, *tribuō*, 3, *-uī*, *-ūtus*.
August: **of —**, *Sextīlis*, *-e*.
authority, *auctōritās*, *-tātīs*, F. ; *imperium*, *-ī*, N.
avarice, *avāritia*, *-ae*, F.
Aventine, *Aventīnus*, *-ī*, M.
avert, *dēpellō*, 3, *-pulī*, *-pulsus*.
avoid, *vītō*, 1.
away: **be —**, **be distant**, see **absent**.

B

band, *manus*, *-ūs*, F.
banquet, see **meal**.
barbarian, *barbarus*, *-ī*, M.
barbarous, *barbarus*, *-a*, *-um*.
barrier, *claustrum*, *-trī*, N.
base, a. *turpis*, *-e*.
base, n. *basis*, *-is*, F.
Basiliscus, *Basiliscus*, *-ī*, M.
battle, *proelium*, *-ī*, N. ; **line of battle**, *aciēs*, *-ēī*, F.
be, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus* ; **be away**, *absum* ; **be present**, *adsum* ; **be different**, *intersum* ; **be wanting**, *dēsum*.
bear, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*.
beautiful, *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*.
beauty, *venustās*, *-tātis*, F. ; *pulchritūdō*, *-inis*, F.
because, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*.
because of, *causā* or *grātiā* with the gen. ; *propter*, prep. with the acc.
become, *fīō*, *fierī*, *factus*.
become still, *conticēscō*, 3, *-ticuī*, —.
before, adv. *ante*, *prius* ; **before**, prep. *ante* with the acc. ; **before**, conj. *priusquam*, *antequam* ; **in the presence of**, *apud*, prep. with the acc.
beg, see **ask**.
begin, *ineō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itus* ; *ōrdior*, 4, *ōrsus* ; *īnstituō*, 3, *-stituī*, *-stitūtus* ; *incipiō*, 3, *-cēpī*, *-ceptus*.
behold, *āspiciō*, 3, *-spexī*, *-spectus* ; *īnspectō*, 1.
believe, *crēdō*, 3, *-didī*, *-ditus*.
belong to, *esse* with pred. gen.
benefit, **profit**, *condūcō*, 3, *-dūxī*, *-ductus*.
beseech, *obsecrō*, 1.
bestow, *tribuō*, 3, *-uī*, *-ūtus*.
betake one's self, *mē cōnferō*, *-ferre*, *-tulī*, *-lātus*.

betray, *trādō*, 3, *-didī*, *-ditus*.
better, adv. *melius*, *rēctius*.
beware, *caveō*, 2, *cāvī*, *cautus*; *videō*, 2, *vīdī*, *vīsus*.
beyond all others, *potissimum*.
bind, **accept**, **adopt**, *āscīscō*, 3, *-scīvī*, *-scītus*. See also **hold**.
birth, *genus*, *-eris*, N.
bitter, *acerbus*, *-a*, *-um*.
blame, v. *reprehendō*, 3, *-endī*, *-ēnsus*.
body, *corpus*, *-oris*, N.
body of men, **order**, *ōrdō*, *-inis*, M.
body-guard, *praesidium*, *-ī*, N.
boldly, *audācter*.
boldness, *audācia*, *-ae*, F.
booty, *praeda*, *-ae*, F.
born: **be —**, *nāscor*, 3, *nātus*.
bow, *arcus*, *-ūs*, M.
bowl, *patera*, *-ae*, F.
brave, *fortis*, *-e*.
break, *frangō*, 3, *frēgī*, *frāctus*.
break down, *refringō*, 3, *-frēgī*, *-frāctus*.
break out, *ērumpō*, 3, *-rūpī*, *-ruptus*.
breastplate, *lōrīca*, *-ae*, F.
breath, *aura*, *-ae*, F.
bribery, *largītiō*, *-nis*, F.; *ambitus*, *-ūs*, M.
bring along, **conduct**, *dēdūcō*, 3, *-dūxī*, *-ductus*.
bring back, *referō*, *-ferre*, *rettulī*, *-lātus*.
bring to, *adferō*, *adferre*, *attulī*, *adlātus* (*all-*); also *dēferō*.
Britain, *Britannia*, *-ae*, F.
bronze, *aes*, *aeris*, N.
bronze: **of —**, *aēneus*, *-a*, *-um*.
brother, *frāter*, *-tris*, M.
Brundisium, *Brundisium*, *-ī*, N.
burden, **civic duty**, *mūnus*, *-eris*, N.; *onus*, *oneris*, N.
burial, *sepultūra*, *-ae*, F.
burning, *ārdēns*, *-entis*. [*-ruptus*.
burst forth, *prōrumpō*, 3, *-rūpī*,
business, *negōtium*, *-ī*, N.
but, *autem* (postpositive); *vērum*; *sed*, the usual word; *at*, emphatic, in argument or transition.
buy, *emō*, 3, *ēmī*, *ēmptus*.
by, of a person, *ā* or *ab* with the abl.; otherwise abl. without prep.

C

C. = **Gaius**, *Gāius*, *-ī*, M.
Caelius, *Caelius*, *-ī*, M.
Caesar, *Caesar*, *-aris*, M.
calamity, *cāsus*, *-ūs*, M.
Calidius, *Calidius*, *-ī*, M.
call, *appellō*, 1; *nōminō*, 1; *vocō*, 1.
call together, *convocō*, 1.
camp, *castra*, *-ōrum*, N.
campus, *campus*, *-ī*, M.
can, **able**, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, —.
candidate, *candidātus*, *-ī*, M.
canvass, n. *petītiō*, *-nis*, F.
capital, a. *capitālis*, *-e*; **a capital charge**, *rēs capitālis*.
capture, see **take**.
care, n. *cūra*, *-ae*, F.
careful, *dīligēns*, *-entis*.
careful: **be —**, **look out**, *caveō*, 2, *cāvī*, *cautus*.
carelessly, *neglegenter*.
carry, *portō*, 1; **carry back**, *reportō*.
Carthage, *Karthāgō*, *-inis*, F.
Carthaginians, *Poenī*, *-ōrum*, M.
case, **cause**, *causa*, *-ae*, F.
cast down, **cast from**, **disappoint**, *dēiciō*, 3, *-iēcī*, *-iectus*.

catch, see surprise.
Catiline, *Catilīna, -ae,* M.
Cato, *Catō, -nis,* M.
cause, see case.
censure, see blame.
certain, *certus, -a, -um.*
certain one, *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam.*
certainly, *certē.*
chair, *sella, -ae,* F.; official chair, *sella curūlis.*
change, v. *commūtō,* 1; *mūtō,* 1.
chapel, *sacrārium, -ī,* N.
character, plur. of *mōs, mōris,* M.
charge, n. *crīmen, crīminis,* N.
charioteer, *essedārius, -ī,* M.
chief, *prīnceps, -cipis,* M. or as adj.
children, *līberī, -ōrum,* M.
choose, *dēligō,* 3, *-lēgī, -lēctus.*
Cicero, *Cicerō, -ōnis,* M.
Cilicia, *Cilicia, -ae,* F.
Cisalpine, *Cisalpīnus, -a, -um.*
citizen, *cīvis, -is,* M. and F.
city, *urbs, urbis,* F.; *cīvitās, -tātis,* F.
civil, *cīvīlis, -e.*
civil authority, *potestās, -tātis,* F.
class, kind, *genus, -eris,* N.
Claudius, *Claudius, -ī,* M.
clear: be —, be established, *cōnstat,* 1, impers.
client, *cōnsultor, -ōris,* M.
close, n. *missiō, -nis,* F.
coast, region, *ōra, -ae,* F.
coast by, sail around, *circumvehor,* 3, *-vectus.*
coast-region, *ōra, -ae,* F.
cognomen, *cōgnōmen, -minis,* N.
colleague, *conlēga, -ae,* M.
collect, *colligō,* 3, *-lēgī, -lēctus.*
come, *veniō,* 4, *vēnī, ventus;* come to meet, *obviam veniō.*
coming, arrival, *adventus, -ūs,* M.
comitia, *comitia, -ōrum,* N.
command, n. *imperium, -ī,* N.; at the command, *iussū.*
command, v. *imperō,* 1; *iubeō,* 2, *iussī, iussus; mandō,* 1.
commemorate, *celebrō,* 1.
commend, *ōrnō,* 1.
commit (of a crime), *ēdō,* 3, *-didī, -ditus; committō,* 3, *-mīsī, -missus.*
common, general, *commūnis, -e.*
common, mean, inferior, *tenuis, -e.*
common people, *plēbs, -bis,* F.
compel, *cōgō,* 3, *coēgī, coāctus.*
complain, *queror,* 3, *questus.*
conceal, *cēlō,* 1.
concerned: be —, have to do with, *versor,* 1.
concerning, *dē,* prep. with the abl.
condemn, *condemnō,* 1.
condition, *condiciō, -nis,* F.
conduct, *dēdūcō,* 3, *-dūxī, -ductus.*
conduct one's self, *versor,* 1.
confess, *cōnfiteor,* 2, *cōnfessus.*
congratulate, *grātulor,* 1.
congratulations, *grātulātiō, -nis,* F.
connect, *coniungō,* 3, *-iūnxī, -iūnctus.*
consciousness, *cōnscientia, -ae,* F.
consider, *exīstimō,* 1; *cōnsīderō,* 1; *arbitror,* 1; *cōgitō,* 1.
consolation, *cōnsōlātiō, -nis,* F.
conspiracy, *coniūrātiō, -nis,* F.
consul, *cōnsul, -is,* M.; consul elect, *cōnsul dēsīgnātus.*
consular, of the consulship, *cōnsulāris, -e.*
consulship, *cōnsulātus, -ūs,* M.

contagion, *contāgiō, -nis*, F.
contented, *aequus, -a, -um*.
contrary to, *contrā*, prep. with acc.
contribute, *adferō, -ferre, attulī, -lātus*.
control, n. *diciō, -nis*, F.; **to bring under control**, *facere diciōnis*.
convenient, *opportūnus, -a, -um*.
convict, v. *damnō*, 1.
corrupt, a. *corruptus, -a, -um*.
corrupt, v. *corrumpō*, 3, *-rūpī, -ruptus*.
Cotta, *Cotta, -ae*, M.
countenance, *voltus, -ūs*, M.
course of action, *ratiō, -nis*, F.
courteous, *commodus, -a, -um*.
courtesy, *commoditās, -tātis*, F.
crime, *scelus, -eris*, N.; *crīmen, -inis*, N.
criticise, see **blame**.
cross, *crux, crucis*, F.
crowded, full, *frequēns, -entis*.
crown, n. *corōna, -ae*, F.
cruel, *asper, -era, -erum*.
cruelty, *crūdēlitās, -tātis*, F.
crush, *opprimō*, 3, *-pressī, -pressus*.
culture, *hūmānitās, -tātis*, F.
cup, *pōculum, -ī*, N.
Cupid, *Cupīdō, -inis*, M.
cure, see **care**.
curse, bane, *pestis, -is*, F.
custom, *mōs, mōris*, M.
cut in, incise, *incīdō*, 3, *-cīdī, -cīsus*.
Cyzicenes, *Cȳzicēnī, -ōrum*, M.
Cyzicus, *Cȳzicus, -ī*, F.

D

daily, a. *cotīdiānus, -a, -um*.
daily, adv. *cotīdiē*.
dancing, n. *saltātiō, -nis*, F.
danger, *perīculum, -ī*, N.
dare, *audeō*, 2, *ausus*.
daughter, *fīlia, -ae*, F.
day, *diēs, -ēī*, M. or F.
day before, *prīdiē*.
deal, treat, *agō*, 3, *ēgī, āctus*.
dear, *cārus, -a, -um*.
death, *mors, mortis*, F.
debt, *aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī*, N.
deceive, betray, *fallō*, 3, *fefellī, falsus*.
decide, *statuō*, 3, *-uī, -ūtus; cōnstituō*, 3, *-uī, -ūtus; cēnseō*, 2, *-suī, -sus*.
declare, *dēclārō*, 1. See also **affirm**.
decorate, adorn, *ōrnō*, 1.
decree, resolve, v. *dēcernō*, 3, *-crēvī, -crētus*.
decree of the senate, *senātūs cōnsultum, -ī*, N.
defend, *dēfendō*, 3, *-fendī, -fēnsus*. See also **protect**.
defendant, *reus, -ī*, M.
defender, *dēfēnsor, -ōris*, M.
defense, *dēfēnsiō, -nis*, F.
delay, *moror*, 1.
delight, n. *dēlectātiō, -nis*, F.
delight, v. *dēlectō*, 1.
deliver, set free, *līberō*, 1; *ēripiō*, 3, *-ripuī, -reptus*.
deliver (an oration), *habeō*, 2.
deliver over, *trādō*, 3, *-didī, -ditus*.
demand, *pōstulō*, 1; *pōscō*, 3, *popōscī*, —.
demand back, *repetō*, 3, *-īvī* (*-iī*), *-ītus*.
deny, *negō*, 1.
depart, *discēdō*, 3, *-cessī, -cessus*.
depending, relying on, *frētus, -a, -um*.

deport, *dēportō*, 1.
depose, thrust down, *dēturbō*, 1.
deprive, take from, *ēripiō*, 3, *-ripuī*, *-reptus*; *prīvō*, 1.
deprived: be —, be without, *careō*, 2, *-uī*, *-itūrus*.
deputations, see ambassadors.
descend, *dēscendō*, 3, *-scendī*, *-scēnsus*.
desert, *dēserō*, 3, *-uī*, *-tus*. See also leave.
deserve, *mereor*, 2.
design, see plan.
desirable, *optābilis*, *-e*.
desire, n. *cupiditās*, *-tātis*, F.
desire, v. *cupiō*, 3, *-īvī*, *-ītus*.
desirous, *cupidus*, *-a*, *-um*; *studiōsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
despair, n. *dēspērātiō*, *-nis*, F.
despise, *contemnō*, 3, *-tempsī*, *-temptus*.
destroy, *dēleō*, 2, *-ēvī*, *-ētus*.
devoted to, *studiōsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
Diana, *Diāna*, *-ae*, F.
dictate, *dictō*, 1.
die, *morior*, 3, *mortuus*.
differ, *interest*, *-esse*, *-fuit*; *differō*, *-ferre*, *distulī*, *dīlātus*.
different, *dīstīnctus*, *-a*, *-um*.
dignity, *dignitās*, *-tātis*, F.
diligence, *dīligentia*, *-ae*, F.
dine, take dinner, *cēnō*, 1.
dining-couch, *trīclīnium*, *-ī*, N.
dining-room, *trīclīnium*, *-ī*, N.
dinner, *cēna*, *-ae*, F.
Diodorus, *Diodōrus*, *-ī*, M.
disastrous, *calamitōsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
discuss, *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*.
disembark, *expōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*.
disgrace, n. *ignōminia*, *-ae*, F.
dissension, *dissēnsiō*, *-nis*, F.
distinction, *ōrnāmentum*, *-ī*, N.
distinguished, *amplus*, *-a*, *-um*; *clārus*, *-a*, *-um*; *nōbilis*, *-e*.
distract, detain, *distineō*, 2, *-tinuī*, *-tentus*.
distrust, v. *diffīdō*, 3, *-fīsus*.
disturb, *perturbō*, 1.
disturbance, *tumultus*, *-ūs*, M.; *perturbātiō*, *-nis*, F.
divine, *dīvīnus*, *-a*, *-um*.
do, *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*; *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus*; *committō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
do business, *negōtior*, 1.
do wrong, *peccō*, 1.
doctor, *medicus*, *-ī*, M.
don't, expressed by imv. of *nōlō* with infinitive.
door, *iānua*, *-ae*, F.
doubt, n. *dubitātiō*, *-nis*, F.
doubt, v. *dubitō*, 1.
doubtful, *dubius*, *-a*, *-um*.
draw up, *īnstruō*, 3, *-strūxī*, *-strūctus*.
Drepanum, *Drepanum*, *-ī*, N.
drive out, put to flight, *fugō*, 1; *expellō*, 3, *-pulī*, *-pulsus*.
due: be —, owe, *dēbeō*, 2.
duty, doing one's duty, *officium*, *-ī*, N.
duty of, expressed by pred. gen.

E

each, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque* (*quodque*).
earth, *terra*, *-ae*, F.
ease, *ōtium*, *-ī*, N.
easily, *facile*.
easy, *facilis*, *-e*.

Ebro, *Hibērus, -ī,* M.
Egypt, *Aegyptus, -ī,* F.
eight, *octō.*
eighth, *octāvus, -a, -um.*
elect, v. *creō,* I.
eloquence, *ēloquentia, -ae,* F.
else, see other.
embassy, *lēgātiō, -nis,* F.
eminent, *ēgregius, -a, -um.*
empire, *imperium, -ī,* N.
Emporiae, *Emporiae, -ārum,* F.
empty, empty-handed, *inānis, -e.*
enact (a law), *sanciō,* 4, *sānxī, sānctus.*
end, n. *fīnis, -is,* M.
endurable, *tolerābilis, -e.*
enemy, *hostis, -is,* M.; *inimīcus, -ī,* M.
engraved, *caelātus, -a, -um.*
engraver, *caelātor, -ōris,* M.
enjoy, *perfruor,* 3, *-frūctus.*
enjoyment, *frūctus, -ūs,* M.
enrich, increase, *augeō,* 2, *auxī, auctus.*
enter, *intrō,* I.
enter upon, *ineō,* 4, *-iī, -itus.*
entice, *adliciō,* 3, *-lexī, -lectus.*
envy, n. *invidia, -ae,* F.
envy, v. *invideō,* 2, *-vīdī, -vīsus.*
Ephesus, *Ephesus, -ī,* F.
equal, a. *pār, paris.*
equally as, *aequē ac.*
erect, v. *cōnstituō,* 3, *-uī, -ūtus.*
escape, v. *effugiō,* 3, *-fūgī, -fugitūrus ; ēlābor,* 3, *ēlāpsus.*
especially, most of all, *maximē, praesertim.*
eternal, *aeternus, -a, -um.*
even, also, *etiam.*
even, as far as, *ūsque.*
even if, *etiam sī, et sī.*
event, circumstance, thing, etc. *rēs, reī,* F.
ever, *umquam.*
evidence, *tēstimōnium, -ī,* N.
evil, *malum, -ī,* N.
example, *exemplum, -ī,* N.
exceedingly, *maximē;* to be exceedingly vexed, *gravissimē ferre.*
excel, *praestō,* I, *-stitī, -stitus.* See surpass.
excellence, *suāvitās, -tātis,* F.
except, conj. *nisi ;* prep. *praeter* with the acc.
exemption, *vacātiō, -nis,* F.
exercise, n. *exercitātiō, -nis,* F.
exercise, v. *exerceō,* 2, *-uī, -itus.*
exhausted, *cōnfectus, -a, -um.*
exhort, urge, *hortor,* I.
exile, n. *exsilium, -ī,* N.
expect, *exspectō,* I.
expectation, *opīniō, -nis,* F.
expel, *expellō,* 3, *-pulī, -pulsus.*
expense, *sūmptus, -ūs,* M.
experience, try, *experior,* 4, *-pertus.*
experienced in, *perītus, -a, -um.*
exploits, *rēs gestae, rērum gestārum.*
expose, *obiciō,* 3, *-iēcī, -iectus.*
express, declare, *dēclārō,* I.
extend, *pateō,* 2, *-uī,* —.
external, *externus, -a, -um.*
extinguish, *exstinguō,* 3, *-stīnxī, -stīnctus.*
extreme, a. *extrēmus, -a, -um.*
eye, *oculus, -ī,* M.

F

face to face, *coram.*
fail, be wanting, *dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.*

faith, *fidēs*, *-eī*, F.
faithful, *fidēlis*, *-e*.
false, *falsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
falsely, *falsō*.
fame, *fāma*, *-ae*, F.
family, *familia*, *-ae*, F.
famous: **that —**, *ille* following its noun.
far, adv. *longē*.
fate: **meet one's —**, *diem obeō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itus*.
father, *pater*, *-tris*, M.; *parēns*, *-ntis*, M.
fatherland, *patria*, *-ae*, F.
father's, **paternal**, *paternus*, *-a*, *-um*.
favor, v. *commodō*, I.
favorably, *fēlīciter*.
fear, n. *timor*, *-ōris*, M.; *metus*, *-ūs*, M.
fear, v. *metuō*, 3, *-uī*, —; *timeō*, 2, *-uī*, —; *pertimēscō*, 3, *-timuī*, —; *vereor*, 2, *veritus*.
feeble, *dēbilis*, *-e*.
feelings, **mind**, *animus*, *-ī*, M.
fellow, see **man**.
fellow-citizens, *Quirītēs*, *-ium*, M.
few, **only a few**, *paucī*, *-ae*, *-a*.
fight, *pūgnō*, I; *bellō*, I; **fight a battle**, *proelium faciō*.
figures (of ornamental designs), *sigilla*, *-ōrum*, N.
fill, *compleō*, 2, *-plēvī*, *-plētus*.
finally, *dēmum*, *dēnique*.
find, *inveniō*, 4, *-vēnī*, *-ventus*; *reperiō*, 3, *repperī*, *repertus*.
finish, *cōnficiō*, 3, *-fēcī*, *-fectus*.
first, *prīmus*, *-a*, *-um*; **at first**, *prīmō*; **in the first place**, *prīmum*.
five hundred, *quīngentī*, *-ae*, *-a*.
flee, *fugiō*, 3, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*; also *profugiō* and *cōnfugiō*.
fleet, n. *classis*, *-is*, F.
flock, **run together**, *concurrō*, 3, *-currī*, *-cursus*.
flourish, *flōreō*, 2, *-uī*, —.
flourishing, *flōrēns*, *-entis*.
follow, *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus*.
folly, *stultitia*, *-ae*, F.
fond, see **zealous**.
food, *cibus*, *-ī*, M.
for, conj. *nam*, *namque*, *etenim*, *enim* (postpositive); prep. *ad*; *in* with the acc.; *prō* with the abl. in the sense of *in behalf of*; *ob* with the acc. *for*, *because of*; often expressed by dative.
for this reason, **therefore** (rel.), **for what reason**, **wherefore** (interrog.), *quam ob rem*, *quā rē*, *quā dē causā*.
force (of strength), *vīs*, defect., F.; **forces** (of soldiers), *cōpiae*, *-ārum*, F.
foreign, *aliēnus*, *-a*, *-um*; *peregrīnus*, *-a*, *-um*.
forensic, **belonging to the forum**, *forēnsis*, *-e*.
foresee, *prōvideō*, 2, *-vīdī*, *-vīsus*.
forget, *oblīvīscor*, 3, *oblītus*.
forgetfulness, *oblīviō*, *-nis*, F.
forgive, see **pardon**.
form, v. *īnstituō*, 3, *-uī*, *-ūtus*.
former, *ille*, *-a*, *-ud*; *prīstinus*, *-a*, *-um*.
formerly, *quondam*.
fortunate, *fēlix*, *-īcis*; *fortūnātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
fortune, *fortūna*, *-ae*, F. Often expressed by *rēs*, *reī*, F

forty, *quadrāgintā*.
forum, *forum, -ī*, N.
found (a city), *condō*, 3, *-didī, -ditus*.
foundation, *fundāmentum, -ī*, N.
frankly, openly, *apertē*.
free, *līber, -era, -erum*.
freely, *līberē*.
friend, *amīcus, -ī*, M.
friendly, *amīcus, -a, -um*.
friendship, *amīcitia, -ae*, F., *familiāritās, -tātis*, F.
from, *ā, ab; dē; ē, ex;* preps. with the abl.
from, expressed by a conj. after verbs of hindering, opposing, etc. *nē, quīn, quō minus*.
from all sides, *undique*.
full, *plēnus, -a, -um*.
full (of an account), in Latin *with many words*.
funeral, *funus, -eris*, N.
furnish, equip, *ōrnō*, 1.
further, *autem*.

G

gain, accomplish, *cōnsequor*, 3, *-secūtus*.
Galba, *Galba, -ae*, M.
game, *lūdus, -ī*, M.
gather, *conligō*, 3, *-lēgī, -lēctus*.
Gaul, *Gallia, -ae*, F.
general, n. *imperātor, -tōris*, M.
gift, *dōnum, -ī*, N.
give, *dō, dare, dedī, datus*.
gladiator, *gladiātor, -ōris*, M.
glory, *glōria, -ae*, F.
go, *eō*, 4, *iī, itūrus;* go away, *abeō*, also *recēdō, -cessī, -cessus;* go forth, *exeō;* go to lodge, *dēvertō*, 3, *-vertī, -versus;* go to meet, *obviam (prōd)eō* with the dat.
god, *deus, -ī*, M.
goddess, *dea, deae*, F.
godlike, *dīvīnus, -ā, -um*.
going on: to be —, passive of *gerō*, 3, *gessī, gestus*.
gold, *aurum, -ī*, N.
golden, *aureus, -a, -um*.
goldsmith, *aurifex, -icis*, M.
good, *bonus, -a, -um*.
grain, *frūmentum, -ī*, N.
grandfather, *avus, -ī*, M.
grant, see give.
grave, a. *gravis, -e*.
great, *māgnus, -a, -um; grandis, -e*.
great heavens! *dī immortālēs*.
greatest, very great, *maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um*.
greatly, *vehementer, māgnopere*.
greatness, *māgnitūdō, -inis*, F.
Greek, *Graecus, -a, -um*.
greet, see salute.
grief, *maeror, -ōris*, M.; *dolor, -ōris*, M.
grievous, *gravis, -e*.
groan, n. *gemitus, -ūs*, M.
grudge, v. *invideō*, 2, *-vīdī, -vīsus*.
guard, garrison, *praesidium, -ī*, N.
guardian, *tūtor, -ōris*, M.
guardianship, *praesidium, -ī*, N.
guest, *convīva, -ae*, M.
guilt, see crime.

H

hand, n. *manus, -ūs*, F.
hand down, *trādō*, 3, *-didī, -ditus*.
handle, *trāctō*, 1.
hang, *pendeō*, 2, *pependī*, —.
Hannibal, *Hannibal, -is*, M.

happen, it happens, *accidit*, 3, *accidit; fit, fierī, factum est;* usually followed by substantive clauses introduced by *ut*. Often expressed by *esse*.
harbor, n. *portus, -ūs,* M.
hard, *dūrus, -a, -um.*
harmony, *concordia, -ae,* F.
hasten back, *recurrō,* 3, *-currī, —.*
hate, n. *odium, -ī,* N.
hate, v. *ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus.*
have, *habeō,* 2, *habuī, habitus.*
he, *is, hīc, ille.* Usually not expressed.
head, *caput, -itis,* N.
hear, *audiō,* 4.
heart, see **mind.**
heaven, *caelum, -ī,* N.
Heius, *Hēius, -ī,* M.
Heraclius, *Heraclīus, -ī,* M.
herald, *praecō, -nis,* M.
here, *hīc.*
hesitate, *dubitō,* 1.
hide, *dissimulō,* 1.
Hiero, *Hierō, -nis,* M.
high, *superus, -a, -um; altus, -a, -um;* (of rank) *amplus, -a, -um.*
himself, *suī; ipse, -a, -um.*
hinder, *impediō,* 4.
hire, *condūcō,* 3, *-dūxī, -ductus.*
his, *suus, -a, -um,* reflex. When not reflex. usually expressed by *ēius,* gen. of *is.*
history, *historia, -ae,* F.; *rēs gestae, rērum gestārum,* F.
hither, *hūc, illūc.*
hold, *teneō,* 2, *-uī, —.*
hold, regard, *habeō,* 2; *aestimō,* 1.
home, see **house.**
honor, n. *honor, -ōris,* M.
honor, v. *honestō,* 1; *ōrnō,* 1.
honorable, *honestus, -a, -um; amplus, -a, -um.*
hope, n. *spēs, speī,* F.
hope, v. *spērō,* 1.
hospitable, *hospitālis, -e.*
hospitality, *hospitium, -ī,* N.
hostile, *inimīcus, -a, -um.*
hour, *hōra, -ae,* F.
house, home, *domus, -ūs,* F.; *aedēs, -ium,* F.
how, *quam, quem ad modum;* **how many,** *quot;* **how much, how great,** *quantum,* adv., *quantus, -a, -um,* a.
however, *autem* in weak transitions, *tamen* in sense of *nevertheless.*
hunt up, *invēstīgō,* 1.
hurry back, run back, *recurrō,* 3, *-currī, —.*

I

I, *ego, meī.* Usually not expressed.
if, *sī;* **if not, unless,** *nisi.*
ignorant, *indoctus, -a, -um; imperītus, -a, -um; īgnārus, -a, -um.*
ignorant: be —, *īgnōrō,* 1.
illustrious, *clārus, -a, -um.*
image, *imāgō, -inis,* F.
imitate, *imitor,* 1.
immediately, *statim, continuō.*
immortal, a. *immortālis, -e.*
impatience, *fēstīnātiō, -nis,* F.
implore, *implōrō,* 1.
importance: be of —, be influential, *multum valeō,* 2, *-uī, -itūrus; intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.*
importance: of such —, *tantī.*
impose, *impōnō,* 3, *-posuī, -positus.*
in, *in,* prep. with the abl. Of an author, *apud* with the acc.

in part, partly, *partim.*
in return for, *prō* with the abl.
inclining towards, *prōpēnsus, -a, -um.*
increase, tr. v. *augeō,* 2, *auxī, auctus.*
incredible, *incrēdibilis, -e.*
indication, expression, *sīgnificātiō, -nis,* F.
induce, *addūcō,* 3, *-dūxī, -ductus.*
industry, *industria, -ae,* F.
inexperienced, *rudis, -e.*
influence, see **induce**; also *adliciō,* 3, *-lexī, -lectus.*
inform, *certiōrem faciō.*
inhabit, *incolō,* 3, *-coluī,* —.
injure, *noceō,* 2, *nocuī,* —; *laedō,* 3, *laesī, laesus.*
injury, *iniūria, -ae,* F.
injustice, *iniūria, -ae,* F.
innocent, *innocēns, -entis.*
inspire, *inicIō,* 3, *-iēcī, -iectus.*
instigate, *appōnō,* 3, *-posuī, -positus.*
instruct, remind, *admoneō,* 2.
integrity, *integritās, -tātis,* F.
intend, see **wish.**
interest, be of concern, *interest, interesse, interfuit.*
intimacy, see **friendship.**
into, *in,* prep. with the acc.
intrust, *committō,* 3, *-mīsī, -missus.*
invite, *invītō,* 1; *vocō,* 1.
island, *īnsula, -ae,* F.
it, *is, ea, id.*
Italy, *Ītalia, -ae,* F.

J

January: of —, *Iānuārius, -a, -um.*
join to, *adiungō,* 3, *-iūnxī, -iūnctus.*
journey, *iter, itineris,* N.
joy, *laetitia, -ae,* F.
judge, n. *iūdex, -icis,* M.
judge, pass judgment on, *iūdicō,* 1.
judgment, *iūdicium, -ī,* N.
June: of —, *Iūnius, -a, -um.*
Juno, *Iūnō, -nis,* F.
jury, gentlemen of the jury, *iūdicēs, -um,* M.
just as, *tamquam.*
justify, *comprobō,* 1.

K

kalends, *Kalendae, -ārum,* F.
keep, *retineō,* 2, *-tinuī, -tentus; teneō,* 2, *-uī,* —.
keep off, abstain, *abstineō,* 2, *-tinuī, -tentus.*
kill, *interficiō,* 3, *-fēcī, -fectus; occīdō,* 3, *-cīdī, -cīsus.*
kind, n. *genus, -eris,* N.; *modus, -ī,* M.
kindness, *cōmitās, -tātis,* F.
king, *rēx, rēgis,* M.
kingdom, *rēgnum, -ī,* N.
knight, *eques, equitis,* M.
know, *sciō,* 4; *nōscō,* 3, *nōvī, nōtus; cōgnōscō,* 3, *-nōvī, -nitus;* **not know,** *nesciō,* 4. See also **perceive.**
knowing, a. *intellegēns, -entis.*
knowledge, *scientia, -ae,* F.
known, *nōtus, -a, -um.*

L

labor, n. *labor, -ōris,* M.
Laelius, *Laelius, -ī.* M.
Laenius, *Laenius, -ī,* M.
land, n. *terra, -ae,* F.
land, bring to land (of a fleet), *appellō,* 3, *-pulī, -pulsus;* **come**

to land, *dēveniō*, 4, *-vēnī*, *-ventūrus*.
language, words, *ōrātiō*, *-nis*, F.
Lanuvium, *Lānuvium*, *-ī*, N.
large, splendid, *amplus*, *-a*, *-um*; *grandis*, *-e*.
later, afterwards, *posteā*.
latter, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*.
laud, see praise.
laurel: crowned with —, *laureātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, F.; *iūs*, *iūris*, N.; break a law, *lēgem neglegō*.
lawyer, *iūris cōnsultus*, *-ī*, M.
lay waste, *vāstō*, 1.
lead, *dūcō*, 3, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead astray, *dēdūcō*; lead into, *indūcō*; prevail upon, *addūcō*.
leader, *dux*, *ducis*, M. and F.
learn, *cōgnōscō*, 3, *-nōvī*, *-nitus*.
learned, *ērudītus*, *-a*, *-um*.
learning, n. *doctrīna*, *-ae*, F.
least, adv. *minimē*; *minimum*; *levissimē*.
leave, *relinquō*, 3, *-līquī*, *-lictus*. See also desert.
leave off, *omittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
leave out, *praetereō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itus*.
left, *sinister*, *-tra*, *-trum*.
legally, *iūre*.
leisure, a. *vacuus*, *-a*, *-um*.
leisure, n. *ōtium*, *-ī*, N.
length, *longinquitās*, *-tātis*, F.
less, a. *minor*, *-us*.
less, adv. *minus*.
lessen, *minuō*, 3, *-uī*, *-ūtus*.
let go, dismiss, *dīmittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
let pass, *praetermittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
letter (of the alphabet), *littera*, *-ae*, F.
letter (correspondence), *litterae*, *-ārum*, F.; *epistula*, *-ae*, F.
levy, v. *imperō*, 1.
Licinius, *Licinius*, *-ī*, M.
lieutenant, *lēgātus*, *-ī*, M.
life, *vīta*, *-ae*, F.
light, n. *lūx*, *lūcis*, F.
like, a. *similis*, *-e*.
like, v. see wish.
like a human being, *hūmāniter*.
likely to, use 1st periphrastic.
Lilybaeum, *Lilybaeum*, *-ī*, N.
little, adv. *paulō*; too little, *parum*.
live, *vīvō*, 3, *vīxī*, *vīctus*; *habitō*, 1; reside temporarily, *commoror*, 1.
lodge, *dēvertō*, 3, *-vertī*, —.
lofty, *excelsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
long, now for a long time, *iam diū*, *iam dūdum*.
longing, *dēsīderium*, *-ī*, N.
look at, regard, *spectō*, 1.
lose, *perdō*, 3, *-didī*, *-ditus*; *āmittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
loss, *dētrīmentum*, *-ī*, N.
lost: be —, perish, *excidō*, 3, *-cidī*, —.
love, n. *amor*, *-ōris*, M.
love, v. *amō*, 1; *dīligō*, 3, *-lēxī*, *-lēctus*.
low, *īnferus*, *-a*, *-um*; *posterus*, *-a*, *-um*.
Lucius, *Lūcius*, *-ī*.
Lucullus, *Lūcullus*, *-ī*, M.
luxury, *lūxuria*, *-ae*, F.

M

Macedonia, *Macedonia*, *-ae*, F.
mad: be —, *īnsāniō*, 4, *-īvī*, *-ītus*.

magistracy or magistrate, *magistrātus, -ūs,* M.
magnificence, *māgnificentia, -ae,* F.
make, *faciō,* 3, *fēcī, factus.*
make inquiries, *percontor,* 1.
make light of, see neglect.
Malta, *Melita, -ae,* F.
Mamertini, *Māmertīnī, -ōrum,* M.
man, *homō, -inis,* M. and F.; *vir, -ī,* M.
manifest, *perspicuus, -a, -um.*
manner, *ratiō, -nis,* F.; kind, sort, *modus, -ī,* M.
many, *multī, -ae, -a.*
marble, *marmor, -is,* N.
Marcellus, *Marcellus, -ī,* M.
Martial, of Mars, *Mārtius, -a, -um.*
marvelous, *eximius, -a, -um.*
master, *dominus, -ī,* M.
matchless, *singulāris, -e.*
Maximus, *Maximus, -ī,* M.
May: of —, *Māius, -a, -um.*
meal, *epulum, -ī,* N. only sing. (in plur. *epulae, -ārum,* F.); *convīvium, -ī,* N.
meanwhile, *interim, intereā.*
medicine, *medicīna, -ae,* F.
meet, assemble, *conveniō,* 4, *-vēnī, -ventus.*
meet with, *occurrō,* 3, *-currī, -cursus; obviam eō,* 4, *iī, itus.*
meeting, *conventus, -ūs,* M.
Megara, *Megara, -ae,* F.
memory, *memoria, -ae,* F.
mention, n. *historia, -ae,* F.
mention, v. *commemorō,* 1; *dīcō,* 3, *dīxī, dictus; nārrō,* 1; see also say.
Mentor, *Mentor, -oris,* M.
merciful, *lēnis, -e.*
mercy, *misericordia, -ae,* F.; *lēnitās, -tātis,* F.
Messana, *Messāna, -ae,* F.; a citizen of Messana, *Māmertīnus, -ī,* M.
messenger, *nūntius, -ī,* M.
military affairs, *rēs mīlitāris, rēī mīlitāris.*
military service, *mīlitia, -ae,* F.
mind, *mēns, mentis,* F.; *animus, -ī,* M.
mindful, *memor, -oris.*
misery, *miseria, -ae,* F.
miss, see let pass.
Mithradates, *Mithradātēs, -is,* M.
model, n. *exemplum, -ī,* N.
model, v. *fingō,* 3, *fīnxī, fictus.*
modestly, *verēcundē.*
modesty, *pudor, -ōris,* M.
money, *nummus, -ī,* M.; *pecūnia, -ae,* F.
month, *mēnsis, -is,* M.
monument, *monumentum, -ī,* N.
more, a. *plūs, plūris.*
more, adv. *magis* (of degree), *plūs* (of amount), *amplius* (of extent), *potius* (of preference).
moreover, *autem.*
mother, *māter, -tris,* F.
motion: make a —, *referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus.*
mountain, *mōns, montis,* M.
mouth (of a river), *ōstium, -ī,* N.
move, *moveō,* 2, *mōvī, mōtus;* also *commoveō.*
much, many, *multus, -a, -um.*
much, adv. *multum;* by much, *multō.*
multitude, *multitūdō, -inis,* F.
municipal town, *mūnicipium, -ī,* N.

murder, see kill.
Murena, *Mūrēna, -ae,* M.
must, ought, need, etc. *oportet,* 2, *oportuit; dēbeō,* 2; *necesse est;* second periphrastic.
mutually, in turn, *mūtuē.*
my, *meus, -a, -um.*

N

name, n. *nōmen, nōminis,* N.
name, v. *nōminō,* 1.
nature, *nātūra, -ae,* F.; *ingenium, -ī,* N.
naval, *nāvālis, -e.*
nearly, almost, *prope.*
necessary, *necesse,* N. adj. indecl.; *opus* (with *est*). See also must.
need, n. *opus,* N. indecl.
need, v. *indigeō, -ēre, -uī,* —.
neglect, make light of, *neglegō,* 3, *-lēxī, -lēctus.*
neither, *nec, neque;* neither . . . nor, *neque . . . neque.*
never, *numquam.*
nevertheless, *tamen.*
new, *novus, -a, -um.*
next, adv. *deinde, tum;* adj. *proximus, -a, -um; posterus, -a, -um.*
next day, *postrīdiē.*
night, *nox, noctis,* F.
ninetieth, *nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um.*
no, adv. *nōn;* adj. *nūllus, -a, -um.*
no one, *nēmō,* —, M. and F.
nobility, *nōbilitās, -tātis,* F.
nobility, the, *optimātēs, -ium* or *-um,* M. plur.; *nōbilēs, -ium,* M. plur.
noble, *nōbilis, -e.*
none the less, *nihilō minus.*
Nones, *Nōnae, -ārum,* F.
not, *nē* with subjv. and imv.; *haud; nōn;* not even, *nē . . . quidem;* not only . . . but also, *nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam; cum . . . tum.*
not know, be ignorant, *nesciō,* 4.
nothing, *nihil,* N. indecl.
notorious, *clārus, -a, -um.*
now, *nunc, iam.* Introductory now in a transition, *nunc, iam, autem.*
nowhere, *nūsquam.*
Numantia, *Numantia, -ae,* F.
number, *numerus, -ī,* M.; *multitūdō, -inis,* F.

O

oak, *rōbur, -oris,* N.
obey, *pāreō,* 2, *pāruī,* —; *obtemperō,* 1.
object, v. *obiciō,* 3, *-iēci, -iectus.*
observe, keep, *servō,* 1.
obtain, gain, *pariō,* 3, *peperī, paritus* or *partus.*
obtain a request, *impetrō,* 1.
occupation, *occupātiō, -nis,* F.
of, *ā* or *ab; dē; ē* or *ex;* or the gen.
off, see from.
offense, *peccātum, -ī,* N.
offer, show, *praestō,* 1, *-stitī, -stitus.*
office, *honōs* (*-or*), *-ōris,* M.
officially, *pūblicē.*
often, *saepe.*
old, see ancient.
omit, *omittō,* 3, *-mīsī, -missus.*
on, near, by, *in,* prep. with the abl.; *apud,* prep. with the acc.
on account of, for, *propter, ob,* preps. with the acc.
once, formerly, *ōlim, quondam.*

one, *ūnus, -a, -um ;* one . . . another, *alius . . . alius ;* the one . . . the other, *alter . . . alter.*
only, adv. *tantum ; sōlum.*
open, a. *apertus, -a, -um.*
open : be —, *pateō,* 2, *patuī,* —.
opinion, decision, *sententia, -ae,* F. ; express an opinion, *sententiam dīcō.*
oppose, *resistō,* 3, *-stitī,* —; *repūgnō,* 1.
opulence, *cōpia, -ae,* F.
or, *an* (in double questions), *vel, aut ;* or not, *annōn, necne.*
oration, *ōrātiō, -nis,* F.
orator, *ōrātor, -ōris,* M.
order, n. *ōrdō, -inis,* M.
order, v. see command.
ordinary, *mediocris, -e ;* usual, *ūsitātus, -a, -um.*
ornament, *ōrnāmentum, -ī,* N.
other, *alius, -a, -ud ; alter, -a, -um ;* the others, the remaining, *cēterī, -ae, -a ; reliquī, -ae, -a ;* belonging to another, *aliēnus, -a, -um.*
ought, see must.
our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*
out, from, *ē, ex,* prep. with the abl.
outside, *extrā,* adv. and prep. with the acc.
overcome, worn out, *cōnfectus, -a, -um.*
overwhelm, *obruō,* 3, *-ruī, -rutus.*
own, a. *proprius, -a, -um.*

P

painter, *pictor, -ōris,* M.
pardon, v. *īgnōscō,* 3, *-nōvī, -nōtus.*
part, *pars, -tis,* F.
partly, *partim.*
pass (of a resolution), see make.
pass judgment, *iūdicō,* 1 ; *sententiam ferō.*
pass through, *perfungor,* 3, *-fūnctus.*
patrician, n. *patricius, -ī,* M.
patriotism, *amor in patriam.*
pay, n. *mercēs, -ēdis,* F.
pay respects, salute, *salūtō,* 1.
peace, *pāx, pācis,* F.
peaceable, *quiētus, -a, -um.*
penalty, see punishment.
people, *populus, -ī,* M.
perceive, *perspiciō,* 3, *-spexī, -spectus ; animadvertō,* 3, *-vertī, -versus ; intellegō,* 3, *-ēxī, -ēctus ; sentiō,* 4, *sēnsī, sēnsus ;* see also know.
perfected, finished, *perfectus, -a, -um.*
perform, *gerō,* 3, *gessī, gestus.*
perhaps, *fortasse.*
perish, *pereō,* 4, *-īī, -itūrus.*
permit, allow, *licet,* 2, *licuit,* — ; *sinō,* 3, *sīvī, situs ; permittō,* 3, *-mīsī, -missus.*
persuade, *persuādeō,* 2, *-suāsī, -suāsus.*
pertain to, *pertineō,* 2, *-uī,* —.
Phaselis, *Phasēlis, -idis,* F.
philosopher, *sapiēns, -entis,* M.
pious, see pure.
pirate, *pīrāta, -ae,* M.
Piso, *Pīsō, -nis,* M.
pity, see mercy.
place, n. *locus, -ī,* M. (N. in plur.).
place, v. *locō,* 1 ; *pōnō,* 3, *posuī, positus ;* place before, prefer, *antepōnō ;* place upon, *impōnō.*

place of refuge, *perfugium*, *-ī*, N.
plainly, clearly, *plānē*.
plan, n. *cōnsilium*, *-ī*, N.; *ratiō*, *-nis*, F.; **to form a plan**, *cōnsilium inīre*.
plan, devise, meditate, *cōgitō*, 1; *mōlior*, 4.
plead (a case), *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*; *dīcō*, 3, *dīxī*, *dictus*.
please, *placeō*, 2, *-uī*, *-itus*.
pleasing, *iūcundus*, *-a*, *-um*; *grātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
pleasure, *voluptās*, *-tātis*, F.
plebeians, *plēbs*, *-bis*, F.
plunder or **plundering**, n. *fūrtum*, *-ī*, N.
plunder, v. *expīlō*, 1.
Pompey, *Pompēius*, *-ī*, M.
popularity, *grātia*, *-ae*, F.
possess, *possideō*, 2, *-sēdī*, *-sessus*.
posterity, *posterī*, *-ōrum*, M.
power, (*ops*), *opis*, F.
powerful, *fīrmus*, *-a*, *-um*; *potēns*, *-ntis*.
powerful: be —, *valeō*, 2.
praetor, *praetor*, *-ōris*, M.
praise, n. *laus*, *laudis*, F.
praise, v. *laudō*, 1; *ōrnō*, 1.
Praxiteles, *Prāxitelēs*, *-ī*, M.
pray, *ōrō*, 1; *supplicō*, 1; *precor*, 1. Parenthetically, *quaesō*, 3, —, —. Sometimes expressed by emphatic *enim*.
precept, *praeceptum*, *-ī*, N.
prefer, wish rather, *mālō*, *mālle*, *māluī*, —.
prepare, *comparō*, 1.
present, a. *praesēns*, *-entis*.
present: be —, *adsum*, *-esse*, *-fuī*, *-futūrus*.
present, give, *dōnō*, 1; **present, lead forth** (before the court), *prōdūcō*, 3, *-dūxī*, *-ductus*; **present, produce** (for inspection), *prōferō*, *-ferre*, *-tulī*, *-lātus*.
preserve, *retineō*, 2, *-tinuī*, *-tentus*; *cōnservō*, 1.
pretend not, *dissimulō*, 1.
prevail upon, see **lead**.
prevent, *prohibeō*, 2, *-uī*, *-itus*; *dēterreō*, 2, *-uī*, *-itus*.
price, *pretium*, *-ī*, N.
pride, *superbia*, *-ae*, F.
private, *prīvātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
privately, *prīvātim*.
proclaim, *prōnūntiō*, 1.
promise, n. *prōmissum*, *-ī*, N.
promise, v. *prōmittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*; *polliceor*, 2.
propose, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*.
propraetor, *prōpraetor*, *-ōris*, M.
prosecute, *accūsō*, 1.
prosecutor, *accūsātor*, *-ōris*, M.
protect, *tueor*, 2, *tūtus*; *tegō*, 3, *tēxī*, *tēctus*; see also **defend**.
prove, see **teach**.
provide for, consult for, *cōnsulō*, 3, *-suluī*, *-sultus*.
provided that, *dum*, *modo*.
providential, *dīvīnus*, *-a*, *-um*.
province, *prōvincia*, *-ae*, F.
public, *pūblicus*, *-a*, *-um*.
public interest, *rēs pūblica*.
publicly, *pūblicē*.
Publius, *Pūblius*, *-ī*, M.
Punic, *Pūnicus*, *-a*, *-um*.
punishment, *poena*, *-ae*, F.
purchase, n. *ēmptiō*, *-nis*, F.
pure, *castus*, *-a*, *-um*.
pursue, *persequor*, 3, *persecūtus*.

pursuit, *studium*, *-ī*, N.
put out of the way, *tollō*, 3, *sustulī*, *sublātus*.
Pyrenees, *Pȳrēnaeus*, *-a*, *-um*.

Q

quaestor, *quaestor*, *-ōris*, M.
quickly, *celeriter*.
Quirites, *Quirītēs*, *-ium*, M. plur.

R

rage, n. *furor*, *-ōris*, M.
raise, *tollō*, 3, *sustulī*, *sublātus*.
rank, n. *gradus*, *-ūs*, M.
rascality, see crime.
rather, *potius*.
ratify, *ratus*, *-a*, *-um*, with *esse iubēre*, as in *lēgem ratam esse iubēre*, to ratify a law.
ravage, harry, *vexō*, 1.
read, *legō*, 3, *lēgī*, *lēctus*.
reader, *lēctor*, *-ōris*, M.
reason, n. *causa*, *-ae*, F.; for this reason, *quā dē causā*; *quam ob rem*; *quā rē*.
recall, *revocō*, 1.
receive, *accipiō*, 3, *-cēpī*, *-ceptus*.
recently, *nūper*.
recline, *recumbō*, 3, *-cubuī*, —.
recollection, *memoria*, *-ae*, F.
recommend, *commendō*, 1.
recover, restore, *reficiō*, 3, *-fēcī*, *-fectus*.
recover, get back, *recuperō*, 1.
recover health, *convalēscō*, 3, *-luī*, —.
reduce, *redigō*, 3, *-ēgī*, *-āctus*.
refrain, *temperō*, 1.
regard: personal —, partiality, *grātia*, *-ae*, F.
regard, v. see hold.
regret, see repent.
rejoice, *laetor*, 1; *gaudeō*, 2, *gāvīsus*.
relationship, *cōgnātiō*, *-nis*, F.
relative, n. *propinquus*, *-ī*, M.
religious scruples, religion, *religiō*, *-nis*, F.
remain, be left, pass. of *relinquō*, 3, *-līquī*, *-lictus*.
remaining, *reliquus*, *-a*, *-um*; (*cēterus*), *-a*, *-um*.
remarkable, *eximius*, *-a*, *-um*.
remember, *recordor*, 1.
remit, release, *remittō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.
remove, *tollō*, 3, *sustulī*, *sublātus*; *removeō*, 2, *-mōvī*, *-mōtus* (also *dēmoveō*); removed, *remōtus*, *-a*, *-um*.
renew, *renovō*, 1.
repel, *prōpulsō*, 1; *repellō*, 3, *reppulī*, *repulsus*.
repent, *paenitet*, 2, *paenituit*.
replace, *repōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*.
reply, v. *respondeō*, 2, *-spondī*, *-spōnsus*; *rescrībō*, 3, *-scrīpsī*, *-scrīptus*.
report, v. *adferō*, *-ferre*, *attulī*, *adlātus*; *nūntiō*, 1.
republic, *rēs pūblica*, *reī pūblicae*, F.
reputation, *fāma*, *-ae*, F.
request, n. *rogātū*, M., only abl. sing.
requite a favor, reward, *grātiam referō*.
reside, see live.
resist, see oppose.
resolution of the senate, *senātūs cōnsultum*, *-ī*, N.

rest, v. *quiēscō*, 3, *-ēvī*, *-ētus*.
restore, *restituō*, 3, *-uī*, *-ūtus*.
restrain, *comprimō*, 3, *-pressī*, *-pressus*.
result, turn out, *ēveniō*, 4, *-vēnī*, *-ventus*.
retain, *retineō*, 2, *-tinuī*, *-tentus*; *cōnservō*, 1.
return, intr. v. *redeō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itus*; *revertor*, 3, *-vertī* or *-versus sum*.
return, give back, *reddō*, 3, *-didī*, *-ditus*.
Rhone, *Rhodanus*, *-ī*, M.
rich, *dīves*, *-itis*; *locuplēs*, *-ētis*.
ridiculous, *rīdiculus*, *-a*, *-um*.
right, a. *rēctus*, *-a*, *-um*.
right, a. (of direction), *dexter*, *-tra*, *-trum*.
right, n. *fās*, indecl.; *iūs*, *iūris*, N.
rightly, truthfully, *vērē*.
ring, n. *ānulus*, *-ī*, M.
rise, *cōnsurgō*, 3, *-surrēxī*, *-surrēctus*.
river, *flūmen*, *-inis*, N.
rob, *praedor*, 1; *spoliō*, 1; see also **take away**.
robbery, see **plundering**.
robe: **flowing —**, *stola*, *-ae*, F.
Roman, *Rōmānus*, *-a*, *-um*.
Rome, *Rōma*, *-ae*, F.
rostra, *rostra*, *-ōrum*, N.
rout, v. *fundō*, 3, *fūdī*, *fūsus*.
royal, *rēgius*, *-a*, *-um*.
ruin, n. *ruīna*, *-ae*, F.; *calamitās*, *-tātis*, F.
ruined: **be —, perish**, *pereō*, 4, *-iī* (*-īvī*), *-itūrus*.
rule, v. *administrō*, 1.
rumor, *rūmor*, *-ōris*, M.
run away, *aufugiō*, 3, *-fūgī*, —.
run riot, be busy, *versor*, 1, *versātus*.
runaway, *fugitīvus*, *-ī*, M.

S

sacrifice, v. *sacra faciō*; *sacrificō*, 1.
safe, unharmed, *tūtus*, *-a*, *-um*; *incolumis*, *-e*.
safety, *salūs*, *-ūtis*, F.
sail, v. *nāvigō*, 1.
sailor, *nauta*, *-ae*, M.
sake: **for the — of**, *causā* with the gen.
salute, v. *salūtō*, 1.
same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*.
sanctity, *religiō*, *-ōnis*, F.
sanctuary, *sacrārium*, *-ī*, N.
save, *servō*, 1.
say, *dīcō*, 3, *dīxī*, *dictus*, *inquam*; *āiō*; **say in defense**, *dēfendō*, 3, *-fendī*, *-fēnsus*; **say . . . not**, *negō*, 1.
scanty, *exiguus*, *-a*, *-um*.
scarcely, *vix*, *nōn ferē*.
scheme, see **plan**.
Scipio, *Scīpiō*, *-nis*, M.
sea, *mare*, *-is*, N.
search for, *perquīrō*, 3, —, *-quīsītus*.
second, a. *secundus*, *-a*, *-um*.
secret plots, *īnsidiae*, *-ārum*, F.
secretly, *occultē*.
see, *videō*, 2, *vīdī*, *vīsus*; *aspiciō*, 3, *-exī*, *-ectus*.
see to, care for, *cūrō*, 1.
seek, see **ask**.
seem, passive of *videō*, 2, *vīdī*, *vīsus*.
Segesta, *Segesta*, *-ae*, F.
Segestans, *Segestānī*, *-ōrum*, M.
self, *ipse*, *-a*, *-um*; intens. pron.
self-gratification, see **pleasure**.

sell, *vĕndō*, 3, *-didī*, *-ditus*. Pass. is *vēneō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itūrus*.
senate, *senātus*, *-ūs*, M.
senate-house, *cūria*, *-ae*, F.
senator, *senātor*, *-ōris*, M.
send, *mittō*, 3, *mīsī*, *missus*.
send back, carry back, *reportō*, 1.
separate, v. *sēiungō*, 3, *-iūnxī*, *-iūnctus*.
serious, weighty, *gravis*, *-e*.
serve, *serviō*, 4.
serve as soldier, *mereō*, 2, *-uī*, *-itus*.
service, see **advantage**.
Servius, *Servius*, *-ī*, M.
sesterce, *sēstertius*, *-ī*, M., abbreviation HS.
set, see **place**.
set against, oppose, *oppōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*.
set apart, *dispertiō*, 4, *-īvī*, *-ītus*.
set before, *appōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*.
set out, *proficīscor*, 3, *profectus*; *exeō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itus*. In a trans. sense, *expōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*.
set up, *īnstituō*, 3, *-uī*, *-ūtus*.
several, *plūrēs*, *-a*; *aliquot* (indecl.); *nōnnūllī*, *-ae*, *-a*.
severe, *sevērus*, *-a*, *-um*.
shame, *pudor*, *-ōris*, M.
shameful, *turpis*, *-e*.
shameful act, crime, *flāgitium*, *-ī*, N.; *scelus*, *-eris*, N.
shameless, *improbus*, *-a*, *-um*.
shamelessly, *impudenter*.
share, v. *commūnicō*, 1.
ship, *nāvis*, *-is*, F.
shoulder, *umerus*, *-ī*, M.
show, v. *expōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*; *ostendō*, 3, *-tendī*, *-tentus*; *dēmōnstrō*, 1.
Sicilian, *Siculus*, *-ī*, M.
Sicily, *Sicilia*, *-ae*, F.
siege, *obsidiō*, *-ōnis*, F.
Silanus, *Silānus*, *-ī*, M.
silent: be —, *reticeō*, 2, *-uī*, —.
silver, silver plate, *argentum*, *-ī*, N.
similar, *similis*, *-e*.
sin, v. *peccō*, 1.
since, *cum*, *quoniam*.
Sisenna, *Sīsenna*, *-ae*, M.
sit down, be seated, *adsīdō*, 3, *-sēdī*, —.
site, seat, *sēdēs*, *-is*, F.
situated, *positus*, *-a*, *-um*, perf. part. of *pōnō*.
six, *sex*.
six hundred, *sescentī*, *-ae*, *-a*; **six-hundredth**, *sescentēsimus*, *-a*, *-um*.
skill, *facultās*, *-tātis*, F.; *artificium*, *-ī*, N.
skilled, *perītus*, *-a*, *-um*.
sky, *caelum*, *-ī*, N.
slave, *servus*, *-ī*, M.; often *puer*, especially in the plural.
sleep, v. *dormiō*, 4.
small, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*.
so, *ita*, *sīc*, *tam*, *usque eō*; **so . . . as**, *tam . . . quam*.
so great, *tantus*, *-a*, *-um*.
so many, *tot*, indecl.
society, *societās*, *-tātis*, F.
soften, *molliō*, 4.
sold: be —, *vēneō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itūrus*.
soldier, *mīles*, *-itis*, M.
some, *aliquis*, *-qua*, *-quid*.
some one, something, *aliquis*, *aliquid*; *quis*, *quid*; *quīvīs*, *quidvīs*; *nōn nēmō*, —. (For uses of these words consult the Gram.)
sometimes, *nōn numquam*.

son, *fīlius, -ī,* M.
son-in-law, *gener, -erī,* M.
soon, *mox.*
soon as possible, *quam prīmum.*
soothe, *dēlēniō,* 4, *-īvī, -ītus.*
sorrow, cause for mourning, *lāmentātiō, -nis,* F.
sovereignty, *imperium, -ī,* N.; *rēgnum, -ī,* N.
Spain, *Hispānia, -ae,* F.
spare, *parcō,* 3, *pepercī, parsus.*
sparingly, *parcē.*
Spartan, *Lacedaemonius, -a, -um.*
speak, *loquor,* 3, *locūtus; disputō,* 1. See also say.
speech, discourse, *sermō, -nis,* M.
speedy, early, *mātūrus, -a, -um.*
spend, consume, *cōnsūmō,* 3, *-sūmpsī, -sūmptus.*
spend the night, *pernoctō,* 1.
splendid, rich, *locuplēs, -ētis.*
splendidly furnished, *ōrnātus, -a, -um; apparātissimus, -a, -um.*
spoil, n. *spolia, -ōrum,* N.
spread, *sternō,* 3, *strāvī, strātus.*
stand, *stō,* 1, *stetī, status.*
stand, endure, *perstō,* 1, *-stitī, -stātūrus.*
state, *cīvitās, -tātis,* F.; *rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,* F.
state, condition, *status, -ūs,* M.
statue, *sīgnum, -ī,* N.; *simulācrum, -ī,* N.; *statua, -ae,* F.
steal, *surripiō,* 3, *-uī, -reptus.*
step, n. *gradus, -ūs,* M.
still, as yet, *adhūc.*
straightway, see immediately.
street, *via, -ae,* F.; *vīcus, -ī,* M.
strengthen, *cōnfīrmō,* 1.
strip, despoil, *spoliō,* 1.
strong, *fīrmus, -a, -um.*
struggle, n. *certāmen, -minis,* N.
subdue, *opprimō,* 3, *-pressī, -pressus.*
such, *talis, -e* (of quality); *tantus, -a, -um* (of size); such . . . as, *tālis . . . quālis; tantus . . . quantus.*
suffer, *patior,* 3, *passus.*
sufficiently, *satis.*
suicide: to commit —, *mortem sibi cōnscīscere* (*cōnscīscō,* 3, *-scīvī, -scītus*).
suited, adapted, *aptus, -a, -um.*
Sulla, *Sulla, -ae,* M.
Sulpicius, *Sulpicius, -ī,* M.
sum of money, *pecūnia, -ae,* F.
summon, *adhibeō,* 2; *arcessō,* 3, *-īvī, -ītus; vocō,* 1.
suppress, *comprimō,* 3, *-pressī, -pressus.*
supreme, *summus, -a, -um.*
surely, see certainly.
surpass, *superō,* 1; *vincō,* 3, *vīcī, victus;* see excel.
surpassing, *praestāns, -ntis.*
surprise, *opprimō,* 3, *-pressī, -pressus.*
surprising, see wonderful.
surrounded, *stīpātus, -a, -um,* perf. part. of *stīpō,* 1.
suspicion, *sūspīciō* (*-ciō*), *-nis,* F.
sword, *ferrum, -ī,* N.; *gladius, -ī,* M.
Syracusans, *Syrācūsānī, -ōrum,* M.
Syracuse, *Syrācūsae, -ārum,* F.
Syria, *Syria, -ae,* F.

T

table, *mēnsa, -ae,* F.
take, *capiō,* 3, *cēpī, captus;* take by storm, *vī capiō.*

take away, *aufero, auferre, abstulī, ablātus ; ēripiō*, 3, *-ripuī, -reptus ; adimō*, 3, *-ēmī, -ēmptus.*

take care, *cūrō*, 1.

take down, *dēmōlior*, 4.

take heed, *caveō*, 2, *cāvī, cautus.*

take ill, take to heart, *molestē ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.*

take part in, *intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.*

take up, consume, *sūmō*, 3, *sūmpsī, sūmptus.*

talent, *ingenium, -ī*, N.

talk, see **say**.

teach, *doceō*, 2, *docuī, doctus.*

teacher, *magister, -trī*, M.

tear, n. *lacrima, -ae*, F.

tear off, *āvellō*, 3, *-vellī, -vulsus.*

tell, see **say**; also *nārrō*, 1.

tell me, exclam. *quid.*

temperance, *temperantia, -ae*, F.

temple, *templum, -ī*, N.

tender, offer, *adhibeō*, 2, *-uī, -itus.*

tenth, *decimus, -a, -um.*

terrified, *perterritus, -a, -um.*

terror, *terror, -ōris*, M.

testimony, *tēstimōnium, -ī*, N.

than, *quam.*

thank, *grātiās agō*, 3, *ēgī, āctus.*

that, pron. *ille, -a, -ud ; iste, ista, istud ;* **that is**, *hōc est.*

that, in order that, so that, conj. introducing a clause of purpose or result, *ut ;* after neg. expression of doubt, *quīn.*

that not, *nē, ut nē, ut nōn.*

the . . . the, expressing degree of difference (with a comparative), *quō . . . eō.*

theater, *theātrum, -ī*, N

their, *suus, -a, -um* (reflex.). When not reflex. expressed by gen. of *is.*

then, *tum.*

thence, *inde.*

there, *ibi, eō.* As introductory expletive not translated.

therefore, *igitur, itaque, quā rē, quam ob rem.*

Thespiae, *Thespiae, -ārum*, F.

thing, event, circumstance, etc. *rēs, reī*, F.

think, *arbitror*, 1 ; *exīstimō*, 1 ; *putō*, 1.

third, *tertius, -a, -um.*

this, *hīc, haec, hōc ;* with less demonstrative force, *is, ea, id.*

thither, there, *eō, illūc.*

though, *cum, quamquam, licet.*

thousand, *mīlle*, N. Indecl. in sing.

threaten, *minor*, 1 ; *imminēō*, 2, —, —.

threatening, a. *mināx, -ācis.*

three years, *triennium, -ī*, N.

through, *per*, prep. with the acc.

thus, *sīc, ita.*

time, *tempus, -oris*, N. ; **for a short time**, *paulisper.*

Tlepolemus, *Tlēpolemus, -ī*, M.

to, when expressing purpose, *ut ;* object of motion towards, *ad* or *in* with the acc. Often expressed by the dat. case or by the infin.

toga, *toga, -ae*, F. ; **dressed in a toga**, *togātus.*

together, expressed by *inter* with reflex. pron.

too, also, adv. *etiam, quoque.*

too, excessively, adv. *nimium.*

torch, *fax, facis*, F.

touch, v. *attingō*, 3, *-tigī, -tactus.*

towards, *ergā*, prep. with the acc.
town, *oppidum*, *-ī*, N.
tranquillity, *tranquillitās*, *-tātis*.
transfer, *trānsferō*, *-ferre*, *-tulī*, *-lātus*.
traveler, *viātor*, *-ōris*, M.
treat, see discuss.
treaty, *foedus*, *-eris*, N.
Trebatius, *Trebātius*, *-ī*, M.
tribe, *gēns*, *gentis*, F.
trifling, a. *levis*, *-e*.
triumph, n. *triumphus*, *-ī*, M.
troublesome, annoying, *molestus*, *-a*, *-um*.
Troy, *Trōia*, *-ae*, F.
truly, *vērē*, *vērō*.
trustworthy, *certus*, *-a*, *-um*.
truth, *vērum*, *-ī*, N.; *vēritās*, *-tātis*, F.
try (of a case), *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*.
two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*.

U

uncertain, *incertus*, *-a*, *-um*.
undertake, *suscipiō*, 3, *-cēpī*, *-ceptus*.
undertaking, *susceptiō*, *-nis*, F.
unequal, *dispār*, *-paris*.
unexpectedly, *dē improvīsō*.
unite, *coniungo*, 3, *-iūnxī*, *-iūnctus*.
unpopular, *invidiōsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
until, *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*.
unwilling: be —, *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*, —.
up to this time, *adhūc*.
upright, *integer*, *-gra*, *-grum*.
usage, custom, principle, *īnstitūtum*, *-ī*, N.
use, v. *ūtor*, 3, *ūsus sum*.
used, be wont, *soleō*, 2, *solitus*.
Utica, *Utica*, *-ae*, F.; belonging to Utica, *Uticēnsis*, *-e*.

V

vain: in —, *frūstrā*.
valor, see virtue.
value, price, n. *pretium*, *-ī*, N.
value, estimate, v. *aestimō*, 1.
Verres, *Verrēs*, *-is*, M.
very, intens. *ipse*, *-a*, *-um*; *sānē*; *admodum*.
vessel, *vās*, *vāsis*, N.
vested in, resident in, *situs*, *-a*, *-um*.
vice, *vitium*, *-ī*, N.
victor, *victor*, *-ōris*, M.
villa, *vīlla*, *-ae*, F.
violate, do violence, *violō*, 1.
violent, *vehemēns*, *-entis*.
violently, *vehementer*.
virtue, *virtūs*, *-tūtis*, F.
visit, go to see, *vīsō*, 3, *vīsī*, *vīsus*.
voice, *vōx*, *vōcis*, F.

W

wage, carry on, *gerō*, 3, *gessī*, *gestus*.
wait for, wait, *exspectō*, 1.
wake, be wakeful, *vigilō*, 1.
walk, *ambulō*, 1.
wall, *moenia*, *-ium*, N.; *mūrus*, *-ī*, M.
want, be lacking, *dēsum*, *-esse*, *-fuī*, *-futūrus*.
want of nobility, *īgnōbilitās*, *-tātis*, F.
war, *bellum*, *-ī*, N.
warlike, *bellicus*, *-a*, *-um*.
warning, *monitus*, *-ūs*, M.
watchful, *vigilāns*, *-antis*.
wave, n. *fluctus*, *-ūs*, M.

wax, *cēra*, *-ae*, F.
way, *via*, *-ae*, F.
weak, *īnfīrmus*, *-a*, *-um*.
weaken, *labefactō*, 1.
weakness, *īnfīrmitās*, *-tātis*, F.
weapon, *tēlum*, *-ī*, N.
wear, *gestō*, 1.
weary, v. *taedet*, 2, —, —.
weather (esp. favorable), *tempestās*, *-tātis*, F.
weight, *pondus*, *-eris*, N.
weighty, serious, *gravis*, *-e*; *ponderōsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
well, *bene*, *optimē*.
what, *quī* (*quis*), *quae*, *quod* (*quid*), adj.; *quid*, N. subst.; **what sort of**, *quālis*, *-e*; **what of the fact that**, *quid quod*.
when, *cum*, *ubi*.
whence, *unde*.
where, *ubi*.
whether, *utrum*, *-ne*, *sī*, *num*; often omitted in indirect double questions.
whether any one, whether anything, *ecquis*, *ecquid*.
which, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; **which (of two)**, *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*.
while, *dum*.
whither, *quō*.
who, which (rel.), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.
who, which, what (interrog.), *quis*, *quae*, *quid*.
whoever, whatever, *quisquis*, *quicquid*.
whole, *tōtus*, *-a*, *-um*. See also **all**.
why, *cūr*, *quid*.
wicked, *scelerātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
wide, *lātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
widely, *lātē*.
wife, *coniūnx*, *coniugis*, F.
wild, savage, *ferus*, *-a*, *-um*.
will, n. *arbitrium*, *-ī*, N.
will: **good —**, wish, *voluntās*, *-tātis*, F.
willing: **be —**, see **wish**.
win, *pariō*, 3, *peperī*, *paritus* or *partus*; *conciliō*, 1.
winter, *hiems*, *hiemis*, F.
wisdom, *sapientia*, *-ae*, F.
wise, *sapiēns*, *-ntis*; **wise man**, *sapiēns*, *-ntis*, M.
wish, v. *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, —; stronger is *cupiō*, 3, *-īvī*, *-ītus*.
with, *cum*, prep. with the abl.; *apud*, prep. with the acc. When denoting means, expressed by the abl. without a prep.
within, *intrā*, prep. with the acc.
without, *sine*, prep. with the abl.
witness, n. *index*, *-icis*, M. and F.; *tēstis*, *-is*, M. and F.
witness, v., **bear witness**, *tēstor*, 1.
wittily, *facētē*.
woman, *mulier*, *-is*, F.; as term of contempt, *muliercula*, *-ae*, F.
wonder, v. *admīror*, 1; *mīror*, 1.
wonderful, *mīrus*, *-a*, *-um*.
wonderfully, *mīrificē*.
wont: **be —**, *soleō*, 2, *solitus*; *cōnsuēscō*, 3, *-suēvī*, *-suētus*.
word, *verbum*, *-ī*, N.
work, workmanship, *opus*, *operis*, N.
work of art, *artificium*, *-ī*, N.
workshop, *officīna*, *-ae*, F.
world, *orbis* (*-is*, M.) *terrae* or *terrārum*.
worship, v. *colō*, 3, *coluī*, *cultus*
worth, *dīgnitās*, *-tātis*, F.

worthy, *dīgnus*, *-a*, *-um*.
would that, *utinam*.
wound, n. *vulnus*, *-eris*, N.
wretched, *miser*, *-era*, *-erum*.
write, *scrībō*, 3, *scrīpsī*, *scrīptus*.
writing: a —, *scrīptum*, *-ī*, N.
wrong, see **injury**.
wrong-doing, *dēlīctum*, *-ī*, N.

yet, *tamen*.
you, *tū*, *tuī*, pers. pron.
your, sing. *tuus*, *-a*, *-um*; plur. *vester*, *-tra*, *-trum*. Sometimes expressed by *iste*, *-a*, *-ud*, the demonstrative of the second person.
youth, *adulēscēns*, *-ntis*, M. and F.

Y

year, *annus*, *-ī*, M.
yearly, *quotannīs*.

Z

zeal, *studium*, *-ī*, N.
zealous, *studiōsus*, *-a*, *-um*.

SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS

NOTE. — In this list only such words are given as are needed in the exercises, and only such broad distinctions of meaning have been noted as seemed most essential and most likely to be useful to young students.

account, on account of: —
- **ob** signifies the object in view.
- **causā**, the inner purpose.
- **propter**, the outer motive.
- Often expressed by the Ablative of Cause.

again: —
- **iterum**, *a second time, again.*
- **rūrsus**, *again*, of any number of times.

all, see **whole.**

allow, see **permit.**

also: —
- **etiam** (**et** + **iam**) emphasizes the following word.
- **quoque** adds a new thought and emphasizes the word it immediately follows.

ancient, see **old.**

and: —
- **et** simply connects, with no secondary meaning.
- **que** connects more closely than **et** and is especially common in uniting words closely related into a single whole.
- **atque** (**ac**) throws emphasis on the second member.

and: —
- *and not* should be rendered by **nec** or **neque.**

announce: —
- **nūntiāre**, *announce news.*
- **praedicāre**, *make a public declaration*, especially of some one's exploits or virtues.
- **adferre**, *bring word, carry news.*

army: —
- **exercitus**, *a trained body of men*, the usual term.
- **āgmen**, *the army on the march.*
- **aciēs**, *the line of battle.*

ask: —
- **rogāre**, *to ask a question;* also, *to ask for something.*
- **ōrāre**, a stronger word, *to beg, pray.*
- **quaerere**, *seek for information, inquire*, especially of a judicial trial.
- **petere**, *seek by asking.*

begin: —
- **inīre**, *enter upon.*
- **incipere**, *take in hand*, used in tenses of incomplete action with following infinitive.

begin (*continued*): —

coepisse (like the preceding), used in tenses of completed action with following infinitive.

ōrdīrī, begin a continued piece of work, as *to begin a book*.

īnstituere, *establish* or *organize* for a definite purpose.

but: —

sed corrects what precedes, the usual word.

at makes a sharp contrast with what precedes, and is often used in argument to introduce an objection.

autem, much weaker than **sed** or **at**, continues the train of thought by a transition to something new, not necessarily opposed to what has been said. Always postpositive.

vērō (**vērum**), *in truth*, gives prominence to what follows.

call: —

appellāre, *call*, *address*, by the right name or title.

nōmināre, *give a name*, *call by name*.

vocāre, *call*, *summon*.

children: —

līberī, *children*, with original emphasis on freedom of birth.

puerī, in respect to age, *boys and girls*.

command: —

iubēre, usual word.

imperāre, *command*, by right of authority.

consider, see **think**.

daily: —

cotīdiē, happening every day.

in diēs with expressions of increase or decrease.

decide: —

statuere, **cōnstituere**, usual terms.

cēnsēre, *decide officially*, as of the senate.

dēcernere, *decide after deliberation*.

deliver, set free: —

līberāre, usually of persons.

ēripere, stronger than preceding word, of both persons and things.

demand: —

pōstulāre, *to demand*, as a right.

pōscere, *to demand*, with the expectation that what is asked must be granted.

flāgitāre, *to demand urgently*.

desert, see **leave**.

desire, see **wish**.

determine, see **decide**.

discover, see **find**.

distinguished: —

celeber, mostly of places, *famous*, *much visited*.

amplus, *large*, *magnificent*, *splendid*, fundamental idea one of size.

clārus, *brilliant*, for great deeds.

īnsīgnis, *noted* in good or bad sense.

nōbilis, *of distinguished birth*, *noble*, but also used of places and events.

either . . . or : —

aut . . . aut, the alternatives exclude each other, as *either true or false*.

vel . . . vel, a choice of alternatives is offered or one may take both or reject both.

sīve . . . sīve, when it is a matter of indifference which is taken.

enemy : —

inimīcus, *a personal foe*.

hostis, *a public enemy*.

entire, see **whole**.

escape : —

effugere, with speed, from impending danger.

ēlābī, *slip away by stealth*.

especially : —

praesertim, *particularly*, used only before **cum** causal or **sī**.

maximē, of degree, *most of all*.

potissimum, of preference, *above all*.

famous, see **distinguished**.

fear : —

metuere, used of fear arising from motives of prudence, *rational fear*.

timēre, used of *cowardly fear*.

pertimēscere, to become thoroughly frightened.

formīdāre, used of sudden *terror*, *panic*.

pavēre, *tremble with fear*.

verērī, to fear from sense of awe or respect.

The corresponding substantives **metus**, **timor**, **formīdō**, and **pavor** differ in the same way.

find : —

invenīre, *find by chance*.

reperīre, *find by seeking*.

comperīre, *find with certainty*.

fire : —

īgnis, the usual word.

flamma, *a blazing fire*.

incendium, *a great fire*, *conflagration*.

flee : —

fugere, the usual word.

cōnfugere, *flee for refuge*.

effugere, *escape*, *flee from danger*.

perfugere, *escape* (and arrive at a secure place).

great : —

māgnus, the usual word.

amplus, **grandis**, *great*, with the added notion of splendor and magnificence.

ingēns, *huge*, *vast*, stronger than **māgnus**.

grief : —

dolor, *pain* either mental or physical.

maeror, *grief*, *sorrow*, silent and dumb pain of heart.

lūctus, *mourning*, as shown by the appearance and dress.

happen : —

fit, *it is done*, *it happens*, with no secondary implication.

accidit, mostly of unfortunate events (cf. Eng. *accident*).

contingit, mostly of fortunate events.

ēvenit, *it turns out*, as a result of previous circumstances.

history : —
historia, the written account.
rēs gestae, the events which make history.

house : —
domus, the usual word, *a dwelling*.
aedēs, a house or building with emphasis on the space inclosed by it.
domicilium, one's legal place of residence.
sēdēs, one's settled abode.
aedificium, a building of any kind, with emphasis on its structure.

immediately : —
statim, *on the spot, at once*.
continuō, with no intervening time.

inhabit, see **live**.

judge, see **think**.

kill : —
interficere, *kill* in any manner, the generic word.
occīdere, *kill by blows, cut down*, especially in war.
necāre, *kill cruelly, murder*.
trucīdāre, *butcher*.

know : —
scīre, *know, understand*, in widest sense.
nōscere (cōgnōscere), *learn, become acquainted with*, of personal acquaintance or otherwise.
sentīre, *know*, by the senses and feelings.
See also **perceive**.

labor : —
opus, the successful result of toil, *work*.
labor, *toil, exertion*.

large, see **great**.

law : —
lex, *statute law, written law*, as opposed to mōs, the unwritten law of custom.
iūs, *right, justice, the aggregate of laws*.
fās, *divine law*, that which is right before God.

leave : —
relinquere, *leave behind*, with no secondary implication.
dēserere, *leave, desert*, in a bad sense.

letter : —
littera, a letter of the alphabet.
litterae, anything written, *a letter*, also *literature*.
epistula, a more formal term, *a letter*, lays stress on its epistolary form.

live : —
vīvere, generic word.
habitāre, generally of individuals.
incolere, generally of tribes or people.

long : —
diū, *long* in time.
longē, *long, far*, in space.

lose : —
perdere, *lose absolutely*, beyond recall.
āmittere, *lose*, through fate or misfortune, what one misses.

love : —
amāre, to love from passion.
dīligere, to love from respect and admiration.

man : —
homō, *a human being*, either M. or F.
vir, *a man*, as male, or as manly.

meal : —
convīvium, *a meal*, with emphasis on its social character.
epulum, **epulae**, *a meal*, with emphasis on its sumptuous character, *a banquet*.

mention, see **tell**.

mercy : —
lēnitās, *gentleness* in conduct.
misericordia, *pity*, springing from feeling in the heart.

mind : —
ingenium, *inborn talent*, *genius*.
mēns, *mind*, *intellect*.
animus, *the soul*, *heart*, as seat of the emotions.

money : —
pecūnia, generic term.
nummus, *coined money*, a piece of money.

must : —
dēbēre, *ought*, of moral obligation to one's self.
oportēre, *ought*, for reasons of personal expediency as well as of duty to others.
necesse est, *must*, of that which cannot be avoided, fate.
The second periphrastic is general and can take the place of any of these words.

name, see **call**.

need : —
opus esse, *be in need of*.
carēre, *be without*, *be free from*, *lack* (perhaps unconsciously).
egēre, **indigēre**, *be in absolute need of*.

noble, see **distinguished**.

obey : —
pārēre, to do habitually what is ordered.
obtemperāre, to conform to another's pleasure or desire.

old : —
antīquus, what was long ago, and is perhaps no longer.
prīscus, stronger than the former, what once was and is no longer, old-fashioned.
vetus, what has long existed and perhaps still is.

on account of, see **account**.

or, see **either**.
an, used only in double questions.

other : —
alter, *the other* of two.
alius, *another* of more than two.
cēterī, *the others* of the same class.
reliquī, *the rest*, all that remain.

ought, see **must**.

perceive : —
perspicere, *see through*, *see clearly*.
animadvertere, *turn the mind to*, *perceive*.
intellegere, *understand*.
sentīre, *feel*.

permit : —
sinere, *allow*, *let happen*.
patī, *suffer*, in patience, what one would ordinarily resist.
permittere, *permit* willingly.
licet, *permit* what is allowable.

plan : —
cōnsilium, usual word.
ratiō, the method for carrying out a plan, *course*, *conduct*.

plan, devise : —
cōgitāre, *meditate*, *devise*, *ponder*.
mōlīrī, *plan*, of some great and laborious work.

pleasing : —
amoenus, *charming*, *beautiful*, of the beauties of nature.
iūcundus, *pleasant*, *delightful*, in itself.
grātus, *pleasant*, *grateful*, because of its worth.

power : —
facultās, *ability* in general.
potestās, *civil authority*.
imperium, *military power*.
potentia, *strength*, *might*, that leads to power.

powerful : —
potēns, *having power* to exert.
fīrmus, *having power* to resist.

pray : —
ōrāre, *beg*, loudly and earnestly.
precārī, *pray*, as prayer to God.
supplicāre, *beg humbly*, with bent knees, conscious of the great power of him to whom we pray.

pretend : —
simulāre, *pretend* that a thing is so.

pretend : —
dissimulāre, *pretend* that a thing is not so.

promise : —
pollicērī, *offer*, of one's own accord.
prōmittere, *promise faithfully*, *assure*.

protect : —
tuērī, *protect*, guard against possible dangers.
tegere, *protect*, in the sense of shelter.
dēfendere, *protect*, ward off a real attack.

rejoice : —
gaudēre indicates the emotion aroused by joy.
laetārī indicates the manifestation of the emotion.

remove : —
dēmovēre, *move* something from its place.
removēre, *move back*, *take away*.
tollere, *lift up*, *remove* by lifting.

reply : —
respondēre, *reply* to a question.
rescrībere, *reply* to a letter.

report, see **announce**.

request, see **ask**.

right, see **law**.

ruin : —
calamitās, *loss*, *disaster*.
ruīna, *crash*, *downfall*.

safe : —
tūtus, *safe* from danger of attack.
salvus, *safe*, after attack.
incolumis, *unharmed*.

say : —

loquī, of conversational language.

dīcere, the usual word for either formal or informal language.

inquam, *say I*, inserted in a direct quotation.

aiō, *say*, *assent*.

see : —

vidēre, *see* with the eyes.

cernere, *see clearly*.

spectāre, *look at*, as a spectacle.

cōnspicere, *look at*, with care and attention.

See also **perceive**.

seek, see **ask**.

several : —

Words of indefinite number run from few to many as follows: **perpaucī**, **paucī**, **aliquot**, **nōn nūllī**, **plūrēs**, **multī**, **plūrimī**, **plērīque**.

shameful act : —

flāgitium, with emphasis on the disgrace.

scelus, with emphasis on the impiety and wickedness.

show : —

expōnere, *set forth*, *show*.

ostendere, *show*, *exhibit*.

dēmōnstrāre, *prove*.

skill : —

facultās, *skill* in general, *ability*.

artificium, *skill* of the artist.

so : —

adeō, **ūsque eō**, *to such a degree*, used with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

tam, *so*, used only with adjectives and adverbs.

so : —

ita, **sīc**, *so*, *in such a way*, used only with verbs. **ita** usually refers to what precedes, **sīc** to what follows.

sovereignty : —

imperium, *supreme authority*, more rarely the *district* governed.

rēgnum, *regal dignity*, also the *district* over which the authority is exerted.

speak, see **say**.

spirit, see **mind**.

state : —

cīvitās, *the organized state*, *citizenship* in the state, *body of citizens*.

rēs pūblica, *the commonwealth*, *the State*, *the republic*; *public interests*, *public affairs*.

statue : —

sīgnum, **simulācrum**, generally of a god.

statua, used only of human figures.

street : —

vīcus, *row of houses*, *quarter of the city*, *street*.

via, *a road*, *way*.

strength : —

vīs, for offensive action.

rōbur, for defensive action.

summon : —

vocāre, *call*, generic term.

convocāre, *call together*, *assemble*.

arcessere, *invite*, *fetch*.

adhibēre, *summon* for assistance, *employ*.

surpass : —
vincere, *conquer*.
antecellere, *be superior to*.
praestāre, *stand before* and above.
superāre, *be superior to*, *surpass*.

take away : —
auferre, *carry off*.
adimere, *take*, *deprive*.
ēripere, *take violently*, *seize*.
See also **remove**.

tell : —
narrāre, *tell* for one's information.
memorāre, *tell* and make famous.
commemorāre, *mention* boastfully.

thank : —
grātiam habēre, *feel thankful*.
grātiās agere, *thank*.
grātiam referre, *requite a favor*.

think : —
opīnārī, *suppose*, whether correctly or incorrectly.
putāre, *reckon*, *think*, a well-considered opinion.
sentīre, an opinion based on the feelings.
exīstimāre, *weigh*, *judge*.
arbitrārī, *believe*, *think*, in consequence of sensual perception, not always sure.

think : —
cēnsēre, **iūdicāre**, a formal opinion as of a judge or the senate.

wall : —
mūrus, *wall* of any kind.
pariēs, *wall* of a house.
moenia, *wall* for defense.

want, see **need**.

whole : —
omnis, in the singular *every one* (opposed to **nēmō**), in the plural *all*, regarded as a collection of units.
tōtus, *all*, *entire*, opposed to separate parts.
cūnctus, *all* united in one body.
ūniversus, *all* sharing alike, taken together.

wish : —
velle, any kind of volition implying a purpose to obtain.
optāre, *wish*, *desire*, often of a vain and extravagant nature.
cupere, *desire eagerly*.
dēsīderāre, *longing* for something that is missing.

woman : —
fēmina, with emphasis upon sex.
mulier, with emphasis on womanly character.
uxor, **coniūnx**, *a married woman*.
mātrōna, *a matron* with emphasis on dignity of character.

GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

§ = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; G. = Gildersleeve-Lodge;
H. = Harkness; H-B. = Hale and Buck.

The references in parentheses are to the old editions.

The Ablative Case

1. General Consideration, § 399 (242); B. 213; G. 384; H. 459 (411); H-B. 403.
2. Absolute, § 419, 420 (255); B. 227; G. 409, 410; H. 489 (431); H-B. 421.
3. Accompaniment, § 413. *a*, *b* (248. 7); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1; 474 (419. I. 1); H-B. 418, 419, 420.
4. Agent, § 405. N. 1, N. 2 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 467, 468 (415. 1); H-B. 406. 1. *b*.
5. Cause, § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444. *c*.
6. Comparison, § 406, 407. *a*, *c* (247); B. 217; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. *d*.
7. Degree of Difference, § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424.
8. With dignus and indignus, § 418. *b* (245. *a*. 1); B. 226. 2; G. 397. 2; H. 481 (421. III); H-B. 442.
9. Manner, § 412. *a*, *b* (248); B. 220; G. 399; H. 473. 3 (419. III); H-B. 445. 1–3; 422.
10. Means, § 408, 409 (248. 8); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. *a*.
11. With opus and ūsus, § 411 (243. *e*); B. 218. 2; G. 406; H. 477. III (414. IV); H-B. 430. 1.

Place, see **Place, Expressions of.**

12. Price, § 416, 417. *b*, *c* (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. 1, 2. R.
13. Quality or Characteristic, § 415. *a* (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. II); H-B. 443.

Route, or Way By Which, see **Place, Expressions of.**

14. Separation, § 400, 401, 402 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 461–466 (414); H-B. 408. 1, 2, 3; 410, 411, 412.

15. Source, Origin, and Material, § 403. *a* (244); B. 215; G. 395, 396; H. 467–470 (415); H-B. 413, 406. 4.

16. Specification, § 418. *a* (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

Time, see **Time, Expressions of.**

17. With **ūtor, fruor,** etc., § 410. N. (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. I); H-B. 429.

The Accusative Case

18. Adverbial, § 397. *a* (240. *a*, *b*); B. 176. 3; 185; G. 333; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); H-B. 388, 389.

19. Cognate, § 390. *a*, *c*, *d* (238); B. 176; G. 332, 333; H. 409 (371. II); H-B. 396. 1, 2.

20. Direct Object, § 387. *a*, *b* (237); B. 172 ff.; G. 330; H. 404 (371); H-B. 390. *a*.

21. Extent of Space, § 425. *a*, *b* (257); B. 181; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 397. I.

22. Infinitive, Subject of, § 397. *e* (240. *f*); B. 184; G. 343. 2; H. 415, 610, 612 (536); H-B. 398.

Motion, Limit or End of, see **Place, Expressions of.**

Time, Duration of, see **Time, Expressions of.**

23. With Verbs of Feeling (mostly impersonal), § 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457 (406. I; 409. III); H-B. 352.

Two Accusatives

24. Direct Object and Predicate Accusative, § 391, 392, 393. *a* (239. *a*); B. 177; G. 340; H. 410 (373); H-B. 392.

25. Person and Thing, § 394, 395. N. 3; 396. *a* (239. *b*. 2. *b*, *c*. N. 1, R.); B. 178; G. 339; H. 411–413 (374–376); H-B. 393. *a*, *b*.

Agreement

26. General Forms of, § 280 (181, 182); G. 210, 211. R. 1; H-B. 316–318.

27. Adjective with Noun, § 285–287 (186, 187); B. 234, 235; G. 211, 285, 286; H. 394, 395 (438, 439); H-B. 320, 321, 323.

28. Noun in Apposition or as Predicate, § 281–284 (183–185); B. 167–169; G. 320–325, 386. R. 1; 411. R. 3; H. 393 (362–364); H-B. 319. I, II.

29. Relative with Antecedent, § 305, 306 (198, 199); B. 250; G. 614; H. 396–399 (445); H-B. 281. *a*.

30. Verb with Subject, § 316 (204, 205); B. 254; G. 211; H. 388, 390, 391 (460, 462); H-B. 328, 329, 331. 1; 332.

31. Verb with Two or More Subjects, § 317 (205); B. 255; G. 285–287; H. 392 (463); H-B. 329, 331. 3.

alius and **alter**

32. § 315 (203); B. 253. 1–3; G. 319; H. 516 (459); H-B. 279.

antequam, see **Temporal Clauses**.

Apposition, see **Agreement**.

Arrangement of Clauses

33. § 600, 601 (346); B. 351; G. 684 ff.; H. 681 ff. (570 ff.); H-B. 626, 629.

Causal Clauses

34. With **cum** and **quī**, § 540. *c*, *d*; 549, 535. *e* (320. *e*; 321. *c*; 326); B. 286. 2; 283. 3. *a*; G. 586, 626; H. 592, 598, 599 (517); H-B. 523, 526, 527.

35. With **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, and **quandō**, § 540. *a* (321. N. 3); B. 285, 286; G. 539 ff.; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555, 535. 2. *a*, *b*.

Characteristic, Clauses of

36. § 535. *a*, *b* (320. *a*, *b*); B. 283. 1, 2; G. 631. 1, 2; H. 591. 1 (503. I); H-B. 520, 521. 1. *a–c*.

Concessive Clauses

37. § 527. *a–d*; 549, 535. *e* (313); B. 308, 309; G. 603 ff.; H. 586, 593. 2 (514, 515); H-B. 532, 556. *a*; 582. 8; 525, 526.

Conditional Sentences

38. With Indicative, or of the First Form, § 515. *a*; 516. 1. *a* (306, 307); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574, 575 (508); H-B. 579. *a*.

39. With Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or of the Second Form, § 516. 2. *b*, *c*, *d* (307. 2); B. 303; G. 596; H. 576, 577 (509); H-B. 580. *a*.

40. With the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or of the Third Form, § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.

41. Conditions Contrary to Fact with the Indicative in the Apodosis, § 517. *c*, *d* (308. *c*, *d*); B. 304. 3; G. 597.3. (*a*); H. 582, 583 (511. N. 3; 2); H-B. 581. *a*; 582. 3. *a*.

42. Comparison, with Omitted Apodosis, § 524 (312); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584 (513. II); H-B. 504. 3.

43. Conditions in which the Protasis denotes Repeated Action, § 518. *a*, *b* (304. *d*; 309. *a*, *c*); B. 302. 2, 3; G. 566, 567, 594. N. 1; H. 578 (508. 5); H-B. 504. 2; 540.

Consecutive Clauses, see **Result Clauses**.

The Dative Case

44. General Consideration of, § 361 (224); B. 186; G. 344; H. 422, 423 (382); H-B. 358.

45. With Adjectives, § 383, 384 (234); B. 192; G. 359; H. 434 (391); H-B. 362. I–III; 339. *c*.

46. Agent, § 374. *a* (232); B. 189; G. 354, 355; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1, 2.

47. With Compounds, § 370. *a*; 371 (228); B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

48. Indirect Object, § 362. *a*; 366 (225, 226); B. 187; G. 345, 346; H. 424 (384); H-B. 365.

49. With Special Intransitive Verbs, § 367 (227); B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 426–428 (385); H-B. 362. I–III.

50. With Passive Intransitive Verbs, § 369. *a*; 372 (230); B. 187. II. *b*; G. 208. 2; 346. 1; H. 426. 3 (384. 5); H-B. 364. 2.

51. Possession, § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374.

52. Purpose or End, § 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360, 361.

53. Reference or Interest, § 376 (235); B. 188; G. 352; H. 425. 1, 2, 4 (384. II. 1. 1), 2); 4); H-B. 366, 369.

54. Separation, § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*); G. 347. 5; H. 427 (385. II. 2); H-B. 371.

dum with the Present, see **Indicative Mood, Present Tense.**

dum, modo, dum modo

55. In clauses denoting a Wish or Proviso, § 528 (314); B. 310; G. 573; H. 587 (513. I); H-B. 529.

Emphasis, see **Word-Order** and **Arrangement of Clauses.**

Final Clauses, see **Purpose Clauses.**

Genitive Case with Nouns

56. General Rules, § 342 (213); H. 437–439 (393–395); H-B. 337.

57. With Adjectives, § 349. *a–c* (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 ff. (399); H-B. 354.

58. Apposition with a Possessive Pronoun, § 302. *e* (184. *d*); B. 243. 3. *a*; G. 321. 2; H. 393. 6 (363. 4. 1); H-B. 339. *b*.

59. Material, § 344 (214. 2); B. 197; H-B. 349.

60. Objective Genitive, § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. III); H-B. 354.

61. Partitive, § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367–372; H. 440. 5; 441–444 (397. *a*. 1–4; *c*, *e*); H-B. 346. *c*.

62. Possessive, § 343 (214. 1); B. 198; G. 362; H. 440. 1 (396. I); H-B. 339. *a*, *b*.

63. Predicate Genitive, § 343. *c* (214. 1. *c*); B. 198. 3; 203. 5; G. 366; H. 447 ff. (401 ff.); H-B. 340.

Price, see **Ablative of Price.**

64. Quality or Description, § 345 (215); B. 203; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. V); H-B. 355.

65. Subjective, § 343. N. 1 (214); B. 199; G. 363; H. 440. 1 (396. II); H-B. 344.

Genitive Case with Verbs

66. With Verbs of Feeling (mostly impersonal), § 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457 (406. I; 409. III); H-B. 352.

67. With interest and rēfert, § 355 (222); B. 210 ff.; G. 381; H. 449 (406. III); H-B. 345.

68. With Verbs of Judicial Action, § 352 (220); B. 208; G. 378; H. 456 (409. II); H-B. 342, 343.

69. With Verbs of Plenty and Want, § 356 (223); B. 212; G. 383; H. 458 (410. V. 1); H-B. 347.

70. With Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting, § 350, 351 (219); B. 206; G. 376; H. 454, 455 (406. II); H-B. 350, 351.

The Gerund and Gerundive

71. Genitive, § 504. *a*, *b* (298); B. 338. 1; 339; G. 428; H. 626 (542. I; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. I.

72. Dative, § 505. *a* (299); B. 338. 2; 339; G. 429; H. 627 (542. II; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. I, II.

73. Accusative, § 506 (300); B. 338. 3; 339; G. 430, 432; H. 628 (542. III; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. III.

74. Ablative, § 507 (301); B. 338. 4; 339; G. 431, 433; H. 629–631 (542. IV; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. IV.

Hortatory or Volitive Subjunctive

75. § 439, 450 (3) (266. R. *b*); B. 273–276; G. 263, 264; H. 559. 1, 2 (483. 3; 484. II, IV); H-B. 500, 501. 2, 3.

Imperative Mood

76. § 448–450 (269. *d*, *e*); B. 281. 1, 2; G. 266, 267. R.; H. 560, 561 (487. 1, 2; 488, 489); H-B. 495, 496, 501. 3. *a*. 1), 2).

Tenses of the Indicative Mood

77. General Consideration, § 437 (264); B. 257, 258; G. 222–226; H. 523, 524 (474, 475); H-B. 468.

78. Present, § 465. 466, 469 (276); B. 259, 293. I; G. 227–230; H. 532, 533 (466, 467); H-B. 468. 1; 491. 1; 485.

79. Imperfect, § 470, 471. *a*, *b*, *c* (277. N. *a*, *b*, *c*); B. 260; G. 231–234; H. 530, 534. 2, 3; 535 (468, 469. I, II. 1, 2); H-B. 468. 2; 484, 485.

80. Perfect, § 161, 473, 474, 476 (115. *c*; 279. *a*, *e*); B. 262; G. 235, 236, 239, 240; H. 538 (471. 1, 2, 3); H-B. 468. 4. *a*; 487, 489.

81. Future, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect, § 472, 477, 478 (278, 281, 280); B. 261, 264, 263; G. 242–244, 241; H. 536, 540, 539 (470, 473, 472); H-B. 468. 3, 5, 6; 494.

Indirect Discourse

82. Commands, § 588. *a*. N. 1, N. 2 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. III); H-B. 538.

Conditions

83. With the Indicative, or of the First Class, § 589. *a* (337. 1, 2; Ex. 1, 2, 3); B. 319; G. 595. R. 1; 656. 1, 2; 657; H. 646 (527. I); H-B. 534. 1. *b*; 2; 536.

84. With the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or of the Second Class, § 589. *a*. 3 (337. 1, 2. *a*. Ex. 3); B. 320; G. 658; H. 646 (527. II); H-B. 534. 1. *b*; 580.

85. With the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or of the Third Class, § 589. *b*. 1–4. N. 1, N. 3 (337. *b*. 1, 2, 3); B. 321, 322; G. 659; H. 647 (527. III. N. 1); H-B. 581. *b*. 1), N.; 472. *c*.

86. Passive Apodoses in Indirect Discourse, § 589. *b*. 3; 569. *a* (337. *b*. 3; 288. *f*); B. 270. 3; 321. 1, 2; G. 248. N. 3; H. 647. 2; 619. 2 (527. III. N. 1; 537. 3); H-B. 472. *c*.

87. Declaratory Sentences, § 578–585 (336. 1, 2. *a*, *b*, *c*. N. 1, N. 2; 336. A; 336. B); B. 313, 314, 317, 318; G. 648, 649, 650, 653–655; H. 641–645, 617–620 (522, 523. I; 524–526, 537); H-B. 533, 534. 1, 2; 589, 591, 593.

88. Implied or Informal Indirect Discourse, § 592. 1, 2, 3 (340, 341); B. 323; G. 508. 3; 628, 663. 2; H. 649. I (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. *a*; 536. *a*.

89. Interrogative Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 586, 587 (338); B. 315; G. 651; H. 642 (523. II); H-B. 537.

Infinitive Mood

90. Complementary Infinitive, § 456–458 (271); B. 328; G. 423; H. 607, 608 (533); H-B. 586. *a*.

91. Historical Infinitive, § 463. N. (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595.

92. As Object, § 459, 579, 563. *a*, *b* (272, 330. B); B. 329, 331, 332; G. 526–533; H. 534, 535 (414, 613, 614); H-B. 589, 587.

93. As Subject or Predicate, § 452, 454 (270. 1. *a*, *b*; 272. R. 2; 330. *a*, *b*, *c*); B. 325–327, 329, 330, 332. N.; G. 419–422, 535; H. 611, 615, 616. 1 (534. 1. N. 1, N. 2; 538, 539. I); H-B. 597. 1. *a*); 585, 589, 590. 1, 2.

94. Tenses of the Infinitive, § 486, 584 (288, 336. A); B. 270; G. 281 530, 531; H. 617–620 (537); H-B. 472, 593. *a*.

Locative, see **Place, Expressions of.**

Optative Subjunctive

95. § 441, 442 (267. *a*, *b*); B. 279; G. 260, 261; H. 558. 1, 2 (483. 1. 2, 3; 484. I); H-B. 510, 511. 1.

The Participle

96. General Consideration, § 488 (289); H. 636 (548); H-B. 599. *a*, *b*, *c*.

97. Adjective and Predicate Uses, § 494. *a*; 495, 496 (291, 292); B. 337; G. 664 ff.; H. 637, 638 (549); H-B. 320, 604. 1–7.

98. Future Passive Participle (Gerundive) denoting Purpose, § 500. 4 (294. *d*'); B. 337. 7. *b*), 2); G. 430; H. 622 (544. N. 2); H-B. 605. 2.

99. Second Periphrastic Conjugation, § 194. *b*, *c*; 196, 500. 2 (129, 294. *b*); B. 115, 337. *b*). 1); G. 251; H. 237 (234); H-B. 162, 600. 3.

100. Tenses of the Participle, § 489–493 (290); B. 336; G. 282; H. 640 (550); H-B. 600. 1, 2, 3, 4; 602. 1, 2.

Place, Expressions of

101. Locative, § 427. 3. *a* (258. *c*. 2; *d*, *e*); B. 232; G. 411; H. 78. 4; 83. 4; 108 (48. 4; 51. 8; 66. 4); H-B. 449. *a*; 454. 1–3.

102. Place **at** or **in which**, § 426. 3; 427. 3; 428. *b*, *d*. N. 1 (258. *c*, *f*); B. 228; G. 385–387; H. 483, 485. 1 (425. I, II. 2); H-B. 436, 449.

103. Place **by, through,** or **over which**, § 429. *a* (258. *g*); B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476 (420. 3); H-B. 426.

104. Place **from which**, § 426. 1; 427. 1; 428. *b*, *e*, *f* (258. *a*); B. 229; G. 390, 391; H. 461, 462. 1, 4 (412. I, II. 1); H-B. 409, 451.

105. Place **to which**, § 426. 2; 427. 2; 428. *b*, *c* (258. *b*); B. 182. 1, 2; G. 337. 1–3; H. 418. 4 (380. I, II. 1); H-B. 385, 450.

106. Place **towards which**, § 428. *a*, *c* (258. *b*. N. 2; *c*. 2. N. 1); B. 182. 3; G. 337. 4; H. 418. 4; 462. 3 (380. 1; 412. 3. N.); H-B. 453.

107. Summary of Place Relations, § 426, 427; H. 491. I, II (427, 428).

108. Words Used Like Names of Towns, § 427. *a*; 429. 1, 2 (258. *c*. R.; *d*, *f*. 1, 2; B. 228. 1. *b*), *c*); G. 385. N. 1; 388; H. 419. 1; 462. 4; 484. 1, 2 (380. II. 2. 1), 2); 412. 1; 426. 1, 2); H-B. 449. *a*; 436. *a*, *b*.

Potential Subjunctive

109. § 446, 447. 1, 2, 3 (311. I, II); B. 280; G. 257–259; H. 552–557 (485, 486); H-B. 516, 517. 1; 518, 519. 1. *a*, *b*.

Prohibitions, see **Imperative Mood.**

Pronouns, see also **Agreement.**

110. Demonstrative, § 296–298 (100–102, 195); B. 246-249; G. 305–311; H. 505–507 (450–452); H-B. 271–274, 267–270.

111. Indefinite, § 309, 310. *a*; 311, 314. 1, 2. *a* (202); B. 252; G. 313–319; H. 512–515 (455–459); H-B. 276.

112. Interrogative, § 333 (104); B. 90; G. 106; H. 511 (454); H-B. 275.

113. Personal, § 295 (194); B. 242; G. 304; H. 500 (446); H-B. 254, 255, 257.

114. Possessive, § 302. *a*, *c*, *d*, *e* (197); B. 243; G. 312; H. 501 (447); H-B. 254, 256, 258.

115. Reflexive, § 299. *a*; 300. 1, 2 (196); B. 244; G. 309; H. 502–504 (448, 449); H-B. 260, 262. 1, 2.

116. Relative, § 304–307. *a*, *b*. N.; *e*; 308. *a*, *c* (197. 5—201); B. 250, 251; G. 610 ff.; H. 510 (453); H-B. 281, 282, 284. 1–6.

Proviso, Clauses of, see **dum, dum modo.**

Purpose or Final Clauses

117. Pure and Relative Clauses of Purpose, § 530, 531 (317. 1, 2. *b*); B. 282; G. 543, 544. I; 545; H. 568, 590 (497); H-B. 502. 2.

118. Substantive Clauses of Purpose, § 563, 564 (317. 3; 331); B. 294–296; G. 546–550; H. 564–567, 568. 2 (498, 499); H-B. 502. 3, 4.

See also **Supine, Gerund and Gerundive**, and **Participle.**

Questions

119. Direct, § 330–337 (210–212); B. 162; G. 450–459, 471; H. 378–380 (351–353); H-B. 231–234.

120. Indirect, § 330. 2; 573–575. *a* (210. 2; 334); B. 300; G. 460, 467; H. 649. II. 1, 2, 3; 650. 1, 2; 651 (529. I, II. 1. N. 1, N. 3; 3. 1), 2); 4. 5); H-B. 537. *b*, *c*, *d*; 507. 3.

121. Rhetorical or Deliberative Questions, § 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559. 4 (484. V); H-B. 503, 513. 1.

quīn, see **Result Clauses.**

quod, quia, etc., see **Causal Clauses.**

Result or Consecutive Clauses

122. Pure and Relative Clauses of Result, § 537. 1, 2. *a*; 538 (319. 1, 2, R., *a*); B. 284. 1, 2; G. 552, 631; H. 570, 591 (500. I, II); H-B. 521. 2.

123. Substantive Clauses of Result, § 568–571 (332. *a*. 1, 2); B. 297; G. 553; H. 571 (501); H-B. 521. 3. *a*), *b*).

124. **quīn** and **quōminus** Clauses, § 558, 559 (319. *d*; 332. *g*. R., N. 2); B. 284. 3; 295. 3; 298; G. 549, 554, 555, 556; H. 594. II; 595, 596 (504, 505. I. 1; II); H-B. 502. 3. *b*); 519. 4. *b*); 521. 1, 2, 3. *b*).

125. Relative Clauses of Characteristic or Result after **dignus**, **indignus**, etc., § 535. *f* (320. *f*); B. 282. 3; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5–7 (503. II); H-B. 513. 3.

The Subjunctive

126. General Consideration, § 438 (265); B. 272; G. 255, 256; H. 193, 194 (196. I, II); H-B. 462.

(The various subjv. constructions are given in alphabetical order.)

Subjunctive of Integral Part or Attraction

127. § 593. *a*. N. 1, N. 2 (342); B. 324; G. 629, 663; H. 652 (529. II); H-B. 539.

Substantive Clauses introduced by quod

128. § 572 (333); B. 299; G. 524, 525; H. 588. 3 (540. IV); H-B. 552.

Supine

129. In **-um**, § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.

130. In **-ū**, § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635 (547); H-B. 619.

Temporal Clauses

131. With **antequam** and **priusquam**, § 551 (327); B. 291, 292; G. 574–577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. *a–d*; 550. *b*; 561, 571.

132. With **cum**, § 545, 546. N. 3 (325); B. 288, 289; G. 578–585; H. 600, 601 (521); H-B. 524, 525, 550. *a*; 551.

133. With **dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, § 553–556 (328); B. 293; G. 571, 572; H. 603 (519); H-B. 507. 5; 550. *b*; 559, 560.

134. With **postquam**, **ut**, **ubi**, **simul ac**, etc., § 543. *a* (323, 324); B. 287; G. 561 ff.; H. 602 (518); H-B. 550, 557, 558.

Tenses, Sequence of

135. General Rules, § 482–484 (284–286. R.); B. 266, 267; G. 509 ff.; H. 543–545 (490–494); H-B. 476.

136. Peculiarities in Tense-Sequence, § 485. *a*, *b*, *c*, *e*, *g*, *h* (287. *a*, *b*, *c*, *e*, *f*); B. 268. 1–6; G. 509. 2; H. 546–550 (495. I–VI); H-B. 478.

Time, Expressions of

137. Time **before** or **after** an event, § 424. *f* (259. *d*); B. 357. 1; G. 336. 3; 403. 4; H. 488. 1, 2, N. 2 (430. N. 1. 1)–3); N. 3); H-B 424, 387. II. *b*.

138. Time **how long** or **during which**, § 423, 424. *c* (256–259. *c*); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. II.

139. Time **when** or **within which**, § 423, 424. *d*, *e* (256, 259. *a*, *c*); B. 230, 231; G. 393; H. 486, 487 (429); H-B. 439.

140. Use of Prepositions in Expressions of Time, § 424. *a*, *e* (256 *a*; 259. *b*); B. 181. 2; 230. 2; G. 336, 394; H. 487. 1, 2 (429. 1, 2); H-B. 439. *a*; 387. II. *a*.

Word-Order

141. General Principles, § 595–597. *a* (343, 344. R. *a*); B. 348, 349; G. 671–674; H. 663–670 (559–564); H-B. 621–623.

142. Special Rules, § 598 (344. *a*. 1, 2; *b*, *c*, *g*, *j*, *k*); 599. *a*–*f* (345. *a*–*e*); B. 350. 1–10; G. 675–681; H. 671–680 (565–569); H-B. 624, 625. I–III.

Corrections	Marks etc
g = gender.	sp = spelling
t = tense	~~amo~~ = leave out
c = case	amo = mistake
m = mode	s = left out
p = person	o = order
v = voice	- - - - omitted
f = form.	

F. V. SMITH

SMITH